



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



111  
Exe T 918, 53, 250

EX LIBRARY  
OF  
TUFTS COLLEGE.

THE GIFT OF

*Purchased*

*March, 1859*

HARVARD COLLEGE



3 2044 097 061 741









THE  
PRINCIPLES  
OF  
LATIN GRAMMAR;

COMPRISING THE SUBSTANCE OF THE MOST APPROVED  
GRAMMARS EXTANT, WITH AN

APPENDIX.

FOR THE  
USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

~~~~~  
BY REV. PETER BULLIONS, D. D.

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AUTHOR OF THE SERIES  
OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN, AND ENGLISH, ON THE  
SAME PLAN, ETC. ETC.

~~~~~  
FORTY-EIGHTH EDITION.

NEW-YORK:  
PRATT, WOODFORD & COMPANY,

.....  
1853.

Edye T 918.53.250



Tufts College

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by  
PETER BULLIONS.  
in the Clerks Office of the Northern District of New-York.

---

Purchased.  
March 18 67

## PREFACE.

---

In the study of any language, the foundation of success must be laid in a thorough acquaintance with its principles. This being once attained, future progress becomes easy and rapid. To the student of language, therefore, a good Grammar, which must be his constant companion, is of all his books the most important. Such a work, to be really valuable, ought to be *simple* in its arrangement and style, so as to be adapted to the capacity of youth, for whose use it is designed; *comprehensive*, and *accurate*, so as to be a sufficient and certain guide in the most difficult as well as in easy cases; and its principles and rules should be rendered familiar by numerous examples and exercises.

The fundamental principles are nearly the same in all languages. So far as Grammar is concerned, the difference lies chiefly in the minor details—in the forms and inflections of their words, and in the modes of expression peculiar to each, usually denominated *idioms*. It would seem, therefore, to be proper, in constructing Grammars for different languages, that the principles, so far as they are the same, should be arranged in the same order, and expressed as nearly as possible in the same words. Where this is carefully done, the study of the Grammar of one language becomes an important aid in the study of another;—an opportunity is afforded of seeing wherein they agree, and wherein they differ, and a profitable exercise is furnished in comparative or general grammar. But when a Latin Grammar is put into the hands of the student, differing widely in its arrangement or phraseology from the English Grammar which he had previously studied, and afterwards a Greek Grammar different from both, not only is the benefit derived from the analogy of the different languages in a great measure lost, but the whole subject is made to appear intolerably intricate and mysterious. In order to remedy this evil, I resolved, more than ten years ago, to prepare a series of grammars, English, Latin and Greek, arranged in the same order, and expressed in as nearly the

same words as the peculiarities of the languages would permit. In the prosecution of this purpose, a Greek and an English grammar have been already published, and the Latin, which completes the series, is now ready to follow them.

The work here presented to the public, is upon the foundation of ADAM'S LATIN GRAMMAR, so long and so well known as a text book in this country. Since the first publication of that excellent work, however, now more than fifty years ago, great advances have been made in the science of philology, both in Germany and Britain, and many improvements have been introduced in the mode of instruction, none of which appear in that work. The object of the present undertaking was, to combine with all that is excellent in the work of Adam, the many important results of subsequent labors in this field; to supply its defects; to bring the whole up to that point which the present state of classical learning requires, and to give it such a form as to render it a suitable part of the series formerly projected. In accomplishing this object, I have availed myself of every aid within my reach, and no pains has been spared to render this work as complete as possible in every part. My acknowledgements are due for the assistance derived from the excellent works of Grant, Crombie, Zumpt, Andrews & Stoddard and many others, on the whole or on separate parts of this undertaking; and also for many hints kindly furnished by distinguished teachers in this country. With the exception of a few pages, the whole of this work has been written anew. The additions and improvements made in every part, it is impossible here to specify. The intelligent teacher will discover these, and judge of them for himself. In the typography of the work, neatness and accuracy have been aimed at, and, it is hoped, in a good degree attained. As in the other grammars, the rules and leading parts which should be first studied, are printed in larger type; and the filling up of this outline is comprised in observations and notes under them, made easy of reference by the sections and numbers prefixed. The whole is now committed, together with the rest of the series, to the judgment of an intelligent public, in the hope that something has been done to smooth the path of the learner in the successful prosecution of his studies, and to subserve the interests both of English and Classical literature in this country.

*Albany Academy, Aug. 20th, 1841.*

# INDEX.

A.		B.	
	PAGE		PAGE
<b>Ablative, meaning of, . . . .</b>	10	<b>Beginners, directions for, . .</b>	270
governed by nouns, . . . .	225	C.	
by adjectives, . . . .	226	Case, . . . . .	9
by comp. degree, . . . .	227	Synopsis of government of, . .	194
by verbs, . . . . .	228	Cæsural pause, . . . . .	293
by adverbs, . . . . .	242	Cause, manner and instru-	
by passive, verbs . . . .	234	ment, . . . . .	236
variously, . . . . .	229	Circumstances, construc-	
<b>Accidents of the noun, . . .</b>	8	tion of, . . . . .	235
<b>Accusative, meaning of, . . .</b>	10	of limitation, . . . . .	235
governed by verbs, . . . .	223	of cause, manner, &c. . . .	236
by passive verbs, . . . .	234	of place, . . . . .	237
by prepositions, . . . .	243, 244	of time, . . . . .	239
variously, . . . . .	225	of measure, . . . . .	240
and genitive, . . . . .	229	of price, . . . . .	241
and dative, . . . . .	231	Concord of, . . . . .	196
and accusative, . . . . .	232	Conjugation of, . . . . .	100
and ablative, . . . . .	233	First, . . . . .	110
<b>Adjectives, . . . . .</b>	44	irregular, . . . . .	156
of first and second decl. . .	45	Second, . . . . .	119
of third, . . . . .	47	irregular, . . . . .	157
irregular, . . . . .	51	Third, . . . . .	127
exercises on, . . . . .	53	irregular, . . . . .	160
comparison of, . . . . .	59	Fourth, . . . . .	136
Rules for, . . . . .	60	irregular, . . . . .	168
irregular, &c. . . . .	61	1st Periphrastic, . . . .	152
derivation of, . . . . .	63	2d do. . . . .	153
numeral, . . . . .	53	Conjunctions, . . . . .	192
cardinal, . . . . .	54	construction of, . . . .	264
ordinal, . . . . .	57	Consonants, . . . . .	2
construction of, . . . . .	197	Construing, Rules for, . . . .	271
<b>Adverbs, signification of, . .</b>	185	D.	
derivation of, . . . . .	186	Dative, meaning of, . . . . .	10
comparison of, . . . . .	187	governed by nouns, . . . .	215
construction of, . . . . .	241	by adjectives, . . . . .	215
cases governed by, . . . .	242	by verbs, . . . . .	217
<b>Analysis or resolution, . . .</b>	269	by impersonals, . . . .	220
<b>Apposition, . . . . .</b>	196	by the pass. voice, . . .	234
<b>Archaism, . . . . .</b>	266	variously, . . . . .	222
<b>Arrangement. Latin, . . . .</b>	266		



	PAGE		PAGE
Datives two, gov'd by verbs, .....	222	Increment of the 3d decl. . .	279
Declension, Rules for, ....	10, 11	of the plural, ..	280
First, .....	12	of the verb, ....	281
Greek nouns in, .....	13	Interjections, .....	191
Exercises on, ....	14	construction of, ....	225
Second, .....	15	Irregular nouns, .....	34
Exceptions in, ..	17	adjectives, .....	51
Greek nouns in, ..	18	comparison, ....	61
Exercises on, ....	18	Verbs, .....	170
Third, .....	19	L.	
Exercises on, ....	23	Letters, .....	1
Genders in, ....	23	Limitation, circumstances of	235
Genitive of, ....	24	M.	
Exceptions in, ..	26	Marks and characters, ....	2
Greek nouns in, ..	30	Measure, circumstances of.	241
Fourth, .....	30	Metre, .....	293
Exceptions in, ..	31	different kinds of, ....	294
Exercises on, ....	32	Iambic, .....	294
Fifth, .....	32	Trochaic, .....	295
Exercises on, ....	33	Anapestic, .....	295
Deponent verbs, .....	144	Dactylic, .....	296
irregular, .....	169	Choriambic, .....	297
Derivatives and compounds,		Ionic, .....	298
quantity of, .....	289	Metres, compound, .....	299
special rules for, ....	288	Metres, combination of, in	
E.		Horace, .....	301
Ellipsis, .....	265	Metrical Key to Odes of	
Enallage, .....	265	Horace, .....	302
Etymology, .....	6	Moods, .....	81
F.		Indic. tenses of, ....	85
Feet, simple, .....	290	construction of, ..	246
compound, .....	291	Subjunctive, tenses of,	89
isochronous, .....	291	construction of, ...	246
G.		with conjunctions,	247
Gender of, .....	8	with relative, ...	248
Observations on, ...	9	used for imperative,	84
Genitive, meaning of, ....	10	Imperative, tenses of,	92
gov'd by nouns, .....	207	construction of, ....	253
by adjectives, ...	210	Infinitive, tenses of, ..	93
by verbs, .....	213	construction of, ....	253
by passives, ....	234	without a subject,	254
variously, .....	214	with a subject, .	256
Gerunds and Supines, ....	99	N.	
construction of, ....	260	Negatives, construction of,.	241
Gerundives, .....	98	Nominative, meaning of, ..	10
construction of, ....	262	construction of, ....	203
H.		after the verb, ....	205
Hellenism, .....	266	Notation of numbers, ....	56
Hyperbaton, .....	266	Nouns, .....	7
I.		Accidents of, ....	8
Increment of nouns, .....	268	irregular, .....	34
of the 2d decl. . .	279	defective, .....	39

	PAGE.		PAGE.
<b>Nouns, redundant, .....</b>	40	<b>S.</b>	
Syntax of, .....	207	Scanning, .....	299
increment of, .....	278	Stanza, .....	301
<b>Number, .....</b>	8	Supines of, .....	99
<b>Numeral adjectives, .....</b>	53	Construction of, ....	263
O.		Syllables, .....	5
<b>Orthography, .....</b>	1	Syntax, .....	193
P.		General principles of,	193
<b>Parsing, directions for, ....</b>	273	of cases, Synopsis of,	194
<b>Participles of, .....</b>	97	Parts of, .....	196
construction of, ....	258	of the Noun, .....	207
case absolute, ....	259	of the verb, .....	245
<b>Parts of speech, .....</b>	7	Figures of, .....	265
<b>Person, .....</b>	65	T.	
<b>Person, and number of, ....</b>	96	<b>Tenses of, .....</b>	84
<b>Place, circumstances of, ....</b>	237	of the indicative, ...	85
<b>Pleonasm, .....</b>	265	subjunctive, ..	89
<b>Prepositions of, .....</b>	188	imperative, ..	92
in composition, ....	190	infinitive, ....	93
inseparable, .....	191	participles, ...	97
governing the accusa-		Active how formed, .	102
tive, ..	243	Passive, how formed,	104
the ablative, ..	243	Connexion of, .....	245
the acc. and		<b>Terminations, table of, ....</b>	11
ablative, ..	244	<b>Time, circumstances of, ....</b>	239
in composi-		V.	
tion, ....	244	<b>Verb, Active, Neuter, .....</b>	76, 77
<b>Price, circumstances of, ....</b>	241	Different kinds of, ..	78
<b>Pronouns, Personal, .....</b>	64	Inflection of, .....	79
Adjective, .....	67	Voices, of, .....	80
Possessive, .....	67	Moods of, .....	81
Demonstrative, ....	68	Tenses of, .....	84
Definite, .....	71	how formed, ....	102
Relative, .....	71	<b>Regular, conjugation of,</b>	100
construction of, ...	200	1st conj. Active, .	110
case of, .....	202	Exercises on, .	113
Interrogative, .....	72	1st conj. Passive, .	114
Indefinite, .....	73	Exercises on, .	117
Patrial, .....	73	2d conj. Active, ..	119
compound, .....	73	Exercises on, .	122
<b>Pronunciation, .....</b>	3	2d conj. Passive, .	122
<b>Prosody, .....</b>	276	Exercises on, .	125
Figures of, .....	299	3d conj. Active, ..	127
<b>Punctuation, .....</b>	3	Exercises on, .	131
Q.		3d conj. Passive, .	131
<b>Quantity, of, .....</b>	276	Exercises on, .	135
General rules for, ...	276	4th conj. Active, .	136
Special rules for, ...	278	Exercises on, .	139
of penult syllables, .	282	4th conj. Passive, .	140
of final syllables, ...	284	Exercises on, .	142
R.		<b>Deponent, 1st conj... 144</b>	
<b>Resolution or analysis, ....</b>	261	2d do ..	145
Examples of, .....	297	3d do ..	147

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Verb, deponent, 4th do ..	148	Verbs, Desideratives, .....	185
Exercises on, ..	149	Diminutives, ...	185
Verbs, Neuter-passives, ...	150	construction of, with	
compound, .....	154	Nom. ....	203
irregular in perf. and		Special rules for,	204
Sup. ....	155	Syntax of, .....	245
Irregular, .....	170	Increment of, .....	281
Sum, .....	105	Versification, .....	290
Exercises on,	109	Vocative, meaning of, .....	11
Defective, .....	178	construction of, ..	225
Impersonal, .....	180	Voice, ..	80
Exercises on, ..	182	Vowels, .....	1
Redundant, .....	183	Vowel sounds, table of, ....	4
Derivatives, .....	183	W.	
Frequentatives, ..	184	Words, .....	6
Inceptives, .....	184		

## CONTENTS OF THE APPENDIX.

I. Roman computation of time, .....	304
II. Roman Names, .....	307
III. Divisions of the Roman people, .....	308
IV. Division of the Roman civil officers, .....	309
V. The Roman Army, .....	199
VI. Roman Money, Weights and Measures, .....	310
VII. Different ages of Roman Literature, .....	312

## ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

For reasons stated in the note, § 2, the continental pronunciation of the Latin language, as presented in that section, is considered the best. But since there are many who prefer the English, or Walkerian pronunciation, a brief statement of the principles by which it is regulated is here introduced. In doing this it is necessary to state, and for the learner always to bear in mind, that the English accentuation and vowel sounds have nothing to do with the quantity of the syllables as established by the rules of Latin prosody. These indeed are often directly opposed to each other. A vowel which by the rules of English orthoepy is long, having both the accent and the long English sound, is short in Latin; as, *pá-ter*, *Dē-us*. On the other hand, a syllable that is short, being without the accent and having the short English sound, is long in Latin; as, *am'-ē-bá-mus*, *mon'-ē-bá-tis*. When, therefore, a vowel is said to have the long sound, or the short sound—to be accented or unaccented, nothing is affirmed respecting the quantity of the syllable, as long or short. Here indeed there is an incongruity, but it is inseparable from the system.

According to this mode of pronunciation, the sound of a vowel or diphthong depends entirely on two things; viz., the *accent* and the *place* of the vowel in the syllable. Again, the division of words into syllables depends, in a great measure, on the place of the accents; and that again on the quantity of the penult syllable. Hence to present this matter fully and properly, we must reverse this order, and consider,

- I. The quantity of the penult syllables.
- II. The accent.
- III. The division of words into syllables; and
- IV. The sounds of the letters in their combinations.

☞ For the division of letters into vowels and consonants, the combination of the former into diphthongs, and the division of the latter into mutes, liquids, &c.; as also for the meaning of the terms *monosyllable*, *dissyllable*, &c., *penult* and *antepenult*, and the marks for long, short, and accented syllables, see § 1.

mm

## I. THE QUANTITY OF PENULT SYLLABLES.

For quantity in general, see the Rules, §§ 154–161; and particularly for penult syllables, §§ 156–159. The following are *general*, being applicable to other syllables as well as the penult, and are of extensive application:

1. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *vīa*, *dēus*.
2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant is long by position; as, *arma*, *fallo*, *axis*.
3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, (*l* and *r*), is common; i. e., either long or short; as, *volūcris*, or *volūcris*.
4. A diphthong is always long; as, *Cæsar*, *aŭrum*.

NOTE. When the quantity of the penult is determined by any of these rules, it is not marked; otherwise it is marked.

## II. THE ACCENT.

ACCENT is a particular stress of voice laid on a particular syllable of a word, and marked ( ' ); as, *pa'-ter*, *an'-i-mus*. Its place is on the penult or antepenult.

When a word has more accents than one, the last is called the *primary* accent, the one preceding it the *secondary*, marked ( '' ); preceding that is often a *third*, marked ( ''' ); and sometimes even a *fourth*, marked ( '''' ); and all of them subject to the same rules; as follows:

## RULES.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first or penult; as, *pă'-ter*, *mũ'-sa*, *au'-rum*.

2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; when the penult is short they have the accent on the antepenult; as, *a-mă'cus*, *dom'-i-nus*.

3. When the enclitics *que*, *ve*, *ne*, are added to a word, the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, *pa-ter'-que*, *am''-i-cus'-ne*, *dom''-i-nus'-ve*.

4. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed on the first; as, *dom''-i-nō'rum*.

5. If three or four syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary is placed sometimes on the first and sometimes on the second; as, *tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-us*, *de-mon''stra-ban'-tur*.

6. Some words which have four syllables before the primary accent, and all that have more than four have a *third* accent; and in longer words even a *fourth*; as, *pab'''-u-la''-ti-ō'-nis*, *pab''''-u-la''''-ti-on''-i-bus'-que*.

## III. THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

In Latin every word has as many syllables as there are separate vowels or diphthongs. Hence the following

## RULES.

1. Two vowels coming together and not forming a diphthong, must be divided; as, *De'-us*, *su'-us*, *au'-re-us*.

2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid\* between the last two vowels of a word, or between any two unaccented vowels, is joined to the last; as, *pa'-TER*, *al'-a-CER*, *al-a-CRIS*, *tol''-e-RA-bil'-i-us*, *per'''-e-GRI-nā''-ti-ō'-NIS*.

Exc. But *tib-i* and *sib-i* join it to the first.

---

\* The liquids are *l* and *r*.

3. A single consonant or a mute and a liquid *before* an accented vowel, is joined to that vowel, and so also is a single consonant *after* it, except in the penult; as, *i-TIN'-ĕ-ra*, *nom'-i-nes*.

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after *a, e, o*, accented, and followed by *e* or *i* before a vowel, are joined to the latter; as, *só-ci-us*, *rá-di-us*, *dó-ce-o*, *pá-tri-us*.

Exc. 2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid after *u*, accented, must be joined to the following vowel; as, *mú-li-er*, *tú-ti-or*, *lú-bri-cus*.

4. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid coming before or after an accented vowel; and also a mute and a liquid after an accented vowel, (the penult and the exceptions to Rule 3 excepted,) must be divided; as, *tem-por'-i-bus*, *lec'-tum*, *tem'-pō-rum*, *met'-rĭ-cus*.

Also *gl*, *tl*, and often *cl*, after the penultimate vowel, or before the vowel of an accented syllable; as *At-las*, *At-lan'-ti-des*, *ec-lec'-ta*.

5. If three consonants come between the vowels of any two syllables, the last two, if a mute and a liquid, are joined to the latter vowel; otherwise, the last only; as, *con'-tra*, *am''-pli-a'-vit*; *comp'-tus*. *re-demp'-tor*.

6. A compound word is resolved into its constituent parts if the first part ends with a consonant: as, *AB-es'-se*, *SUB'-i-it*, *IN'-i-tur*, *CIRCUM'-ā-go*. But if the first part ends with a vowel, it is divided like a simple word; as, *DEf'-ĕ-ro*, *DIL'-i-go*, *PRÆs'-to*.

These rules are useful here, only as a guide to the pronunciation in the Walkerian mode. the vowel sounds being always different when they end a syllable, and when followed by a consonant; thus, *dil'-i-go* and *præs'-to* would be pronounced very differently if divided thus, *dil'-li-go* and *præ'-sto*, though the *quantity* and *accent* would be the same in both. It is therefore manifest that in order to correct pronunciation in this mode it is necessary to be familiar with, and ready in applying the rules of syllabification.

#### IV. OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

##### 1. *Of the sound of the Vowels.*

1. Every accented vowel at the end of a syllable has the long English sound; as in the words *fate*, *me*, *pine*, *no*, *tube*; thus, *pa'-ter*, *de'-dit*, *vi'-vus*, *to'-tus*, *tu'-ba*. *Ty'-rus*.\*

2. At the end of an unaccented syllable, *e, o*, and *u*, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but are sounded shorter; as *re'-te*, *vo'-lo*, *ma'-nu*; *a* has the sound of *a* in *father*; as, *mu'-sa*, *e-pis'-to-la*.

---

\* Y has the sound of i in the same situation.

1. ending an unaccented syllable, has always its long sound in the following positions :

1st. In the end of a word ; as, *dom'-i-ni*. Except in *tib-s* and *sib-i*, in which final *i* sounds like short *e*.

2d. In the first syllable of a word (the second of which is accented,) either when it stands alone before a consonant ; as, *i-do'-nē-us*, or ends the syllable before a vowel ; as, *fi-ē'-bam*.

In all other situations at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, *i* has an obscure sound resembling short *e* ; as, *nob'-i-lis*, *rap'-i-dus*, *ri-dē'-lis*, &c.

3. When a syllable ends with a consonant, its vowel has the short English sound, as in *fat*, *met*, *pin*, *not*, *tub*, *symbol* ; thus, *mag'-nus*, *reg'-num*, *fin'-go*, *hoc*, *sub*, *cyg'-nus*.

Exc. *E*s at the end of a word, has the sound of the English word *ease* ; as *fi'-des*, *ig'-nes*.

## 2. Of the sound of the Diphthongs.

*Æ* and *æ* are pronounced as *e* in the same situation ; as, *æ'-tas*, *cæt'-ē-ra*, *pæ'-na*, *æs'-trum*.

*Au* is pronounced like *aw*,—*eu* like long *u*,—and *ei*, not followed by another vowel, like long *i* ; as, *au'-di-o*, *eu'-ge*, *hei*.

Exc. In Greek proper names *au* are separated ; as, *Men'-e-la'-us*.

NOTE. *ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, in one syllable after *q*, *g*, *s*, are not properly diphthongs, but the *u* takes the sound of *w*. § 1, Obs. 2.

After *g* and *s* these vowels are often pronounced separately, or in different syllables ; as, *ar'-gu-o*, *su'-a*, *su'-i*, *su'-us*.

Exc. *Ui* in *cui* and *huic*, has the sound of *i* long.

## 3. Of the sound of the Consonants.

The consonants are in general pronounced in Latin as in English. The following may be noticed.

*C* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *α*, has the sound of *s* ; as, *cé-do*, *cí-vis*, *cyg'-nus*, *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ'-na* ; before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *r*, and at the end of a syllable it has the sound of *sk* ; as, *Ca-to*, *con-tra*, *cur*, *Clo-di-us*, *Cri-to*.

*Ch*, generally has the sound of *k* ; as, *char'-ta*, *chor'-da*, *chró-ma*.

*G* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *α*, has its soft sound like *j* ; as, *gē'-nus*, *re'-gis* ; also before another *g* soft ; as, *agger*. In other situations it is hard ; as in the English words, *bag*, *go*.

*Ch* and *ph* before *th* in the beginning of a word, are not sounded ; as, *Chthonia*, *Phthia* ; also when a word begins with *mn*, *gn*, *tm*, *ct*, *pt*, *ps*, the first letter is silent, or but slightly sounded ; as *mne-mor'-y-ne*, *gná-vus*, *tmé-sis*, *Cté-si-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

Other consonants in their combinations resemble so closely their sounds in English words, that further illustration is unnecessary.

# L A T I N   G R A M M A R .

---

L A T I N G R A M M A R is the art of speaking or writing the Latin language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts; namely, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

---

## P A R T   F I R S T .

---

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY teaches the nature and power of letters, and the correct method of spelling words.

---

#### § 1. OF LETTERS.

1. A LETTER is a character representing a particular sound of the human voice.

2. The Latin Alphabet consists of twenty-five letters, the same in name and form as the English, but without the *w*.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

#### OF VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

3. A VOWEL is a letter which represents a simple sound. The vowels in Latin are six, viz : *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*.

4. The union of two vowels in one sound is called a *Diphthong*. If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, it is called an *Improper Diphthong*.

5. The PROPER DIPHTHONGS in Latin are three, viz : *au*, *eu*, *ei*, as, *audio*, *euge*, *hei*.

6. The IMPROPER DIPHTHONGS are two, viz : *ae* and *oe*. These are often written together; Thus, *æ*, *œ*; and are pronounced as simple *e*



*Obs. 1.* *ai* and *oi* are found as diphthongs in proper names from the Greek ; as, *Maia*, *Troia*.

*Obs. 2.* After *g*, and *q*, and sometimes after *s*, *u* before another vowel in the same syllable does not form a diphthong with it, but is to be regarded as an appendage of the preceding consonant, having nearly the force of *w*, as in the English words, *linguist*, *quick*, *persuade*, thus *lingua sanguis*, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, *quum*, *suadeo*, are pronounced as if written *lingwa*, *sangwis*, *kwi*, *kwæ*, *kwod*, *kwum*, *swadeo*.

*Obs. 3.* Two vowels standing together in different syllables, pronounced in quick succession, resemble the diphthong in sound, and, among the poets, are often run together into one syllable ; thus *de-in*, *de-inde*, *pro-inde*, &c. in two and three syllables are pronounced in one and two *dein*, *deinde*, *proinde*. *Cui* and *huic*, properly two syllables are always contracted into one. So also, *ui* in such words from the Greek, as *Harpua*.

## OF CONSONANTS.

7. A CONSONANT is a letter that cannot be sounded without the help of a vowel as *p*, *b*, pronounced *pè*, *bè*.

8. Of the Consonants, eight are called *mutes*, viz. *p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *c*, *k*, *g*, and *g* ; so called because they stop the passage of the voice, as *b* in *sub*.

9. Four are liquids, viz. *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, because they easily flow into other sounds.

10. Three are double Consonants, viz. *x*, *z*, and *j* ; of these, *x* is equivalent to *cs*, *gs*, or *ks* ; *z* to *ds*, or *ts* and *j* to *dg*.

*Obs. 4.* Though *j* is sounded by us as a double consonant, equivalent to *dg*, yet anciently it seems to have been more nearly allied to a vowel, and was represented by *i* ; thus, *ejus* *pejus*, &c. were written *eius*, *peius*, &c. In a similar manner, *u* and *v* were represented by the same letter, viz. *v*.

11. The letter *s* represents a sibilant or hissing sound. The *h* is only an aspirate and denotes a rough breathing : In prosody, it is not regarded as a consonant.

12. The letters *k*, *y*, and *x*, are used only in words derived from the Greek.

## MARKS AND CHARACTERS

13. The marks and characters used in Latin Grammar or in writing Latin, are the following :

◌ Placed over a vowel shews it to be short.

– Placed over a vowel shews it to be long.

⏞ Placed over a vowel shews it to be short or long.

•• Is called *Diaeresis*, and shows that the vowel over which it is placed does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel, but belongs to a different syllable, as *aër* pronounced *a-er*.

^ The *circumflex* shews that the syllable over which it stands has been contracted, and is consequently long as *nuntiârunt* for *nuntiaverunt*, *dimicâssent* for *dimicavissent*.

\ The grave accent is sometimes placed over particles and adverbs to distinguish them from other words consisting of the same letters; as *quôd* a conjunction, “that,” to distinguish it from *quod*, a relative, “which.”

' *Apostrophe*, is written over the place of a vowel cut off from the end of a word as *men'* for *mene*.

## PUNCTUATION.

14. The different divisions of a sentence are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The modern punctuation in Latin is the same as in English. The marks employed, are the *Comma* (,); *Semicolon* (;); *Colon* (:); *Period* (.); *Interrogation* (?); *Exclamation* (!).

*Obs.* The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients, was a point, (.) which denoted pauses of a different length, according as it stood at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line, that at the top denoting the shortest, and that at the bottom, the longest pause.

## § 2. PRONUNCIATION.\*

The pronunciation of the Latin language prevalent among the nations of continental Europe, is greatly preferable to

---

\* The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language cannot now be certainly ascertained. The variety of pronunciation in different nations arises from a tendency in all to assimilate it in some measure to their own. But of all varieties, that of the English,—certainly the farthest of any from the original,—is, in our opinion, decidedly the worst; not only from its intricacy and want of simplicity, but especially from its conflicting constantly with the settled quantity of the language. In English, every accented syllable is long, and every unaccented one is short. When, therefore, according to the rules of English accentuation, the accent falls on a short syllable in a Latin word, or does not fall on a long one, in either case, it necessarily leads to a false quantity; and to this perhaps more than any thing else, is to be attributed the acknowledged deficiency of classical scholars among us in this respect. For the English orthoëpy of the Latin language, see P. IX.

the English, both because it harmonizes better with the quantity of the language, as settled by the rules of Prosody, and because, by giving one simple sound to each vowel, distinguishing the short and the long only by the duration of sounds, it is much more simple. The sound of the vowels as pronounced alone or at the end of a syllable, is exhibited in the following

#### TABLE OF VOWEL AND DIPHTHONGAL SOUNDS.

Short ä sounds like	a	in Jehovah	as ämät.
Long ā like	a	in father,	as fāma.
Short ē like	e	in met,	as pētērē.
Long ē like	ey	in they,	as docēre.
Short ī like	i	in uniform,	as unītas.
Long ī like	i	in machine,	as pīnus.
Short ō like	o	in polite,	as indōles.
Long ō like	o	in go,	as pōno.
Short ū like	u	in popular,	as popūlus.
Long ū like	u	in rule, or pure,	as tūba, ūsu:
ae or æ } like	ey	in they,	as { Pæan. Phœbus.
oe or œ }			
au like	ou	in our,	as aurum.
eu like	eu	in feud,	as eurus.
ei like	i	in ice,	as hei.

*Obs. 1.* The vowels *a* and *e* have the same sound in all situations.

*Obs. 2.* The sound of *i*, *o*, and *u*, is slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, and is the same whether the syllable is long or short. Thus modified,

<i>i</i> sounds like	<i>i</i>	in sit,	as <i>mīttīt</i> .
<i>o</i> like	<i>o</i>	in not,	as <i>pōterat, fōrma</i>
<i>u</i> like	<i>u</i>	in tub,	as <i>frūctūs</i> .

*Note.* For the sound of *u*, before another vowel, after *g*, *q*, and sometimes *s*; See § 1, *Obs. 2*

*Obs. 3.* The consonants are pronounced generally as in the English language. *C*, and *g*, are hard as in the words *cat*, and *got*, before *a*, *o*, and *u*; and soft like *s*, and *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*; *æ*, and *œ*.

*Obs. 4.* *T*, and *c*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i*, followed by a vowel, usually has the sound of *sh*; as in *nuntius* or *runcius*, *patientia*, *socius*; pronounced *nunshius*, *pashienshia*, *soshius*.

## § 3. OF SYLLABLES.

A Syllable is a distinct sound, forming the whole of a word, or so much of it as can be sounded at once.

A word of one syllable is called a *Monosyllable*.

A word of two syllables is called a *Dissyllable*.

A word of three syllables is called a *Trissyllable*.

A word of many syllables is called a *Polysyllable*.

In a word of many syllables, the last is called the *final* syllable. The one next the last, is called the *penult*, and the syllable preceding that, is called the *antepenult*.

*Obs.* The Figures affecting the orthography of words, are the following; viz.

- 1st. *Prosthesis*, prefixes a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnatus* for *natus*; *tetulit*, for *tulit*.
- 2d. *Epenthesis*, inserts a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as *navita* for *nauta*; *Tímolus*, for *Tmolus*.
- 3d. *Paragoge*, adds a letter or syllable to the end of a word, as *amarier* for *amari*, &c.
- 4th. *Aphæresis*, cuts off a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as *brevist* or *brevist*, for *brevis est*; *rhabo* for *arrhabo*.
- 5th. *Syncope* takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word; as, *oraculum* for *oraculum*; *amârim* for *amavërim*; *deûm* for *deûrum*.
- 6th. *Apocope*, takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word; as *Antoni* for *Antonii*; *men'* for *mene*; *dic* for *dice*.
- 7th. *Antithesis*, substitutes one letter for another; as, *olli* for *illi*; *vult*, *vultis* for *volt*, *voltis*, contractions for *volit*, *volitis*.
- 8th. *Metathesis*, changes the order of letters in a word; as, *pistri* for *pristis*.
- 9th. *Tmesis*, separates the parts of a compound word by inserting another word between them; as, *quæ me cunque vocant terræ* for *quæcunque me*, &c.
- 10th. *Anastrophe*, inverts the order of words; as *däre circum*, for *circumdäre*.

## PART SECOND.

---

### ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivations.

---

#### § 4. OF WORDS.

WORDS are certain articulate sounds used by common consent as signs of our ideas.

1. In respect of *Formation*, words are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*, *Simple* or *Compound*.

A *Primitive* word is one that comes from no other ; as, *puer, bonus, pater*.

A *Derivative* word is one that is derived from another word ; as, *pueritia, bonitas, paternus*.

A *Simple* word is one that is not combined with any other word ; as, *pius, doceo, verito*.

A *Compound* word is one made up of two or more simple words ; as, *impius, dedoceo, animadverto*.

2. In respect of *Form*, words are either *Declinable* or *Indeclinable*.

A *Declinable* word is one which undergoes certain changes of *form* or *termination* to express the different relations of gender, number, case, person, &c. usually termed, in Grammar, *Accidents*.

An *Indeclinable* word is one that undergoes no change of form.

3. In respect of *Signification* and *Use*, words are divided into different classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

## § 5. PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech in the Latin language are eight, viz.

1. *Noun* or *Substantive*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, declined.

2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, *Conjunction*, undeclined.

*Obs.* 1. The *Participle* which is regarded by some as a distinct part of speech, properly belongs to, and forms a part of the verb.

---

## § 6. OF THE NOUN.

A NOUN OR SUBSTANTIVE, is the name of any person, place or thing. They are of two kinds, *Proper* and *Common*.

1. A *Proper Noun* is the name applied to an individual only; as, *Cicero*, *Aprilis*, *Roma*.

Among these may be included,

*Patronymics*, or those which express one's parentage or family; as, *Priamides*, the son of Priam.

*Gentile*, or *Patrial*, which denote one's country; as, *Romanus*, *Gallus*, &c.

*Obs.* A proper noun applied to more than one becomes a common noun; as, *duodēcim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

2. A *Common Noun* is a name applied to all things of the same sort; as, *vir*, a man; *domus*, a house; *liber*, a book.

Under this class may be ranged,

1. *Collective nouns*, or nouns of multitude, which signify many in the singular number; as, *populus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. *Abstract nouns*, or the names of qualities; as *bonitas*, goodness; *dulcedo*, sweetness

3 *Diminutives*, or nouns which express a diminution in the signification of the noun from which they are derived ; as *libellus*, a little book, from *liber*, a book.

4. *Amplificative* nouns, or those which denote an increase in the signification of the nouns from which they are derived ; as, *capito* a person having a large head ; from *caput*, the head.

---

## § 7. ACCIDENTS OF THE NOUN.

To the Latin noun belong *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case*.

1. GENDER means the distinction of nouns with regard to Sex.

There are three Genders, the *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Of some nouns the gender is determined by their *signification*;—of others, by their *termination*.

The *Masculine* gender belongs to all nouns which denote the male sex.

The *Feminine* gender belongs to all nouns which denote the female sex.

The *Neuter* gender belongs to all nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine.

Nouns which denote both males and females are said to be of the *Common* gender, i. e. they are both masculine and feminine.

Nouns denoting things without sex, and which are sometimes of one gender, and sometimes of another, are said to be *Doubtful*.

The gender of nouns not determined by their signification is usually to be ascertained by their termination, as will be noticed under each declension.

## GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON GENDER.

*Obs. 1.* Nouns denoting brute animals, especially those whose sex is not easily discerned or but rarely attended to, commonly follow the gender of their termination. Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, insects, &c.

*Obs. 2.* A proper name often follows the gender of the general noun under which it is comprehended; thus,

The names of months, winds, rivers and mountains, are masculine, because *mensis*, *ventus*, *fluvius*, *mons*, are masculine.

The names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *navis*, are feminine.

To these, however, there are many exceptions.

*Obs. 3.* Some nouns are masculine and feminine both in sense and grammatical construction; as *adolescens*, a young man or woman; *Affinis*, a relation by marriage; *dux*, a leader.

Some are masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction, i. e. they have an adjective word always in the masculine gender; such as, *Artifex*, an artist; *fur*, a thief; *senex*, an old person, &c.

Some are masculine or feminine in sense, but feminine only in grammatical construction; i. e. they have an adjective word always in the feminine gender; such as, *copiæ*, forces troops; *custodiæ*, guards; *operæ*, labourers, &c.

*Obs. 4.* Some nouns denoting persons, are neuter, both in termination and construction; as, *Acroama*, a jester; *auxilia*, auxilliary troops; *mancipium*, or *servilium*, a slave.

2. NUMBER is that property of a noun by which it expresses one, or more than one.

Latin nouns have two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The Singular denotes *one*; the Plural, *more than one*.

*Obs. 5.* Some nouns in the plural form denote but *one*; as *Athenæ*, Athens; others signify one or more; as *nuptiæ*, a marriage or marriages.

3. CASE is the state or condition of a noun with respect to the other words in a sentence.



Latin nouns have six cases, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

- 1st. The *Nominative* case denotes the name of an object simply, or as that of which something is affirmed.
- 2d. The *Genitive* connects with the name of an object, the idea of origin or possession.
- 3d. The *Dative* represents the thing named, as that *to* which something is added, or *to*, or *for* which, something is said or done.
- 4th. The *Accusative* represents the thing named, as affected or acted upon by something else, and also, the object to which something tends or relates.
- 5th. The *Vocative* is used when persons and things are addressed.
- 6th. The *Ablative* represents the thing named as that *from* which something is separated or taken, or as that *by* or *with* which something is done, or exists.

*Obs. 6.* All the cases, except the nominative, are called *Oblique* cases.

*Obs. 7.* The signs of the oblique cases, or the prepositions by which they are usually rendered into English, are the following, viz. *Genitive*, *of*; *Dative*, *to* or *for*; *Vocative*, *O*; *Ablative*, *with*, *from*, *in*, *by*, &c. as in the following scheme:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	a king,	Nom.	kings,
Gen.	<i>of</i> a king,	Gen.	<i>of</i> kings,
Dat.	<i>to</i> or <i>for</i> a king,	Dat.	<i>to</i> or <i>for</i> kings,
Acc.	a king,	Acc.	kings,
Voc.	O king,	Voc.	O kings,
Abl.	<i>with</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>in</i> or <i>by</i> a king.	Abl.	<i>with</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>by</i> kings.

## § 8. OF DECLENSION.

DECLENSION is the mode of changing the terminations of nouns, &c.

In Latin there are five declensions, called the *First*, *Second*, *Third*, *Fourth* and *Fifth*.

The declensions are distinguished from each other by the termination of the genitive singular; thus,

The first declension	has the genitive singular	in - <i>æ</i> ,
The second	"	" in - <i>i</i> ,
The third	"	" in - <i>is</i> ,
The fourth	"	" in - <i>us</i> ,
The fifth	"	" in - <i>ei</i> .

#### GENERAL RULES FOR THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative alike in both numbers, and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is like the Nominative.

3. The Dative and Ablative plural are alike.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural.

*Obs.* 1. The difference between these declensions will be seen at one view in the following

#### TABLE OF TERMINATIONS.

##### *Singular.*

	I.	II.		III.		IV.		V.
		M.	N.	M.	N.	M.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	- <i>ǣ</i> ,	- <i>us</i> ,	- <i>er</i> ,	- <i>um</i> ,	—	- <i>us</i> ,	- <i>ū</i> ,	- <i>es</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	- <i>æ</i> ,	- <i>i</i> ,		- <i>is</i> ,		- <i>ūs</i> ,	- <i>ū</i> ,	- <i>eī</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	- <i>æ</i> ,	- <i>ō</i> ,		- <i>ī</i> ,		- <i>uī</i> ,	- <i>ū</i> ,	- <i>eī</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	- <i>am</i> ,	- <i>um</i> ,	- <i>um</i> ,	- <i>em</i> ,		- <i>um</i> ,	- <i>ū</i> ,	- <i>em</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	- <i>ǣ</i> ,	- <i>ē</i> ,	- <i>er</i> ,	- <i>um</i> ,	—	- <i>us</i> ,	- <i>ū</i> ,	- <i>es</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	- <i>ā</i> .	- <i>ō</i> .		- <i>ē</i> or - <i>ī</i> .		- <i>ū</i> .	- <i>ū</i> .	- <i>ē</i> .

*Plural.*

	I.	II.		III.		IV.		V.
		M.	N.	M.	N.	M.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	-æ,	-ī,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,
<i>Gen.</i>	-ārum,	-ōrum,		-um, -ium,		-uum,		-ērum,
<i>Dat.</i>	-is,	-is,		-ibus,		-ibus, or -ūbus,		-ēbus,
<i>Acc.</i>	-as,	-os,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,
<i>Voc.</i>	-æ,	-ī,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,
<i>Abl.</i>	-is.	-is.		-ibus.		-ibus, or -ūbus.		-ēbus.

*Obs. 2.* The terminations of the Nominative singular in the third declension being numerous, are omitted in the table. The terminations of the Gen. Dat. and Abl., Neuter are the same as the Masculine.

## § 9. THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The First Declension has four terminations; two feminine, *a, e*, and two masculine, *as, es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*: the rest are Greek.

## TERMINATIONS.

*Singular.*

<i>Nom.</i>	-ă,
<i>Gen.</i>	-æ,
<i>Dat.</i>	-æ,
<i>Acc.</i>	-am,
<i>Voc.</i>	-ă,
<i>Abl.</i>	-ă.

*Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i>	-æ,
<i>Gen.</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	-is,
<i>Acc.</i>	-as,
<i>Voc.</i>	-æ,
<i>Abl.</i>	-is.

PENNA, *a pen*, Fem.*Singular.*

<i>N.</i>	penn-ă,	<i>a pen,</i>
<i>G.</i>	penn-æ,	<i>of a pen,</i>
<i>D.</i>	penn-æ,	<i>to, or for a pen,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	penn-am,	<i>a pen,</i>
<i>V.</i>	penn-ă,	<i>O pen,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	penn-ă,	<i>with a pen.</i>

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	penn-æ,	<i>pens,</i>
<i>G.</i>	penn-ārum,	<i>of pens,</i>
<i>D.</i>	penn-is,	<i>to, or for pens,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	penn-as,	<i>pens</i>
<i>V.</i>	penn-æ,	<i>O pens,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	penn-is,	<i>with pens.</i>

*Note.*—The words declined as examples in this and the other declensions, are not divided into syllables, and the hyphen (-) is never to be regarded as a division of syllables, but only as separating the root from the termination, as *penn-a*, *agr-i*, &c.

In like manner decline,

*Ara*, an altar; *Sella*, a seat; *Tuba*, a trumpet; *Litera*, a letter.

### Additional Examples.

<i>Ala</i> , a wing.	<i>Faba</i> , a bean.	<i>Ripa</i> , a bank.
<i>Arca</i> , a chest.	<i>Hora</i> , an hour.	<i>Turba</i> , a crowd.
<i>Casa</i> , a cottage.	<i>Mensa</i> , a table.	<i>Unda</i> , a wave.
<i>Causa</i> , a cause.	<i>Norma</i> , a rule.	<i>Virga</i> , a rod.

### EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. Nouns in *ā*, denoting appellations of men, as *pincernā*, a butler; names of rivers, (§ 7, *Obs.* 2,) likewise *Hadriā*, the Hadriatic; *cometā*, a comet; *planetā*, a planet; and sometimes *talpā*, a mole; and *damā*, a fallow-deer, are masculine. *Paschā*, the passover, is neuter.

### EXCEPTIONS IN CASE.

2. *The Genitive Singular.*—The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive in *-āi*; as *aulā*, a hall; Gen. *aulāi*;—sometimes in *-as*, as *mater-familiās*, the mother of a family, (See § 18, 9.)

3. *The Accusative Singular.*—Greek nouns in *a*, have sometimes *-an*, in the accusative sing.; as, *Maian*, *Ossan*.

4. *The Dative and Ablative Plural.*—The following nouns have *-abus* instead of *-is*, in the Dative and Ablative plural, to distinguish them from masculine nouns in *-us*, of the second declension, viz.

<i>Dea</i> , a goddess.	<i>Filia</i> , a daughter.
<i>Equa</i> , a mare.	<i>Mula</i> , a she mule.

### GREEK NOUNS.

Greek nouns in *-as*, *-es*, and *-e*, are declined as follows, in the singular number:—

<i>Æneas, Æneas.</i>	<i>Anchises, Anchises. Penelope, Penelope.</i>	
N. <i>Ænē-as,</i>	N. <i>Anchis-es,</i>	N. <i>Penelop e,</i>
G. <i>Ænē-æ,</i>	G. <i>Anchis-æ,</i>	G. <i>Penelop-es,</i>
D. <i>Ænē-æ,</i>	D. <i>Anchis-æ,</i>	D. <i>Penelop-e,</i>
Ac. <i>Ænē-am, or -an,</i>	Ac. <i>Anchis-en,</i>	Ac. <i>Penelop-en,</i>
V. <i>Ænē-ā,</i>	V. <i>Anchis-e,</i>	V. <i>Penelop-e,</i>
Ab. <i>Ænē-ā.</i>	Ab. <i>Anchis-e.</i>	Ab. <i>Penelop-e.</i>

Like *Æneas*, decline *Boreas*, the north wind; *Midas*, a king of Phrygia.

Like *Anchises*, decline *Alcides*, a name of Hercules; *cometes*, a comet; *Pelides*, Achilles, the son of Peleus.

Like *Penelope*, decline *Circe*, a famous sorceress; *Cybèle*, the mother of the gods; *Epitème*, an abridgment; *Grammaticæ*, grammar.

*Obs. 1.* When the plural of proper names occurs, it is like the plural of *penna*; thus, *Atridæ*, *Atridarum*, &c.

*Obs. 2.* Nouns in *-es* have sometimes *ā* in the Vocative, more rarely *ā*. Nouns in *-stes* have *-sta*. They also sometimes have the Accusative in *-em*, and the Ablative in *-ā*.

#### EXERCISES ON THE FIRST DECLENSION.\*

1. *Tell the case and number of the following words and translate them accordingly:*—*Penna*, *pennam*, *pennarum*, *pennis*, *pennā*, *pennæ*;—*aram*, *aris*, *sellæ*, *sellā*, *sellā*, *sellarum*; *tubis*, *tubam*, *tubæ*, *literā*, *literarum*, *pennis*, *aras*, *tubæ*, *literis*;—*Penelopes*, *Penelopen*, *Ænēan*, *Anchises*, *Anchisæ*, *Ænea*.

2. *Translate the following words into Latin:*—The pen, of pens, with pens, from a pen, in a pen, by pens; from the altars; of a trumpet; with letters; a seat; O altar; the seat of Penelope; of Æneas; with Anchises; a trumpet; from the altar; to a seat; with a pen; of the altars; &c. *ad libitum*.

\* Words in the above exercises. Proper names usually to be translated in the nominative case.

*Penna*, a pen.  
*Ara*, an altar.  
*Sella*, a seat.

*Tuba*, a trumpet.  
*Litera*, a letter.

## § 10. THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The Second Declension has seven terminations: namely,

Five masculine, *-er, -ir, -ur, -us, and -os.*

Two Neuter, *-um, and -on.*

Of these terminations, *-os, and -on,* are Greek; the rest are Latin.

## TERMINATIONS.

Masculine.		Neuter.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>-er, -us,</i>	N. <i>-i,</i>	N. <i>-um,</i>	N. <i>-a,</i>
G. <i>-i,</i>	G. <i>-orum,</i>	G. <i>-i,</i>	G. <i>-orum,</i>
D. <i>-o,</i>	D. <i>-is,</i>	D. <i>-o,</i>	D. <i>-is,</i>
Ac. <i>-um,</i>	Ac. <i>-os,</i>	Ac. <i>-um,</i>	Ac. <i>-a,</i>
V. <i>-e, or like nom.</i>	V. <i>-i,</i>	V. <i>-um,</i>	V. <i>-a,</i>
Ab. <i>-o.</i>	Ab. <i>-is.</i>	Ab. <i>-o.</i>	Ab. <i>-is.</i>

*Rem.* Nouns in *-er, -ir, and -ur,* add *-i* in the genitive; but *-us* and *um* are changed into *-i.*

## PUER, a boy, Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. puer,	a boy,	N. puer-i,	boys,
G. puer-i,	of a boy,	G. puer-orum,	of boys,
D. puer-o,	to, or for a boy,	D. puer-is,	to, or for boys,
Ac. puer-um,	a boy,	Ac. puer-os,	boys,
V. puer,	O boy,	V. puer-i,	O boys,
Ab. puer-o.	with, &c. a boy.	Ab. puer-is.	with, &c. boys.

Thus decline,

Gener, a son-in-law; Liber, Bacchus; Mulciber, Vulcan; Vir, a Man.

RULE 1. But most nouns in *er,* lose *e,* in the genitive; as,

## LIBER, a book, Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>	
N. liber,	N. libr-i,	Ager,	a field.
G. libr-i,	G. libr-orum,	Aper,	a wild boar.
D. libr-o,	D. libr-is,	Culter,	a knife.
Ac. libr-um,	Ac. libr-os,	Magister,	a master.
V. liber,	V. libr-i,	Auster,	the south wind.
Ab. libr-o.	Ab. libr-is.	Cancer,	a crab.

**RULE 2.** Nouns in *-us*, have the Vocative in *-e*, as *ventus, vente*.

**DOMINUS, a lord, Masc.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>	
N. domin-us,	N. domin-i,	Ventus,	<i>the wind.</i>
G. domin-i,	G. domin-ōrum,	Oculus,	<i>the eye</i>
D. domin-o,	D. domin-is,	Annus,	<i>a year.</i>
Ac. domin-um,	Ac. domin-os,	Fluvius,	<i>a river.</i>
V. domin-e,	V. domin-i,	Hortus,	<i>a garden</i>
Ab. domin-o.	Ab. domin-is.	Radius,	<i>a ray.</i>

**REGNUM, a kingdom, Neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>	
N. regn-um,	N. regn-a,	Antrum,	<i>a cave.</i>
G. regn-i,	G. regn-ōrum,	Astrum,	<i>a star.</i>
D. regn-o,	D. regn-is,	Donum,	<i>a gift.</i>
Ac. re n-um,	Ac. regn-a,	Jugum,	<i>a yoke.</i>
V. regn-um,	V. regn-a,	Saxum,	<i>a stone.</i>
Ab. regn-o.	Ab. regn-is.	Pomum,	<i>an apple.</i>

**Promiscuous Examples.**

Arbiter, <i>a judge.</i>	Folium, <i>a leaf.</i>	Socer, <i>a father-in-law</i>
Bellum, <i>war.</i>	Gladus, <i>a sword.</i>	Telum, <i>a dart.</i>
Cadus, <i>a cask.</i>	Lupus, <i>a wolf.</i>	Torus, <i>a couch.</i>
Cervus, <i>a stag.</i>	Murus, <i>a wall.</i>	Tectum, <i>the roof.</i>
Collum, <i>the neck.</i>	Nidus, <i>a nest.</i>	Truncus, <i>the trunk.</i>
Equus, <i>a horse.</i>	Ovum, <i>an egg.</i>	Velum, <i>a sail.</i>
Faber, <i>an artist.</i>	Prælium, <i>a battle.</i>	Vadum, <i>a ford.</i>
Ficus, <i>f. a figtree.</i>	Ramus, <i>a branch.</i>	Votum, <i>a vow.</i>

#### EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

*Exc. 1.* Of nouns ending in *-us*, the names of plants, towns, islands and precious stones, with few exceptions, are feminine, § 7, Obs. 2.

*Exc. 2.* Besides these, only four words originally Latin, are feminine; viz. *alvus*, the belly; *colus*, the distaff; *humus*, the ground; and *vannus*, a winnowing fan.

*Exc. 3.* *Virus*, juice, poison, and *pelagus*, the sea, are neuter. *Vulgus*, the common people, is both masculine and neuter. *Pampinus*, a vine branch, is rarely feminine, commonly masculine.

*Exc. 4.* Many Greek nouns in *-us*, are feminine, especially compounds of ἡ ὁδος; as, *methodus*, *periodus*, &c. So also, *biblus*, *papyrus*, *diphthongus*, *paraphus*, *diametrus*, *permetrus*.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

*Exc. 5. The Vocative Singular.* 1st. Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the Vocative; as *Georgius*, V. *Georgi*; except *Pius* which has *Pie*.

In like manner, *filius*, a son, has *fili*, and *genius*, one's guardian angel, has *geni*. But other nouns in *-ius*, and such epithets as *Delius*, *Saturnius*, &c. not considered as proper names, have *ie*.

2d. *Deus* has *deus* in the vocative, and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, (sometimes contracted *dī* and *dis*,) than *dei* and *deis*. *Meus*, my, has the vocative *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

*Obs.* The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *-us*, like the nominative; rarely so in prose. Sometimes, also, they change nouns in *-er* into *-us*, as *Evander* or *Evan-drus*; in the vocative, *Evander* or *Evandre*.

*Exc. 6. The Genitive Singular.*—The genitive of singular nouns in *ius* and *ium*, in the purest age of Latin was formed in *i*, not *ii*, both in prose and verse, as *fili*, *Tulli*, *ingeni*; they are now frequently written with a circumflex; thus, *filī*, *Tullī*, *ingeni*, for *filii*, *Tullii*, &c.

*Exc. 7. The Genitive Plural.*—Some nouns especially those which denote value, measure, weight, commonly form the genitive plural in *-ūm* instead of *-ōrum*; as, *nummūm*, *sestertiūm*, &c. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deūm*, *Danaūm*, &c.; also, *divom* is used for *divōrum*.

*Deus*, a god, is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	De-us,	N.	De-i, or Di-i,    Contr. Dī,
G.	De-i,	G.	De-ōrum,
D.	De-o,	D.	De-is, or Di-is,    “    Dis,
Ac.	De-um,	Ac.	De-os,
V.	De-us,	V.	De-i, or Di-i,    “    Dī,
Ab.	De-o.	Ab.	De-is, or Di-is,    “    Dis



## GREEK NOUNS.

Greek nouns in *-os* and *-on*, are often changed into *-us* and *-um*; as *Alpheos*, *Alpheus*; *Ilion*, *Ilium*. Those in *-ros*, into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*. When thus changed, they are declined like Latin nouns of the same termination. Otherwise

Greek nouns are thus declined.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	Del-os, Androge-os,	N.	barbit-on, barbit-a,
G.	Del-i, Androge-o, or -i,	G.	barbit-i, barbit-ôn,
D.	Del-o, Androge-o,	D.	barbit-o, barbit-is,
Ac.	Del-on, Androge-o, or -on,	Ac.	barbit-on, barbit-a,
V.	Del-e, Androge-os,	V.	barbit-on, barbit-a,
Ab.	Del-o. Androge-o.	Ab.	barbit-o. barbit-is.

Some nouns in *-os*, anciently had the genitive in *u*; as *Menandru*. *Panthu* occurs in Virgil as the vocative of *Panthus*. Proper names in *-eus* are declined like *dominus*, but have the vocative in *-eus*, and sometimes contract the genitive singular as *Orpheû*, *Orphei*, or *Orphi*. When *-eu* is a diphthong, they are of the third declension. Other nouns, also, are sometimes of the third declension; as, *Androgeo*, *Androgeonis*.

## EXERCISES ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.\*

Tell the case and number of the following words and translate them accordingly:—*Pueri*, *dominorum*, *domino*, *puero*, *puerum*, *pueros*, *libri*, *libris*, *librum*, *libro*, *dominis*, *domine*, *regnum*, *regna*, *regnorum*—*ventus*, *vento*, *ventum*—*oculus*, *oculorum*—*fili*, *filiis*, *filios*.

Translate the following words into Latin:—To a boy, from a boy, O boy, O boys, of boys, books, of books, for books, in books, with a book, a lord, from a lord, to a lord, of lords, the lords, of a kingdom, the kingdom, to the kingdoms, to the winds of heaven, lords of the soil, &c. *ad libitum*.

\* Words in the above Exercises,

<i>Puer</i> ,	<i>a boy.</i>	<i>Regnum</i> ,	<i>a kingdom.</i>	<i>Solum</i> ,	<i>the soil</i>
<i>Dominus</i> ,	<i>a lord.</i>	<i>Ventus</i> ,	<i>the wind.</i>	<i>Oculus</i> ,	<i>the eye.</i>
<i>Liber</i>	<i>a book.</i>	<i>Coelum</i> .	<i>heaven.</i>	<i>Filius</i>	<i>a son.</i>

## § 11. THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns of the third declension are very numerous; they are of all genders; and generally increase one syllable in the oblique cases.\* Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these *a, i, y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

## TERMINATIONS.

Masculine and Feminine.		Neuter.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N. —,</i>	<i>N. -es,</i>	<i>N. —,</i>	<i>N. -a,</i>
<i>G. -is,</i>	<i>G. -um, or -ium,</i>	<i>G. -is,</i>	<i>G. -um, or -ium,</i>
<i>D. -i,</i>	<i>D. -ibus,</i>	<i>D. -i</i>	<i>D. -ibus,</i>
<i>Ac. -em,</i>	<i>Ac. -es,</i>	<i>Ac. —,</i>	<i>Ac. -a,</i>
<i>V. —,</i>	<i>V. -es,</i>	<i>V. —,</i>	<i>V. -a,</i>
<i>Ab. -e, or -i.</i>	<i>Ab. -ibus.</i>	<i>Ab. -e, or -i.</i>	<i>Ab. -ibus.</i>

## GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. In this declension, the Nominative and Vocative, of Masculine and Feminine nouns are always alike. As the final syllables of the nominative are very numerous, a dash (—) supplies their place in the above table. Neuter nouns come under the general rule, § 8. 1.

2. All nouns of this declension are declined by annexing the above *case-endings*, or terminations to the *root*.

3. The *Root* consists of all that stands before *-is* in the genitive, and remains unchanged throughout. Hence, when the genitive case is found, the cases after that are alike in all nouns, except as noticed hereafter.

4. The genitive of nouns in this declension, will be most easily learned from the Dictionary, as all rules that can be given are rendered nearly useless by the number of exceptions under them.

5. In the following examples, the root and terminations are separated by a hyphen (-) in order to shew more distinctly the regularity of the declension. This being mentioned, it

---

\* A noun is said to *increase* when it has more syllables in any case than it has in the nominative.

will occasion no difficulty, though standing as it often does, in the middle of a syllable; as, *pá tr-is*.

## § 12. EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

### 1. SERMO, *a speech*, Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
N. Sermo,	N. Sermōn-es,	Carbo, <i>a coal</i> . Leo, <i>a lion</i> . Pavo, <i>a peacock</i> . Prædo, <i>a robber</i> .
G. Sermōn-is,	G. Sermōn-um,	
D. Sermōn-i,	D. Sermōn-ibus,	
Ac. Sermōn-em,	Ac. Sermōn-es,	
V. Sermo,	V. Sermōn-es,	
Ab. Sermōn-e.	Ab. Sermōn-ibus.	

### 2. COLOR, *a color*, Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
N. color,	N. colōr-es,	Honor, <i>honor</i> . Lector, <i>a reader</i> . Pastor, <i>a shepherd</i> .
G. colōr-is,	G. colōr-um,	
D. colōr-i,	D. colōr-ibus,	
Ac. colōr-em,	Ac. colōr-es,	
V. color,	V. colōr-es,	
Ab. colōr-e.	Ab. colōr-ibus.	

### 3. MILES, *a soldier*, Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
N. miles,	N. milit-es,	Comes, <i>a companion</i> . Limes, <i>a limit</i> . Trames, <i>a path</i> .
G. milit-is,	G. milit-um,	
D. milit-i,	D. milit-ibus,	
Ac. milit-em,	Ac. milit-es,	
V. miles,	V. milit-es,	
Ab. milit-e.	Ab. milit-ibus.	

**RULE 1.** Nouns in *-es* and *-is*, not increasing in the genitive singular, have *-ium* in the genitive plural.

Except *canis*, a dog; *panis*, bread; *vatis*, a prophet; *juvenis*, a young man; and *volucris* a bird.

4. *RUPES, a rock, Fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
<i>N.</i> rup-es,	<i>N.</i> rup-es,	<i>Apis, a bee.</i>
<i>G.</i> rup-is,	<i>G.</i> rup-ium,	<i>Classis, a fleet.</i>
<i>D.</i> rup-i,	<i>D.</i> rup-ibus,	<i>Moles, a mass.</i>
<i>Ac.</i> rup-em,	<i>Ac.</i> rup-es,	<i>Nubes, a cloud.</i>
<i>V.</i> rup-es,	<i>V.</i> rup-es,	<i>Vitis, a vine.</i>
<i>Ab.</i> rup-e.	<i>Ab.</i> rup-ibus.	<i>Vulpes, a fox.</i>

**RULE 2.** Nouns of one syllable in *-as* and *-is*, and also, in *s* and *x*, after a consonant have *-ium* in the genitive plural; as,

5. *PARS, a part, Fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
<i>N.</i> pars,	<i>N.</i> part-es,	<i>Calx, -cis, the heel.</i>
<i>G.</i> part-is,	<i>G.</i> part-ium,	<i>Vas, -dis, a surety.</i>
<i>D.</i> part-i,	<i>D.</i> part-ibus,	<i>Lis, -tis, a law-suit.</i>
<i>Ac.</i> part-em,	<i>Ac.</i> part-es,	<i>Arx, -cis, a citadel.</i>
<i>V.</i> pars,	<i>V.</i> part-es,	<i>Urbs, -is, a city.</i>
<i>Ab.</i> part-e.	<i>Ab.</i> part-ibus.	<i>Pons, -tis, a bridge.</i>

**RULE 3.** Nouns of more than one syllable in *-as* and *-ns*, have *-um*, and sometimes *-ium* in the genitive plural.

6. *PARENS, a parent, Masc. or Fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
<i>N.</i> parens,	<i>N.</i> parent-es,	<i>Rudens, a cable.</i>
<i>G.</i> parent-is,	<i>G.</i> parent-um, -ium,	<i>Cliens, a client.</i>
<i>D.</i> parent-i,	<i>D.</i> parent-ibus,	<i>Serpens, a serpent.</i>
<i>Ac.</i> parent-em,	<i>Ac.</i> parent-es,	
<i>V.</i> parens,	<i>V.</i> parent-es,	
<i>Ab.</i> parent-e.	<i>Ab.</i> parent-ibus.	

**Obs. 1.** Masculine and Feminine nouns which have *-ium* in the genitive plural, have sometimes *-is*, or *-eis*, as well as *-es* in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative plural; as, *partes, partium*. Nom. Acc. and Voc. *partes, parteis*, or *partis*.

7. OPUS, *a work*, Neut. § 8. R. 1.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>	
N. opus,	N. opĕr-a,	Funus,	<i>a funeral.</i>
G. opĕr-is,	G. opĕr-um,	Latus,	<i>the side.</i>
D. opĕr-i,	D. opĕr-ibus,	Corpus-ōris,	<i>the body.</i>
Ac. opus,	Ac. opĕr-a,	Caput, capītis,	<i>the head.</i>
V. opus,	V. opĕr-a,	Iter, itineris,	<i>a journey.</i>
Ab. opĕr-e.	Ab. opĕr-ibus.		

RULE 4. Nouns in *-e* and *-al*, and *-ar*, have *-i* in the Ablative singular; *-ium* in the Genitive plural; and *-ia* in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative plural.

*Exc.* Proper names in *-e* have *-e* in the Ablative; as, *Præneste*, Neut. a town in Italy; Ablative, *Præneste*.

8. SEDILE, *a seat*, Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>	
N. sedīl-e,	N. sedīl-ia,	Ancīle,	<i>a shield.</i>
G. sedīl-is,	G. sedīl-ium,	Mantīle,	<i>a towel.</i>
D. sedīl-i,	D. sedīl-ibus,	Mare,	<i>the sea.</i>
Ac. sedīl-e,	Ac. sedīl-ia,	Rete,	<i>a net.</i>
V. sedīl-e,	V. sedīl-ia,	Cubile,	<i>a couch.</i>
Ab. sedīl-i.	Ab. sedīl-ibus.		

9. ANIMAL, *an animal*, Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>	
N. animal,	N. animal-ia,	Cubital,	<i>a cushion.</i>
G. animal-is,	G. animal-ium,	Calcar,	<i>a spur.</i>
D. animal-i,	D. animal-ibus,	Vectigal,	<i>a tax.</i>
Ac. animal,	Ac. animal-ia,		
V. animal,	V. animal-ia,		
Ab. animal-i.	Ab. animal-ibus.		

## ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Acer, -ĕris, n.	<i>a maple tree.</i>	Homo, -īnis, c.	<i>a man</i>
Ætas, -ātis, f.	<i>age.</i>	Imago, -īnis, f.	<i>an image.</i>
Arbor, -ōris, f.	<i>a tree.</i>	Iter, itinĕris, n.	<i>a journey</i>
Aries, -ētis, m.	<i>a ram.</i>	Lac, -tis, n.	<i>milk.</i>
Ars -tis, f.	<i>an art</i>	Lapis, -īdis, m	<i>a stone</i>

Canon, -ōnis, m.	<i>a rule.</i>	Laus, -dis, f.	<i>praise</i>
Carcer, -ēris, m.	<i>a prison.</i>	Lex, lēgis, f.	<i>a law</i>
Cardo, -inis, m.	<i>a hinge.</i>	Monile, -is, f.	<i>a necklace</i>
Carmen, -inis, n.	<i>a poem.</i>	Mons, -tis, m.	<i>a mountain</i>
Cervix, -icis, f.	<i>the neck</i>	Munus, -ēris, n.	<i>a gift.</i>
Codex, -icis, m.	<i>a book</i>	Nox, noctis, f.	<i>night.</i>
Consul, -ūlis, m.	<i>a consul.</i>	Onus, -ēris, n.	<i>a burden</i>
Cor, cordis, n.	<i>the heart.</i>	Ovile, -is, n.	<i>a sheepfold</i>
Crux, -ūcis, f.	<i>a cross.</i>	Pecten, -inis, m.	<i>a comb.</i>
Cubile, -is, n.	<i>a couch.</i>	Regio, -ōnis, f.	<i>a region.</i>
Dens, -tis, m.	<i>a tooth.</i>	Salar, -aris, m.	<i>a trout.</i>
Dos, dōtis, f.	<i>a dowry.</i>	Serpens, -tis, c.	<i>a serpent.</i>
Femur, -ōris, n.	<i>the thigh.</i>	Toral, -alis, n.	<i>a bed cover.</i>
Formido, -inis, f.	<i>fear.</i>	Trabs, -ābis, f.	<i>a beam.</i>
Fornax, -ācis, f.	<i>a furnace.</i>	Turris, -is, f.	<i>a tower.</i>
Frater, -tris, m.	<i>a brother.</i>	Uter, utris, m.	<i>a bottle.</i>
Fur, fūris, c.	<i>a thief.</i>	Virgo, -inis, f.	<i>a virgin.</i>
Genus, -ēris, n.	<i>a kind.</i>	Voluptas, -ātis, f.	<i>pleasure.</i>
Hæres, -ēdis, c.	<i>an heir.</i>	Vulnus, -ēris, n.	<i>a wound.</i>

## EXERCISES ON THE EXAMPLES.

*Tell the case and number of the following words and translate them accordingly:—*Sermonis, sermonum, coloribus, colori, colore, colores, militum, militis, militem, militibus, rupis, rupe, rupium, rupi, rupibus, partium, partes, parte, partis, parenti, parente, parentum, parentes, parentis, opera, opere, operi, operibus, operum, sedilis, sedilia, sedilibus, sedili, sedilium, animalia, animalis, animali.

*Translate the following words into Latin:—*Of a rock, of rocks, from a soldier, with soldiers, to a seat, seats, of seats, the works, of a soldier, to the color, of a rock, a seat, for a parent, the speech, of a parent, to a soldier, the color of an animal, from rocks, to rocks, &c. *ad libitum.*

## § 13. GENDER OF NOUNS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## 1. MASCULINE NOUNS.

**RULE I.**—Nouns in *n*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing in the genitive, and *os*, are generally masculine.

### Exceptions in N.

FEM. *Sindon*, *ædon*, *halcyon*, and *icon*, are feminine.

NEUT. *Gluten*, *unguen*, *inguen*, *pollen*, and all nouns in *men*; as *carmen*, *nomen*, etc., are neuter.

### Exceptions in O.

FEM. 1. Nouns in *io*, denoting things incorporeal, are feminine.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, with *grando*, *virgo*, and sometimes *margo*, are feminine. But *harpāgo*, *comido*, *unido* and *Cupido*, Cupid, are masculine. Note. *Cupido*, desire, in prose, is always feminine; in poetry, often masculine.

3. *Caro*, flesh, is feminine, and Greek nouns in *o*; as, *echo*, *Argo*.

### Exceptions in ER.

FEM. *Tuber*, the tuber-tree, and sometimes *linter*, a boat, fem.

NEUT. *Acer*, *cadāver*, *cicer*, *iter*, *laser*, *laver*, *papāver*, *piper*, *siler*, *spinther*, *suber*, *tuber*, a swelling, *uber*, *ver*, *verber*, *zingiber*, and sometimes *siser*, are neuter.

### Exceptions in OR.

FEM. *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine. § 7. Obs. 2.

NEUT. *Ador*, *æquor*, *marmor*, and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

### Exceptions in ES, increasing in the genitive.

FEM. *Compes*, *merces*, *merges*, *quies*, *requies*, *inquies*, *seges*, *teges*, *tudes*, and sometimes *ales*, a bird, are feminine.

NEUT. *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

### Exceptions in OS.

FEM. *Arbos*, (§ 7, Obs. 2) *cos*, *dos*, *eos*, are feminine.

NEUT. *Os*, the mouth, *os*, a bone; also the Greek *chaos*, *epos*, and *melos*, are neuter.

## 2. FEMININE NOUNS.

RULE II—Nouns in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, and *is*; *s*, after a consonant, and *x*, are for the most part feminine.

### Exceptions in AS.

MASC. *As*, a piece of money, and Greek nouns in *as*, *-antis*, masc.

NEUT. *Vas*, a vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, *-atis*, are neuter.

### Exceptions in ES, not increasing in the genitive.

MASC. *Acināces*, *coles*, and sometimes *palumbes*, and *vepres*, masc  
NEUT. *Cacoēthes*, *hippomānes*, *nepenthes*, and *panāces*, Greek, neut.

### Exceptions in IS.

MASC. 1. Latin nouns in *nis*, are masc. But *amnis*, *cinis*, *clunis*, *finis*, and *funis*, are sometimes feminine. *Fines*, boundaries, in the plural is always masculine.

2. The following nouns are masculine, viz :

Axis,	Cossis,	Lapis,	Semissis.
Aqualis,	Cucūmis,	Mensis,	Sentis.
Callis,	Decussis,	Mugīlis,	Sodalis
Cassis,	Ensis,	Orbis,	Torris.
Caulis, or }	Fascis,	Piscis,	Unguis.
Colis, }	Follis,	Pollis,	Vectis.
Centussis,	Fustis,	Postis,	Vermis.
Collis,	Glis,	Sanguis,	Vomis.

MASC. or FEM. *Anguis*, *canālis*, *cenchris*, *corbis*, *pulvis*, *scrobis*, *tigris*, *torquis*, are masculine or feminine.

### Exceptions in S, after a consonant.

MASC. 1. *Dens*, *fons*, *mons*, and *pons*; also *chalybs*, *ellops*, *epops*, *gryps*, *hydrops*, *merops*, and *seps*, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *ns*; originally participles, and compounds of *dens*, as *occidens*, *oriens*, *bidens*; also *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, etc., parts of *as*, are masculine; but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine.

MASC. or FEM. *Adeps*, *forceps*, *rudens*, *scrobs*, *serpens*, *stirps*.

Note. *Animans*, a living creature, is of all genders

### Exceptions in X.

MASC. 1. AX. *Corax*, *cordax*, *dropax*, *styrax*, *thorax*, are masc.

2. EX. All nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *lex*, *nex*, *suppellex*, feminine; *cortex*, *imbrex*, *obex*, *rumex*, *silex*, sometimes feminine; *grex* and *pumex*, rarely feminine; and *atriplex*, neuter.

3. IX. *Calix*, *fornix*, *phœnix*, *spadix*, are masculine, and sometimes *perdis* and *varix*; otherwise feminine.

4. OX. *Box*, *esox*, and *volvox*, are masculine.

5. UX. *Tradux*, is masculine.

6. YX. *Bombyx*, a silk worm, *calyx*, *coccyx*, *oryx*, are masculine; but *onyx*, and *sandyx*, are masc. or fem.

7. NX. *Quincunx*, *septunx*, *decunx*, *deunx*, parts of *as*, are masculine; *lynx* is masculine or feminine.

*Calx*, lime, is feminine; *calx*, the heel, masc. or feminine.

*Bombyx*, silk, is feminine.

NEUT. *Atriplex*, gold-herb, is neuter.



## 3. NEUTER NOUNS.

**RULE III.**—Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *c* and *t*, are always neuter; those in *l*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are almost always neuter.

*Exceptions in L.*

**MASC.** *Mugil*, and *sol*, are masculine; *sal*, in the singular, is masculine or feminine; in the plural, always masculine.

*Exceptions in AR and UR.*

**MASC.** *Furfur*, *salar*, *turtur*, and *vultur*, are masculine

*Exceptions in US.*

**MASC.** *Lepus*, *mus*, and Greek nouns in *pus* (except *lagopus*, feminine), are masculine.

**FEM.** Nouns in *us*, having *utis*, or *adis*, in the genitive; also *pecus*, *-adis*, *tellus*, *fraus*, *laus* and *lagopus*, are feminine. *G-us*, is masculine or feminine.

## § 15. EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

## THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

1. The following nouns in *-is* have *-im* in the Accusative.

*Amussis*, f. *a measure, rule*.

*Buris*, f. *the beam of a plough*.

*Canabis*, f. *hemp*.

*Cucumis*, m. *a cucumber*.

*Gummis*, f. *gum*.

*Mephitis*, f. *a strong smell*.

*Ravis*, f. *a hoarseness*

*Sinapis*, f. *mustard*.

*Sitis*, f. *thirst*.

*Tussis*, f. *a cough*.

*Vis*, f. *strength*.

2. Proper names in *-is* have *-im* in the Accusative; viz.

Names of cities and other places; as, *Bilbilis*, f. *a city of Spain*; *Syrtis*, f. *a quicksand on the coast of Africa*.

Names of rivers; as *Tiberis*, m. *the Tiber*; *Bætis*, m. *the Guadalquiver*.

Names of Gods; as, *Amubis*, m. *Osiris*, m. *Egyptian Deities*.

*Note.*—These nouns have sometimes *-in* in the Accusative

3. The following nouns in *-is* have *-em*, or *-im* in the Accusative; viz.

*Aqualis*, f. a waterpot.

*Clavis*, f. a key.

*Cutis*, f. the skin.

*Febris*, f. a fever.

*Lens*, f. lentiles.

*Navis*, f. a ship.

*Pelvis*, f. a basin.

*Puppis*, f. the stern of a ship.

*Restis*, f. a rope.

*Securis*, f. an axe.

*Sementis*, f. a sowing.

*Strigilis*, f. a curry-comb.

*Turris*, f. a tower.

*Note 1.*—*Puppis*, *restis*, *securis* and *turris* have generally *-im*, the others commonly *-em*. The oldest Latin writers form the accusative of some other nouns, in *-im*; as, *avis*, *auris*.

4. Nouns which have been adopted from the Greek, sometimes retain *a* in the Accusative; as, *heros*, m. a hero, *heroa*; *Tros*, m. a Trojan, *Troa*. See No. 13.

*Note 2.*—This form is seldom used by the best prose writers and is chiefly confined to proper names, except in *-aër*, m. the air; *æther*, m. the sky; *delphin*, m. a dolphin; *Pan*, m. the god of the shepherds, which commonly have *aëra*, *æthëra*, *delphina*, and *Pana*.

*Obs. 1.* Many Greek nouns in *-es* have *-en*, as well as *-em* in the Accusative; as, *Euphrāten*, *Oresten*, *Pylāden*.

#### ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

5. Nouns in *-is* which have *-im* in the Accusative, have *-i* in the Ablative; as, *sitis*, *sitim*, *siti*.

But *cannabis*, *Bætis*, *sināpis* and *Tigris*, have *-e* or *-i*.

6. Nouns in *-is* which have *-em* or *-im* in the Accusative, have *-e* or *-i* in the Ablative; as, *clavis*, *clave* or *clavi*.

*Note 3.* But *cutis*, and *restis* have *-e* only; *securis*, *sementis*, and *strigilis*, have seldom *-e*.

7. The following nouns which have *-em* in the Accusative have *-e* or *-i* in the Ablative: viz.

*Amnis*, m. a river.

*Anguis*, m. and f. a snake

*Avis*, f. a bird

*Occiput*, n. the hind-head.

*Orbis*, m. a circle.

*Pars*, f. a part

Civis, c. a citizen.  
 Classis, f. a fleet.  
 Finis, m. and f. an end.  
 Fustis, m. a staff.  
 Ignis, m. a fire.  
 Imber, m. a shower.  
 Mugil, m. a mullet.

Postis, m. a door post.  
 Pugil, c. a pugilist.  
 Rus, n. the country  
 Sors, f. a lot.  
 Supellex, f. furniture.  
 Unguis, m. a nail.  
 Vectis, m. a lever.

Note 4. *Finis*, *mugil*, *occiput*, *pugil*, *rus*, *supellex*, and *vectis*, have -e or -i indifferently; the others have much more frequently -e.

Obs. 2. Names of Towns, when they denote the place in or at which any thing is done, take -e, or -i; as *Carthagine*, or *Carthagini*.

Obs. 3. *Canālis*, m. or f. a water pipe, has *canali* only. Likewise names of months in -is, or -er; as *Aprīlis*, *Septēber*, *Aprīli*, *Septēmbri*; and those nouns in -is, which were originally adjectives; as, *ædilis*, *affinis*, *bipennis*, *familiāris*, *natālis*, *rivālis*, *sodālis*, *volucris*, &c. This class of nouns also admits -e in the Ablative: *Rudis*, f. a rod, and *juvēnis*, c. a youth, have -e only.

8. The following Neuter Nouns in -al and -ar have -e in the Ablative: viz.

Baccar, lady's glove.	Jubar, a sunbeam.	Sal, salt.
Far, corn.	Nectar, nectar.	

Obs. 4. *Par*, when used as a substantive, forms the Ablative Singular, and Genitive Plural, in the same way as the Adjective. § 21. Rule 2.

## GENITIVE PLURAL

[See Rules, § 12.]

9. The following Nouns have -ium in the Genitive Plural:

Caro, f. flesh.	Fauce, f. the jaws.	Nox, f. night.
Cohors, f. a cohort.	Lar, m. a household god.	Os, n. a bone.
Cor, n. the heart.	Lintor, m. or f. a boat.	Quirīs, m. a Roman.
Cos, f. a whetstone.	Mus, m. a mouse.	Samnis, m. a Samnite
Dos, f. a dowry.	Nix, f. snow.	Uter, m. a bottle.

Obs. 5. The compounds of *uncia* and *as* have likewise -ium; as *Septunx*, m. seven ounces *Septuncium*; *Sextans*, m. two ounces, *Sextantium*.

*Obs* 6. *Apis*, f. a bee, has *apum* and *apium*; *opis*, f. power, has *opum* only. *Gryps*, m. a griffon; *lynx*, m. or f. a lynx; and *Sphinx*, f. the Sphinx, have *-um*. *Bōs*, c. gen. *bōvis*, an ox, has *boum*.

### DATIVE PLURAL.

10. *Bos* c. an ox has *bōbus* or *bābus* in the Dative Plural; and *sus*, c. a sow, has *suibus*, or *subus*. Nouns in *-ma*, have *-tis* as well as *-tibus*; as *poēma*, n. a poem, *poematibus* or *poemātis*. The Greek termination *-si* or *-sin* is very uncommon in prose, and is admissible only in words purely Greek. See No. 13.

### ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

11. The form of the Accusative Plural in *-as* is admissible in all words which have that termination in Greek, but is rarely used in Prose. Livy, however, frequently uses *Macedōnas*; and *Allobroγas* is found in Cæsar.

12. Some nouns of the third Declension are somewhat peculiar in different cases, as follows:

JUPITER.		VIS, force, power, Fem.	
Singular.		Singular.	Plural.
N. Jupīter,		N. vis,	N. vīr-es,
G. Jōv-is,		G. vis,	G. vīr-ium,
D. Jōv-i,		D. —,	D. vīr-ibus,
Ac. Jōv-em,		Ac. vim,	Ac. vīr-es,
V. Jupīter,		V. vis,	V. vīr-es,
Ab. Jōv-e.		Ab. vi.	Ab. vīr-ibus.

*Bos*, an ox, or cow, Masc. or Fem.

Singular.	Plural.
N. bos,	N. bōv-es,
G. bōv-is,	G. boum,
D. bōv-i,	D. bōbus, or būbus,*
Ac. bōv-em,	Ac. bōv-es,
V. bos,	V. bōv-es,
Ab. bōv-e.	Ab. bōbus, or būbus.

\* Contracted for *bovibus*.

*Civis*, c. a citizen.

*Classis*, f. a fleet.

*Finis*, m. and f. an end.

*Fustis*, m. a staff.

*Ignis*, m. a fire.

*Imber*, m. a shower.

*Mugil*, m. a mullet.

*Postis*, m. a door post.

*Pugil*, c. a pugilist.

*Rus*, n. the country

*Sors*, f. a lot.

*Supellex*, f. furniture.

*Unguis*, m. a nail.

*Vectis*, m. a lever.

*Note 4.* *Finis*, *mugil*, *occiput*, *pugil*, *rus*, *supellex*, and *vectis*, have -e or -i indifferently; the others have much more frequently -e.

*Obs. 2.* Names of Towns, when they denote the place in or at which any thing is done, take -e, or -i; as *Carthagine*, or *Carthagini*.

*Obs. 3.* *Canālis*, m. or f. a water pipe, has *canali* only. Likewise names of months in -is, or -er; as *Aprīlis*, *September*, *Aprīli*, *Septembri*; and those nouns in -is, which were originally adjectives; as, *ædilis*, *affinis*, *bipennis*, *familiāris*, *natālis*, *rivālis*, *sodālis*, *volucris*, &c. This class of nouns also admits -e in the Ablative: *Rudis*, f. a rod, and *juvēnis*, c. a youth, have -e only.

8. The following Neuter Nouns in -al and -ar have -e in the Ablative: viz.

*Baccar*, lady's glove.

*Jubar*, a sunbeam.

*Sal*, salt.

*Far*, corn.

*Nectar*, nectar.

*Obs. 4.* *Par*, when used as a substantive, forms the Ablative Singular, and Genitive Plural, in the same manner as the Adjective. § 21. Rule 2.

#### GENITIVE PLURAL

[See Rule 2.]

9. The following Neuter Nouns form the Genitive Plural:

*Caro*, f. flesh.

night.

*Cohors*, f. a cohort.

bone.

*Cor*, n. the heart.

Roman.

*Cos*, f. a coin.

a Samnite.

*Dos*, f. a dowry.

bottle.

*Os*, n. a bone.

likewise -ium;

*Se*, f. a seed.

two ounces; *Se*.

Obs. & *apina* is a bee. has *apam* and *apiam*; *apis*. f. *apam* and *open* only. *Gryps*. m. a griffin: *lyar*, m. or f. a tyrant: and *apam*: f. the Sphinx, *lyar* and *apam*. Bös. c. gen. *bövis*, *arox*, has *apam*.

DATIVE PLURAL.

Y. Bacc. var. *DN* has *lobus* or *lobatus* in the Latin Plura and  
 it is a *sov.* has *sinuatus* or *sinuata*. Notice it has *sinu-* in a few  
 places: as *sinuatus*, in a poem, *sinuatus* or *sinuata*. The Greek  
*sinuatus* or *sinuata* is very common in *poem.* and in *sinuatus*  
 in *poem.* *sinuatus* or *sinuata*. See No. 1.

### ACCUSATIVE PLURAL

The following is a summary of the information received from the Bureau of the Census, Department of Commerce, regarding the results of the 1950 Census of the United States and its possessions:

~~SOME DOUBTS AS TO THE RELIABILITY OF THE INFORMATION~~

**JURAT**

**Sandwich**

**1. Introduction**

3.

wri  
; as,  
ative  
etui ;

Plu-  
cur-  
instead

belonged  
- *aruis.*

## 13. GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abi</i>
<i>S. Lamp-as,</i>	<i>-adis, or ados,</i>	<i>-adi,</i>	<i>-adem, or -ada,</i>	<i>-as,</i>	<i>-ade.</i>
<i>Pl. Lamp-ades,</i>	<i>-adum,</i>	<i>-adibus,</i>	<i>-ades, or adas,</i>	<i>-ades,</i>	<i>-adibus</i>
<i>S. Tro-as,</i>	<i>-adis, or -ados,</i>	<i>-adi,</i>	<i>-adem, or ada,</i>	<i>-as,</i>	<i>-ade.</i>
<i>Pl. Tro-ades,</i>	<i>-adum,</i>	<i>{ -adibus, -asi, or -asin,</i>	<i>-ades, or -adas,</i>	<i>-ades,</i>	<i>{ -adibus, -asi, or -asin.</i>
<i>S. Tros,</i>	<i>Trois,</i>	<i>Troi,</i>	<i>Troem, or Troa,</i>	<i>Tros,</i>	<i>Troe.</i>
<i>S. Phyll-is,</i>	<i>-idis, or -idos,</i>	<i>-idi,</i>	<i>-idem, or -ida,</i>	<i>-i, or -is,</i>	<i>-ide.</i>
<i>S. Par-is,</i>	<i>-idis, or -idos,</i>	<i>-idi,</i>	<i>-idem, -im, or -in,</i>	<i>-i,</i>	<i>-ide.</i>
<i>S. Chlam-ys,</i>	<i>-ydis, or -ydos,</i>	<i>-ydi,</i>	<i>-ydem, or -ida,</i>	<i>-ys,</i>	<i>-yde.</i>
<i>S. Cap-ys,</i>	<i>-yis, or -yos,</i>	<i>-yi,</i>	<i>-ym, or -yn,</i>	<i>-y,</i>	<i>-ye.</i>
<i>S. Hæres-is,</i>	<i>-is, or -eos,</i>	<i>-i,</i>	<i>-im, or -in,</i>	<i>-i,</i>	<i>-i.</i>
<i>S. Qrph-eus,</i>	<i>-eos, or -ei, or ei,</i>	<i>-ei, or -ei,</i>	<i>-ea,</i>	<i>-eu,</i>	<i>-eo.</i>
<i>S. Did-o,</i>	<i>-us, or onis,</i>	<i>-o, or -oni,</i>	<i>-o, or -onem,</i>	<i>-o,</i>	<i>-o, or -one.</i>

## § 16. THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The Fourth Declension has two terminations, *-us* and *-u*. Nouns in *-us* are Masculine. Those in *-u* are Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

## TERMINATIONS.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. -us,</i>	<i>N. -us,</i>	<i>-ua,</i>
<i>G. -ûs,</i>	<i>G. -uum,</i>	<i>-uum,</i>
<i>D. -ui,</i>	<i>D. -ibus,</i>	<i>-ibus,</i>
<i>Ac. -um,</i>	<i>Ac. -us,</i>	<i>-ua,</i>
<i>V. -us,</i>	<i>V. -us,</i>	<i>-ua,</i>
<i>Ab. -u.</i>	<i>Ab. -ibus.</i>	<i>-ibus.</i>

FRUCTUS, *fruit*, Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
<i>N. fruct-us,</i>	<i>N. fruct-us,</i>	
<i>G. fruct-ûs,</i>	<i>G. fruct-uum,</i>	<i>Casus, a fall.</i>
<i>D. fruct-ui,</i>	<i>D. fruct-ibus,</i>	<i>Currus, a chariot.</i>
<i>Ac. fruct-um,</i>	<i>Ac. fruct-us,</i>	<i>Fluctus, a wave.</i>
<i>V. fruct-us,</i>	<i>V. fruct-us,</i>	<i>Gradus, a step,</i>
<i>Ab. fruct-u.</i>	<i>Ab. fruct-ibus,</i>	

CORNU, *a horn*, Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
N. cornu,	N. corn-ua,	Gelu, <i>ice.</i>
G. cornu,	G. corn-uum,	Genu, <i>the knee.</i>
D. cornu,	D. corn-ibus,	Tonitru, <i>thunder.</i>
Ac. cornu,	Ac. corn-ua,	Veru, <i>a spit.</i>
V. cornu,	V. corn-ua,	
Ab. cornu.	Ab. corn-ibus.	

## ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Flatus, <i>a blast.</i>	Motus, <i>a motion.</i>	Ritus, <i>a ceremony.</i>
Ictus, <i>a stroke.</i>	Nutus, <i>a nod.</i>	Sinus, <i>a bosom.</i>
Maus, <i>f. the hand.</i>	Passus, <i>a pace.</i>	Situs, <i>a situation.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

*Exc. 1.* The following nouns are feminine: viz.

Acus, <i>a needle.</i>	Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i>
Anus, <i>an old woman.</i>	Mānus, <i>the hand.</i>	Spēcus, <i>a den.*</i>
Dōmus, <i>a house.</i>	Penus,* <i>a storehouse.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>

\* Sometimes masculine.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

*Exc. 2. The Genitive and Dative Singular:*—In some writers the Genitive Singular is occasionally found in *-uis*; as, *ejus anuis causā*, for *anūs*. TERENCE. In others the Dative is sometimes found in *-u*; as, *resistere impētū*, for *impetui*; *Esse usū sibi*, for *usui*, CIC.

*Exc. 3. The Genitive,—and the Dative and Ablative Plural:*—The Genitive Plural is sometimes contracted; as, *currū*, for *curruum*. The following nouns have *-ūbus* instead of *ibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural: viz.

Acus, <i>a needle.</i>	Lacus, <i>a lake.</i>	Specus, <i>a den.</i>
Arcus, <i>a bow.</i>	Partus, <i>a birth.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>
Artus, <i>a joint.</i>	Portus,* <i>a harbour.</i>	Veru,* <i>a spit</i>
Genu,* <i>the knee.</i>		

\* These words have also *-ibus*.

*Obs. 1.* Nouns of this declension seem to have belonged anciently to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, thus, *fructus*, *fructu-is*, *fructu-i*, &c. So that all the cases



except the Dative Singular and the Genitive Plural may be regarded as contracted forms of that declension.

*Obs. 2.* Several nouns of this declension are in whole or in part of the second also, such as, *Ficus*, *penus*, *domus* and several others. *Capricornus*, m. and the compounds of *manus*, as, *unimanus*, *Centimanus*, &c., are always of the second.

*Obs. 3.* *JESUS* the name of the Saviour has *-um* in the Accusative, and *-u* in all the other cases.

*Domus*, a house, Fem. is thus declined.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. dōm-us,	N. dom-us,
G. dom-ūs, or -i,	G. dom-ōrum, or -uum,
D. dom-ui, or -o,	D. dom-ibus,
Ac. dom-um,	Ac. dom-us, or -os,
V. dom-us,	V. dom-us,
Ab. dom-o.	Ab. dom-ibus.

*Note.*—*Domūs* in the Genitive, signifies of a house. *Domī* is used only to signify at home, or of home.

#### EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH DECLENSION

1. Tell the gender, number and case of the following words from the paradigm and additional examples, pp. 30, and 31, and translate.

*Fructus*, *fructūs*, *fructuum*, *flatibus*, *flatu*, *manuum*, *manibus*, *nutu*, *passuum*, *passibus*, *passūs*, *cornua*, *tonitribus*, *veribus*, *casu*, *currum*, *currui*, *fluctu*, *fluctibus*, *cornibus*, &c.

2. Translate the following words into Latin and tell the gender, number and case in which the words are put: viz.

Of fruit, to fruit, with the hand, for the hand, of a horn, to a horn, with a horn, from horns, horns, the horns, of the chariot, for a chariot, of chariots, from the waves, for the waves, from his hands, with a nod, &c.

#### § 17. THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The Fifth Declension has but one termination, namely, *-es*; as, *res*, a thing; *dies*, a day.

All nouns of this declension are Feminine except *dies*, a day, which is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, which is masculine in the singular and wants the plural.

*DIES, a day.*

		TERMINATIONS.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
<i>N.</i> di-es,	<i>N.</i> di-es,	-es,	-es,
<i>G.</i> di-ēī,	<i>G.</i> di-ērum,	-ēī	-ērum,
<i>D.</i> di-ēī,	<i>D.</i> di-ēbus,	-ēī,	-ēbus.
<i>Ac.</i> di-em,	<i>Ac.</i> di-es,	-em,	-es,
<i>V.</i> di-es,	<i>V.</i> di-es,	-es,	-es,
<i>Ab.</i> di-ē.	<i>Ab.</i> di-ēbus.	-ē.	-ēbus.

*Obs. 1.* *Dies* and *res* are the only nouns of the Fifth Declension which have the Plural complete; *acies*, *effigies*, *facies*, *series*, *species* and *spes*, in the Plural have only the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative; the others have no plural.

*FACIES, the face, Fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Thus decline.</i>
<i>N.</i> faci-es,	<i>N.</i> faci-es,	Effigies, <i>an image.</i> Series, <i>a series.</i> Spes, -ēī, <i>hope.</i> Acies, <i>an army.</i>
<i>G.</i> faci-ēī,	<i>G.</i> —	
<i>D.</i> faci-ēī,	<i>D.</i> —	
<i>Ac.</i> faci-em,	<i>Ac.</i> faci-es,	
<i>V.</i> faci-es,	<i>V.</i> faci-es.	
<i>Ab.</i> faci-ē.	<i>Ab.</i> —	

*Exc.* The poets sometimes make the Genitive, and more rarely the Dative singular in -e; as, *fide*, for *fidei*. *Ov. Requies*, is both of the third and fifth declension.

EXERCISES ON THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

1. Tell the gender, number and case of the following nouns, and translate:—*Diēī*, *spēī*, *aciem*, *acie*, *faciēī*, *facies*, *diēbus*, *diērum*, *dies*, *faciem*, *effigiem*, *series*, *rerum*, *diebus*, *diem*, &c. *ad libitum*.

2 Translate the following English words into Latin and

*tell the gender, &c.*—The image, of the face, the things, of the army; the hope, of the army, a series, of days, to a day, from the days, with the army, to an image, with faith, &c.

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

Tell the gender, declension, case and number of the following nouns, in the order here mentioned, and give the translation; thus, *Pennā*, A noun, fem. first; in the Ablative singular, *with a pen*.\*

Via, pueri, genero, ventis, puerorum, sermo, sedile, sedili, sedilium, sedilibus, fructuum, fructus, sellæ, tubam, regno, templi, dies, rerum, capite, capitum, itineribus, partis, parentibus, rupe, urbis, vulpem, vulpibus, parente, sedilia, die, colorem, militis, militibus, sermones, honore, manus, manus, manibus, faciem, ala, tubam, mensarum, bellum, dominorum, templum, puerorum, bella, bello, &c.

Translate the following into Latin, and state the gender, declension, case and number, always following the same order: thus, "Of boys," *puerorum*, Noun, masc. second; in the Genitive plural.\*

From the way, to a speech, with a part, of a seat, of seats, to the wind, a kingdom, to a boy, of boys, with lords, foxes, of tables, to parents, with seats, of soldiers, from the head, heads, to a part, with a trumpet, in a time, of war, the time, of peace, in a journey, to a seat, of a rock, to sons-in-law, with fruit, of the face, with a seat, to tables, of rocks, &c.

## § 18. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular Nouns are divided into *Variable*, *Defective* and *Redundant*.

\* Words used in the above exercises; the declension is indicated by the genitive according to § 8.

Ala, -æ, <i>a wing.</i>	Iter, itinēris, <i>a way.</i>	Sedile, -is, <i>a seat.</i>
Bellum, -i, <i>war.</i>	Manus, -ūs, <i>a hand.</i>	Sella, -æ, <i>a seat.</i>
Caput, -itis, <i>the head.</i>	Mensa, -æ, <i>a table.</i>	Sermo, -ōnis, <i>a speech.</i>
Color, -is, <i>color.</i>	Miles, -itis, <i>a soldier.</i>	Templum, -i, <i>a temple.</i>
Dies, -ēi, <i>a day.</i>	Parens, -tis, <i>a parent.</i>	Tempus, -ōris, <i>time.</i>
Dominus, -i, <i>a lord.</i>	Pars, -tis, <i>a part.</i>	Tuba, -æ, <i>a trumpet.</i>
Facies, -ēi, <i>the face.</i>	Puer, -i, <i>a boy.</i>	Urbs, -is, <i>a city.</i>
Fructus, -ūs, <i>fruit.</i>	Regnum, -i, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Ventus, -i, <i>the wind.</i>
Gener, -i, <i>a son-in-law.</i>	Res, rei, <i>a thing.</i>	Via, -æ, <i>a way.</i>
Honor, -is, <i>honor.</i>	Rupes, -is, <i>a rock.</i>	Vulpes, -is, <i>a fox.</i>

## I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in Gender or Declension, or in both. Nouns varying in gender are called, *Heterogeneous*. Those which vary in declension are called, *Heteroclites*.

*Heterogeneous Nouns.*

1. Masculine in the Singular, and Neuter in the Plural; as,

<i>Avernus</i> , a hill in Campania.	<i>Pangæus</i> , a promontory in Thrace.
<i>Dindymus</i> , a hill in Phrygia.	<i>Tænærus</i> , a promontory in Laconia.
<i>Ismærus</i> , a hill in Thrace.	<i>Tartærus</i> , hell.
<i>Mænælus</i> , a hill in Arcadia.	<i>Taygætus</i> , a hill in Laconia.

2. Masc. in the Singular, Masc. and Neut. in the Plural; as, *Jocus*, a jest, Pl. *-i* and *-a*. *Locus*, a place, Pl. *-i* and *-a*.

3. Feminine in the Singular, Neuter in the Plural; as, *Carbæsus*, a sail, Pl. *-a*. *Pergæmus*, the citadel of Troy, Pl. *-a*.

4. Neuter in the Singular, Masculine in the Plural; as *Argos*, Argos, a city in Greece, Pl. *-i*. *Elysium*, the Elysian fields, Pl. *-i*. *Coelum*, heaven, Pl. *-i*.

*Note 1.*—*Argos*, in the Singular, is used only in the Nom. and Acc.

5. Neut. in the Sing, Masc. and Neut. in the Plural; as, *Frënum*, a bridle, Pl. *-i* and *-a*. *Rastrum*, a rake, Pl. *-i*, and *-a*.

6. Neuter in the Singular, Feminine in the Plural; as, *Balneum*, a bath, Pl. *-æ* and *-a*. *Epulum*, a banquet, Pl. *-æ*. *Delicium*, a delight, Pl. *-æ*.

*Heteroclites*

7. *Vas*, *vasis*, n. a vessel, of the 3d declension, Plur. *vasa*, *vasorum*, of the 2d. *Jugërum*, *jugëri*, n, an acre, of the 2d declension, Plur. *jugëra*, *jugërum*, of the 3d. *Jugëris* and *jugëre* from *jugus*, are also found in the Singular. See Num. 11.

8. Some Greek Proper nouns are declined both by the second Declension and the third, as follows:

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Orpheus, {	-ei,	-eo,	-eum- or -eon,	—	-eo; 2d Decl.
	-eos,	-ei,	-ea,	-eu,	—; 3d Decl.
Œdipus, {	-i,	-o,	-um,	—	-o; 2d Decl.
	-ödís,	-ödi,	-ödém,	-u,	-öde; 3d Decl.
Achilleus, -ei,		-eo,	—	-eu,	-eo; 2d Decl.
Achilles	-lis or -lëos,	-li.	-lem, or -len.	-les, or -le, -le;	3d Decl.

## DOUBLE NOUNS.

9. To this class may be referred a few double nouns, the parts of which are of different declensions. When the two nominatives combine, both parts are declined like a substantive and adjective: thus,

**RESPUBLICA, a commonwealth, Fem.**

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N. *respublica,*

N. *respublicæ,*

G. *reipublicæ,*

G. *rerumpublicarum,*

D. *reipublicæ,*

D. *rebuspublicis,*

Ac. *rempublicam,*

Ac. *respublicas,*

V. *respublica,*

V. *respublicæ,*

Ab. *republicâ.*

Ab. *rebuspublicis.*

**JUSJURANDUM, an oath, Neut.**

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N. *jusjurandum,*

N. *jurajuranda,*

G. *jurisjurandi,*

G. \_\_\_\_\_

D. *jurijurando,*

D. \_\_\_\_\_

Ac. *jusjurandum,*

Ac. *jurajuranda,*

V. *jusjurandum,*

V. *jurajuranda,*

Ab. *jurejurando.*

Ab. \_\_\_\_\_

When the one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the part in the nominative only is declined; as,

**MATERFAMILIAS, a mistress of a family, Fem.**

*Singular.*

N. *materfamilias,*

G. *matrifamilias,*

D. *matrifamilias,*

Ac. *matremfamilias,*

V. *materfamilias,*

Ab. *matrefamilias.*

*Note 2.—Familias is an old form of the genitive, and is governed by mater. So Paterfamilias.*

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

as are defective in *Cases* or *Number*.

*Obs. 1. Indeclinable nouns*, i. e. nouns which have the same form in all cases, though commonly ranked under this class, do not properly belong to it, because none of the cases are wanting. They are such as *pondo*, n. a pound or pounds; *semis*, n. the half; *mille*, a thousand; *cæpe*, an onion; *opus*, need or needful, used both as a substantive and an adjective. To these may be added any word used as a noun; as, *velle*, in the phrase, *suum velle*, (for *sua voluntas*,) his own inclination: Proper names adopted from a foreign language; as, *Elizabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

### I. Nouns defective in particular cases.

10. The following nouns are used only in one case.\*

Nom.	Fauce, f. the jaws.
Inquires, f. want of rest.	Ingratiis, f. in spite of.
Abl.	Injussu, m. without order.
Admonitu, m. an admonition.	Interdiu, by day.
Ambāge, f. a winding.	Natu, m. by birth.
Casse, m. a net.	Noctu, f. by night.
Diu, by day.	Promptu, m. in readiness.
Ergô, on account of.	

*Obs. 2. Many verbal nouns of the Fourth Declension are used only in the Ablative Singular; as, accitu, promptu, &c. Dicis, f. and nauci, n. are used only in the Gen. Sing.; as, dicis gratia, for forms' sake; res nauci, a thing of no value. Inficias, f. and incita, f. or incitas, have only the Acc. Plur; as, inficias ire, to deny; ad incitas reductus, reduced to extremities. Ambāges, casses and fauces, are regularly declined in the Plural.*

11. The following nouns are used only in two cases.

Nom. and Acc.	Gen. and Abl.
Astu, n. the city of Athens.	Compēdis, -e, f. a fetter.
Inferiæ, -as, f. sacrifices to the dead.	Impetis, -e, m. force.
Instar, n. likeness, bigness.	Jugēris, -e, n. an acre.
Suppetiæ, -ās, f. help.	Spontis, -e, f. of one's own accord.
Nom. and Abl.	Verbēris, -e, n. a stripe.
Astus, -u, m. cunning.	Repetundārum, -is, f. extortion.
Vesper, -e, or -i, m. the evening.	

\* Nouns which are used only in one case are called *Monoptotes*; in two cases, *Diptotes*; in three cases, *Triptotes*; in four cases, *Tetraptores*; in five cases, *Pentaptores*.

**Obs. 3.** *Compēdes*, *jugēra* and *verbēra* are regularly declined in the Plural. *Astus* is found in the Nom. and Acc Plur.

12. The following nouns are used only in three Cases.

<i>Nom. Acc. and Voc.</i>	<i>Nom. Acc. and Abl.</i>
Cacoethes, n. <i>a bad custom.</i>	Lues, f. <i>a plague.</i>
Also other Greek nouns in <i>-es</i> .	Epos, n. <i>a heroic poem.</i>
Cete, n. <i>whales.</i>	Fas, n. <i>divine law.</i>
Dica, -am, f. <i>a process</i> ; Pl. -as.	Grates, f. <i>thanks.</i>
Nefas, n. <i>impiety.</i>	Melos, n. <i>a song</i> ; Pl. e.
Nihil, and Nil, n. <i>nothing.</i>	Mane, -e, -e. n. <i>the morning.</i>
Tempe, n. <i>the vale of Tempe.</i>	Tabes, f. <i>consumption.</i>
	Vepres, or -is, m. <i>a brier,</i>

*Nom. Gen. and Abl.* Tabum, n. *putrid gore.*

*Nom. Gen. and Acc.* Munia, -ōrum, n. *offices.*

*Opis*, f. Gen. help (from *ops*,) has *open* and *ope* in the Acc. and Ablative, with the Plural complete, *opes*, *opum*, &c. wealth ; and *preci*, f. Dat. a prayer, (from *prez*,) has *precem* and *prece*, with the Plural entire, *preces*, *precum*, &c. *Feminis*, n. Gen. the thigh (from *femen*,) has *femini*, and -e, in the Dat. and Abl. Singular ; and *femina* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural.

**Obs. 4.** *Vepres* has the Plural entire ; and *tabes* and *gratibus*, the Nominative and Ablative Plural of *tabes*, and *grates* are also found.

The following Nouns want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative Plural.

Far, n. <i>corn.</i>	Mel, n. <i>honey.</i>	Rus, n. <i>the country.</i>
Hiems, f. <i>winter.</i>	Metus, m. <i>fear.</i>	Thus, n. <i>frankincense</i>

For nouns of the Fifth Declension, see §17.

13. The following Nouns want the Nominative and Vocative, and are therefore used only in four Cases.

Ditiōnis, f. <i>power.</i>	Sordis, f. <i>filth.</i>
Pecūdis, f. <i>a beast.</i>	Vicis, f. <i>a change.</i>

To these may be added *daps*, f. a dish ; *frux*, f. corn ; and *nex*, f. slaughter, which are seldom used in the Nominative. The Plural of *frux* is entire ; *daps* wants the Genitive ; and *nex* seems to have the Nom. Acc. and Voc. only.

*Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the Gen. and Dat. Singular, and is not used in the Plural.

*Obs. 5. Pecūdis and sordis have the Plural entire: vicis is defective in the Genitive; ditiōnis has no Plural.*

14. Some Nouns are defective in one Case.

The following want the Genitive Plural.

Fæx, f. *dregs.*

Fax, f. *a torch.*

Labes, f. *a stain.*

Lux, f. *light.*

Os, n. *the mouth.*

Proles, f. *offspring.*

Ros, m. *dew.*

Soboles, f. *offspring*

Sol, m. *the sun.*

*Satias, f. a glut of any thing, and salum, n. the sea, want the Gen. Sing. and the Plural entirely. Situs, m. a situation, nastiness, wants the Gen. and perhaps the Dat. Sing. and probably the Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plural. Nemo, c. nobody, wants the Voc. Sing. and has no Plural.*

## II. Many Nouns are defective in number.

15. Some Nouns, from the nature of the things which they express cannot be used in the Plural. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, abstract nouns, &c.: as, *justitia*, justice; *luxus*, luxury; *musica*, music; *apium*, parsley; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *triticum*, wheat; *magnitudo*, greatness; *senectus*, old age; *macies*, leanness, &c. But some of the Nouns included in these classes are occasionally found in the Plural.

16. The following Masculine Nouns are scarcely used in the Plural:

Aër, aëris, *the air.*

Æther. -ëris, *the sky.*

Fimus, -i, *dung.*

Hesperus, -i, *the evening star.*

Limus, -i, *mud.*

Meridies, -iëi, *mid-day.*

Mundus, -i, *a woman's ornaments.*

Muscus, -i, *moss.*

Penus, -i, or -ûs, *all manner of provisions.*

Pontus, -i, *the sea.*

Pulvis, -ëris, *dust.*

Sanguis, -inis, *blood.*

Sopor, -ëris, *sleep.*

Veternus, -i, *a lethargy.*

*Note 3.—Aer, pulvis, and sopor are found in the Plural.*

17. The following Feminine Nouns are scarcely used in the Plural:

Argilla, -æ, *potter's earth.*

Fames, -is, *hunger.*

Salus, -ûtis, *safety.*

Sitis, -is, *thirst.*



Humus, -i, *the ground.*

Indoles, -is, *a disposition.*

Plebs, -is, *the common people.*

Pubes, -is, *the youth.*

Supellex, -ctilis, *household furniture.*

Venia, -æ, *pardon.*

Vesp̄era, -æ, *the evening.*

The following are sometimes found in the Plural:

Bilis, -is, *bile.*

Chol̄era, -æ, *choler.*

Cutis, -is, *the skin.*

Fama, -æ, *fame.*

Gloria, -æ, *glory.*

Labes, -is, *a stain.*

Pax, -cis, *peace.*

Pitūita, -æ, *phlegm.*

Pix, -cis, *pitch.*

Proles, -is, *offspring.*

Quies, -ētis, *rest.*

Soboles, -is, *offspring.*

Tellus, -ūris, *the earth*

18. The following Neuter Nouns are scarcely used in the Plural:

Album, -i, *a list of names.*

Barāthrum, -i, *any deep place.*

Diluc̄ulum, -i, *the dawn of day.*

Ebur, -ōris, *ivory.*

Jubar, -āris, *the sunbeam.*

Justitium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.*

Lardum, -i, *bacon.*

Lethum, -i, *death.*

Lutum, -i, *clay.*

Nectar -āris, *nectar.*

Pelāgus, -i, *the sea.*

Fœnum, -i, *hay.*

Gelu, *frost, ind.*

Hilum, -i, *the black speck of a bean; a trifle.*

Penum, -i, and penus, -ōris, *all kinds of provisions.*

Pus, puris, *matter.*

Sal, salis, *salt.*

Ver, veris, *the spring.*

Virus, -i, *poison.*

Vitrum, -i, *glass.*

Viscum, -i, *the mistletoe.*

Vulgus, -i, *the rabble.*

Obs. 6. *Ebur, lardum, lutum* and *pus* are found in the Plural; and *pelāge* is found, in some cases, as the Plural of *pelāgus*; *sal*, as a Neuter Noun, is not used in the Plural.

19. Many Nouns want the Singular; as the Names of feasts, books, games, and many cities and places: as,

Apollināres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo* Olympia, -ōrum, *the Olympic games.*

Syracūsæ, -ārum, *Syracuse.*

Bacchanilia, -ium, and ōrum, *the feasts of Bacchus.* Hierosolyma, -ōrum, *Jerusalem.*

Thermopylæ, -ārum, *the straits of Thermopylæ.*

Bucolica, -ōrum, *a book of pastorals.*

20. The following Masculine Nouns are scarcely used in the Singular:

Antes, *the front rows of vines.*

Lemūres, -um, *ghosts, hobgoblins*

Cancelli, <i>lattices, or windows made with cross-bars.</i>	Libëri, <i>children.</i>
Cani, <i>gray hairs.</i>	Majöres, -um, <i>ancestors</i>
Celëres, -um, <i>the light-horse.</i>	Manes, -ium, <i>ghosts.</i>
Codicilli, <i>writings.</i>	Minöres, -um, <i>successors.</i>
Fasti, òrum, <i>or fastus, -uum, calendars, in which were marked festival-days, &amp;c.</i>	Penätes, -um, <i>or -ium, household gods.</i>
Fori, <i>the gangways of a ship, or seats in the Circus.</i>	Postëri, <i>posterity.</i>
Infëri, <i>the gods below.</i>	Procëres, -um, <i>the nobles.</i>
	Pugilläres, -ium, <i>writing tables.</i>
	Supëri, <i>the gods above.</i>

Obs. 7. *Libëri* and *procëres* (*procërem*) are also found in the Singular. Some of the others, as, *infëri*, *majöres*, &c. are properly Adjectives, and agree with the Substantives which are implied in their signification.

21. The following Feminine Nouns want the Singular:

Clitellæ, <i>a pannier.</i>	Exuviæ, <i>spoils.</i>	Insidiæ, <i>snare.</i>
Cunæ, <i>a cradle.</i>	Ferïæ, <i>holidays.</i>	Kalendæ, Nonæ, Idus, -uum, <i>names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.</i>
Diræ, <i>imprecations.</i>	Gerræ, <i>trifles.</i>	
Divitiæ, <i>riches.</i>	Induciæ, <i>a truce.</i>	
Excubiæ, <i>watches.</i>	Induviæ, <i>clothes to put on.</i>	
Exsequiæ, <i>funerals.</i>		
Lactes, <i>the small guts.</i>	Nuptiæ, <i>a marriage.</i>	Scopæ, <i>a besom.</i>
Lapidinæ, <i>stone quarries.</i>	Parietinæ, <i>ruinous walls.</i>	Tenebræ, <i>darkness.</i>
Manubiæ, <i>spoils taken in war.</i>	Phalëræ, <i>trappings.</i>	Thermæ, <i>hot baths.</i>
Minæ, <i>threats.</i>	Primitiæ, <i>first fruits.</i>	Tricæ, <i>toys.</i>
Nugæ, <i>trifles.</i>	Reliquiæ, <i>a remainder.</i>	Valvæ, <i>folding doors.</i>
Nundinæ, <i>a market.</i>	Salinæ, <i>salt-pits.</i>	Vindicæ, <i>a claim of liberty, a defence.</i>
	Scalæ, <i>a ladder.</i>	

The following are generally found in the Plural:

Alpes, <i>the Alps.</i>	Braccæ, <i>breeches,</i>
Argutiæ, <i>quirks, witticisms.</i>	Charïtes, -um, <i>the Graces.</i>
Bigæ, <i>a chariot drawn by two horses.</i>	Facetiæ, <i>pleasant sayings.</i>
Trigæ, — <i>by three.</i>	Ineptiæ, <i>silly stories.</i>
Quadrigæ, — <i>by four.</i>	Præstigiæ, <i>enchantments.</i>
	Salebræ, <i>rugged places.</i>

22. The following Neuter Nouns want the Singular

Acta, <i>public acts or records.</i>	Lautia, <i>provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.</i>
Æstiva, <i>summer quarters.</i>	

Arma, *arms*.  
 Bellaria, -um, *dainties*.  
 Brevia, -um, *shallows*.  
 Cibaria, *vituals*.  
 Crepundia, *children's toys*.  
 Cunabula, *a cradle, an origin*.  
 Extā, *the entrails*.  
 Februā, *purifying sacrifices*.  
 Flabra, *blasts of wind*.  
 Fraga, *strawberries*.  
 Hyberna, *winter quarters*.  
 Ilia, -um, *the entrails*.  
 Justa, *funeral rites*.  
 Lamenta, *lamentations*.

Magalia, -um, *cottages*.  
 Mœnia, -um, *the walls of a city*.  
 Orgia, *the sacred rites of Bacchus*.  
 Parentalia, -um, *solemnities at the funeral of parents*.  
 Præcordia, *the midriff, the bowels*.  
 Sponsalia, -um, *espousals*.  
 Stativa, *a standing camp*.  
 Talaria, -um, *winged shoes*.  
 Tesqua, *rough places*.  
 Transtra, *the seats where the rowers sit in ships*.  
 Utensilia, -um, *utensils*.

Obs. 8. *Acta* and *transtra* are also found in the Singular. Some of the others, as, *æstiva*, *brevia*, *hyberna*, *stativa*, &c. are properly Adjectives; and agree with the Substantives which are necessary to complete their meaning.

### III. Redundant Nouns.

23. Nouns are redundant in Termination, Gender, or form of Declension: as, *arbor*, or *arbos*, a tree; *mulgus*, the rabble, Masc. or Neut. *menda*, -æ, or *mendum*, -i, a fault.

The most numerous class of Redundant Nouns is composed of those which express the same meaning by different terminations as,

Æther, -ëris, & æthra, -æ, *the air*. Amaracus, & -um, *sweet, marjoram*.  
 Alvear, & -e, & -ium, *a bee-hive*. Ancile, & -ium, *an oval shield*. Maceria, & -ies, iei, *a wall*.  
 Angiportus, -ûs, & -i, & -um, *a narrow lane*. Materia, -æ, & -ies, -iei, *matter*.  
 Apractus, & -um, *an open ship*. Menda, -æ, & -um, -i, *a fault*.  
 Aplustre, & -um, *the flag, colours*. Milliære, & -ium, *a mile*.  
 Arbor, & -os, *a tree*. Monitum, & -us, -ûs, *an admonition*.  
 Baculus, & -um, *a staff*. Muria, & -ies, -iei, *brine or pickle*.  
 Balteus, & -um, *a belt*. Nasus, & -um, *the nose*.  
 Batillus, & -um, *a fire-shovel*. Obsidio, & -um, *a siege*.  
 Capus, & -o, *a capon*. Ostrea, -æ, & -ea, -ërum, *an oyster*.  
 Cassis, -idis, & -ida, -idæ, *a helmet*. Peplus, & -um, *a veil, a robe*.  
 Cepa, & -e, indec. *an onion*. Penus, -ûs, & -i; & -um; & -us  
 Clypeus, & -um, *a shield*. -ëris, *provisions*.  
 Colluvies, & -io, *filth, dirt*. Pistrina, & -um, *a grinding-house*.

Compāges, & -go, <i>a joining.</i>	Plebs, & -es, <i>the common people.</i>
Conger, & -grus, <i>a large eel.</i>	Prætextus, -ūs, & -um, <i>a pretext</i>
Crocus, & -um, <i>saffron.</i>	Rapum, & -a, <i>a turnip</i>
Cubitus, & -um, <i>a cubit.</i>	Ruma, & -men, <i>the cud.</i>
Diluvium, & -es, <i>a deluge.</i>	Ruscum, & -us, <i>butcher's broom.</i>
Elēgi, -ōrum, & -ia, <i>an elegy.</i>	Segmen, & -mentum, <i>a paring.</i>
Elephantus, & Elephas, -antis, <i>an elephant.</i>	Sepes, & seps, <i>a hedge.</i>
Essēda, & -um, <i>a chariot.</i>	Sibilus, & -a, -ōrum, <i>a hissing.</i>
Eventus, & -a, -ōrum, <i>an event.</i>	Sinus, & -um, <i>a milk pail.</i>
Gausāpa, & -e, -es; & -e, -is; & -um, <i>a rough cloth.</i>	Stramen, & -tum, <i>straw.</i>
Gelu, & -um, <i>frost.</i>	Suffimen, & -tum, <i>a perfume.</i>
Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris, or -ēri, <i>a bunch, a swelling.</i>	Tignus, & -um, <i>a plank.</i>
Glutinum, & -en, <i>glue.</i>	Toral, & -āle, <i>a bed-covering.</i>
Grus, -uis, & -uis, -uis, <i>a crane.</i>	Tonitrus, -ūs, & -u, & -uum, <i>thunder.</i>
Laurus, -i, & -ūs, <i>a laurel tree.</i>	Torcūlar, & -āre, <i>a wine-press.</i>
	Veternus, & -um, <i>a lethargy.</i>
	Viscum, & -us, <i>the mistletoe.</i>

*Obs. 9.* Some of the above nouns may be used in either, or any of the terminations, and in the Singular or Plural, indifferently; some, as *auxilium*, *laurus*, -ūs, are used only in one or two cases; or in one number, as *elēgi*; while others, as *prætextus* (a pretext) and *prætextum* (a border,) though sometimes synonymous, are commonly employed in a different meaning.

24. The following Nouns have a double meaning in the Plural—one in addition to that which generally belongs to them in the Singular:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Aedes, <i>a temple.</i>	Aedes, <i>a house.</i>
Auxilium, <i>assistance.</i>	Auxilia, <i>auxiliary troops.</i>
Bonum, <i>any thing good.</i>	Bona, <i>goods, property.</i>
Carcer, <i>a prison.</i>	Carcēres, <i>the barriers of a race course.</i>
Castrum, <i>a fort.</i>	Castra, <i>a camp.</i>
Comitium, <i>a place in the Roman forum, where the comitia were held.</i>	Comitia, <i>an assembly of the people for the purpose of voting.</i>
Copia, <i>plenty.</i>	Copiæ, <i>troops.</i>
Cupedia, <i>daintiness.</i>	Cupediæ, or -a, <i>dainties.</i>
Facultas, <i>power, ability.</i>	Facultates, <i>wealth, property.</i>

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Fascia, a bundle of twigs, a fagot.</i>	<i>Fasces, a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrate of Rome.</i>
<i>Finis, the end of any thing.</i>	<i>Fines, the boundaries of a country.</i>
<i>Fortuna, fortune.</i>	<i>Fortunæ, an estate, possessions.</i>
<i>Gratia, grace, favour.</i>	<i>Gratiæ, thanks.</i>
<i>Hortus, a garden.</i>	<i>Horti, pleasure-grounds.</i>
<i>Litæra, a letter of the alphabet.</i>	<i>Litærxæ, a letter, epistle.</i>
<i>Lustrum, a period of five years.</i>	<i>I.ustra, dens of wild beasts.</i>
<i>Natâlis, a birth-day.</i>	<i>Natâles, birth, descent.</i>
<i>Opëra, labour.</i>	<i>Opërxæ, workmen.</i>
<i>Opis, (Gen.) help.</i>	<i>Opes, wealth, power.</i>
<i>Pars, a part, portion.</i>	<i>Partes, a party, faction.</i>
<i>Pläga, a space, a tract of country.</i>	<i>Plägæ, nets used by hunters.</i>
<i>Principium, a beginning, a first principle, or element.</i>	<i>Principia, a place in the camp where the general's tent stood.</i>
<i>Rostrum, the beak of a bird, the sharp part of the prow of a ship.</i>	<i>Rostra, a pulpit in the Roman forum, from which orators used to address the people.</i>
<i>Sal, salt.</i>	<i>Sales, witticisms.</i>

*Note 4.*—All the Nouns in the preceding list, except *castrum* and *comitum*, are sometimes found in the Singular, in the sense in which they more commonly occur in the Plural.

## § 19. OF ADJECTIVES.

An **ADJECTIVE** is a word used to qualify a substantive, or to limit its signification; as *vir BONUS*, a GOOD man; *DECEM naves*, TEN ships.

1. The Accidents of the adjective are *gender*, *number*, and *case*, and of most adjectives also *comparison*.

2. Adjectives indicate the gender, number and case by the termination; as, *bon-us*, *bon-a*, *bon-um*. § 20.

3. Participles have the *form* and *declension* of adjectives while in *time* and *signification* they belong to the verb.

4. Some adjectives denote each gender by a different termination in the nominative, and consequently have three terminations. Some have one form common to the masculine

and feminine, and are adjectives of two terminations, and some are adjectives of one termination, which is common to all genders.

5. Adjectives are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the third only.

6. Adjectives of three terminations, (except eleven,) are of the first and second declension; but those of one or two terminations are of the third.

*Exc.* Eleven adjectives in *-er*, of three terminations are of the third declension. See § 21. 5.

## § 20. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension have the Masculine always in *-us*, or *-er*; the Feminine always in *-a*, and the Neuter always in *-um*, as *Bonus*, Masc. *bona*, Fem. *bonum*, Neuter, *good*.

### 1. *BONUS, BONA, BONUM, good.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i> bon-us,	-a,	-um,	<i>N.</i> bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
<i>G.</i> bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	<i>G.</i> bon-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
<i>D.</i> bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	<i>D.</i> bon-is,	-is,	-is,
<i>Ac.</i> bon-um,	-am,	-um,	<i>Ac.</i> bon-os,	-as,	-a,
<i>V.</i> bon-e,	-a,	-um,	<i>V.</i> bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
<i>Ab.</i> bon-o,	-ā,	-o.	<i>Ab.</i> bon-is,	-is,	-is.

In the same manner decline,

*Altus, high.*

*Durus, hard.*

*Lætus, joyful.*

*Carus, dear.*

*Fidus, faithful.*

*Plenus, full.*

Also all participles, numerals and pronouns in *-us*; as, *amātus*, *amatūrus*, *amandus*,—*primus*, *secundus*, &c. *meus tuus*, *suus*;

*Note. 1. Meus has mi in the vocative masculine. seldom reus.*

2. TENER, TENERA, TENERUM, *tender*.*Singular.**Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. tener,	-a,	-um,	N. tener-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. tener-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. tener-orum,	-arum,-orum,	
D. tener-o,	-æ,	-o,	D. tener-is,	-is,	-is,
Ac. tener-um,	-am,	-um,	Ac. tener-os,	-as,	-a,
V. tener,	-a,	-um,	V. tener-i,	-æ,	-a,
Ab. tener-o,	-â,	-o.	Ab. tener-is,	-is,	-is.

In the same manner decline,

Asper, *rough*.

Miser, *wretched*.

Exter, *foreign*.

Liber, *free*.

Prosper, *prosperous*.

Satur, *full*.

Also Compounds derived from *gero* and *fero*; as, *laniger*, bearing wool; *optifer*, bringing help.

But most adjectives in *-er* lose the *e*; as,

3. ATER, ATRA, ATRUM, *black*.*Singular.**Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ater,	atra,	atrum,	N. atri,	atræ,	atra,
G. atri,	atræ,	atri,	G. atrorum,	atrarum, atrorum,	
D. atro,	atræ,	atro,	D. atris,	atris,	atris
Ac. atrum,	atram,	atrum,	Ac. atos,	atras,	atra,
V. ater,	atra,	atrum,	V. atri,	atræ,	atra,
Ab. atro,	atrâ,	atro.	Ab. atris,	atris,	atris.

In like manner decline,

Æger, *sick*.

Macer, *lean*.

Sacer, *sacred*.

Creber, *frequent*.

Pulcher, *fair*.

Sinister, *left*.

*Dexter*, right, has *-tra*, *-trum*; or *-tëra*, *-tërum*.

4. The following adjectives have the Genitive Singular in *-ius*, and the Dative in *-i*; namely,

Alius, *another of many*.

Solus, *alone*.

Uterlibet, *which of the two you please*.

Alter, *the other of two*.

Totus, *whole*.

Uterque, *both*.

Alteruter, *the one or other*.

Ullus, *any*.

Utervis, *which of the two you please*.

Neuter, *neither*.

Unus, *one*.

Nullus, *none*.

Uter, *whether*.

In the other cases, they are like *bonus*, *tener* or *ater*; as,

TOTUS, TOTA, TOTUM, *whole*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. tot-us,	-a,	-um,	N. tot-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. tot-ius,	-ius,	-ius,	G. tot-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
D. tot-i,	-i,	-i,	D. tot-is,	-is,	-is,
Ac. tot-um,	-am,	-um,	Ac. tot-os,	-as,	-a,
V. tot-e,	-a,	-um,	V. tot-i,	-æ,	-a,
Ab. tot-o,	-ā,	-o.	Ab. tot-is,	-is,	-is.

*Note.2.* *Alius* has *aliud* in the Neuter ; and in the Genitive *alius*, contracted for *alius*. Dative *alii*. The genitive in *-ius* in poetry has the *i* either long or short ; in prose always long.

## § 21. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

RULE 1.—Adjectives of the Third Declension have *-e*, or *-i*, in the Ablative Singular ; but if the Neuter be in *-e*, the Ablative has *-i*, only.

RULE 2.—The Genitive Plural ends in *-ium*, and the Neuter of the nominative, accusative and vocative in *-ia*.

*Exc.* Except comparatives, which have *-um*, and *-a*.

### I. *Adjectives of one termination.*

#### 1. FELIX, happy.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
Ac. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	Ac. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
Ab. fel-ice, or	-ici, &c.		Ab. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

In like manner decline,

Trux-ūcis, *cruel*.

Velox-ōcis, *swift*



2. PRUDENS, *prudent*.*Singular.*

M.	F.	N.
N. prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
G. prudent-is,	prudent-is,	prudent-is
D. prudent-i,	prudent-i,	prudent-i,
Ac. prudent-em,	prudent-em,	prudens,
V. prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
Ab. prudent-e, or -i.	prudent-e, or -i.	prudent-e, or -i

*Plural.*

N. prudent-es,	prudens,	prudent-ia,
G. prudent-ium,	prudent-ium,	prudent-ium,
D. prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus,
Ac. prudent-es,	prudens,	prudent-ia,
V. prudent-es,	prudens,	prudent-ia,
Ab. prudent-ibus,	prudens-ibus,	prudent-ibus.

In like manner decline,

Ingens-tis *great*, Recens, *fresh*, Clemens, *gentle*. Also all participles in -ns; as, amans, docens, &c.

*Note.*—Participles have oftener -e than -i in the Ablative Singular and in the Ablative absolute have -e, only.

II. *Adjectives of two terminations.*3. MITIS, MITE, *meek*.*Singular.**Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. mit-is,	-is,	-e,	N. mit-es,	-es,	-ia,
G. mit-is,	-is,	-is,	G. mit-ium,	-ium,	-ium,
D. mit-i,	-i,	-i,	D. mit-ibus,	-ibus,	-ibus,
Ac. mit-em,	-em,	-e,	Ac. mit-es,	-es,	-ia,
V. mit-is,	-is,	-e,	V. mit-es,	-es,	-ia,
Ab. mit-i,	-i,	-i.	Ab. mit-ibus,	-ibus,	-ibus.

In the same manner decline,

Agilis, *active*.  
Brevis, *short*.

Debilis, *weak*.  
Incolūmis *safe*.

Talis, *such*.  
Utilis, *useful*.

4. *Comparative Degree*,—MITIOR, MITIUS, *more meek*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	N. miti-ōres,	-ōres,	ōra,
G. miti-ōris,	-ōris,	-ōris,	G. miti-ōrum,	-ōrum,	-ōrum,
D. miti-ōri,	-ōri,	-ōri,	D. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus
Ac. miti-ōrem,	-ōrem,	-us,	Ac. miti-ōres,	-ōres,	-ōra,
V. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	V. miti-ōres,	-ōres,	-ōra,
Ab. miti-ōre, or	-ōri, &c.		Ab. miti-ōribus,	-ōribus,	ōribus

In like manner decline,

Brevior, <i>shorter</i> .	Molior, <i>softer</i> .	Altior, <i>higher</i> .
Fortior, <i>braver</i> .	Durior, <i>harder</i> .	and all other comparatives.

*Exc. Plus*, more, has only the Neuter Gender in the Singular, and is thus declined.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
Neut.	M.	F.	N.	
N. plus,	N. plur-es,	-es,	-a, and -ia,	
G. pluris,	G. plur-ium,	-ium,	-ium,	
D. —	D. plur-ibus,	-ibus,	-ibus,	
Ac. plus,	Ac. plur-es,	-es,	-a, and -ia,	
V. —	V. —	—	—	
Ab. plur-e, or -i.	Ab. plur-ibus,	-ibus,	-ibus.	

*Note.*—*Pluria* is hardly ever used in the Nom. Plur. Neuter. Its compound, *complures*, has no singular.

III. *Adjectives of three terminations.*5. ACER, or ACRIS, ACRE, *sharp*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. a-cer, v-cris,	-cris,	-cre,	N. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	G. a-crium,	-crium,	-crium.
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	D. a-crībus,	-crībus,	-crībus,
Ac. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	Ac. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer, v-cris,	-cris,	-cre,	V. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
Ab. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri.	Ab. a-crībus,	-crībus,	-crībus.

Besides *acer*, the following ten are declined in this way.

<i>Alācer, cheerful.</i>	<i>Celer, swift.</i>	<i>Pedester, on foot.</i>
<i>Campester, belonging to the plain.</i>	<i>Equester, belonging to a horse.</i>	<i>Salūber, wholesome.</i>
<i>Celēber, famous.</i>	<i>Paluster, marshy.</i>	<i>Sylvester, woody.</i>
		<i>Volūcer, swift.</i>

### *Exceptions in the Ablative Singular and Genitive Plural.*

*Exc. 1.* The following adjectives have *-e* only in the Ablative singular, and *-um* in the genitive plural: viz.

<i>Cælebs, unmarried.</i>	<i>Pauper, poor.</i>	<i>Superstes, surviving.</i>
<i>Compos, master of.</i>	<i>Juvenis, young.</i>	* <i>Tricorpor, three-bodied.</i>
* <i>Concōlor, of the same color.</i>	<i>Pubis, marriageable.</i>	* <i>Tricuspis, three-pointed</i>
<i>Hospes, strange.</i>	<i>Senex, old.</i>	* <i>Tripes, three-footed.</i>
<i>Impos, unable.</i>	<i>Sospes, safe.</i>	<i>Vetus, old.</i>
	<i>Impubes, beardless.</i>	

\* The other compounds of *color*, *corpor*, *cuspis* and *pes*, have like wise *-e* and *-um*.

*Note.*—*Cælebs*, *compos*, *impos* and *superstes*, have sometimes *-i* in the ablative. *Vetus* has commonly *veteri*, but always *vetēra* and *vetēr-um* in the plural.

*Exc. 2.* The following adjectives have *-e* or *-i* in the ablative singular, and *-um* in the Genitive Plural: viz.

<i>Ales, winged.</i>	<i>Degēner, degenerate.</i>	<i>Præceps, headlong.</i>
<i>Anceps, double.</i>	<i>Dives, rich.</i>	<i>Supplex, suppliant.</i>
<i>Artifex, artificial.</i>	<i>Inops, poor.</i>	<i>Uber, fertile.</i>
<i>Celer, swift.</i>	<i>Memor, mindful.</i>	<i>Vigil, watchful.</i>
* <i>Compar, equal.</i>	<i>Particeps, sharing.</i>	<i>Volucris, swift.</i>
<i>Consors, sharing.</i>		

\* *Dispar*, different, *impar*, unequal, and *separ*, separate, have also *-um*. *Par* has *-i* only in the ablative, and *-ium* in the Genitive Plural, but its compounds have in the poets *-e* or *-i*, indifferently.

*Note.*—*Celer*, *memor*, and *volucris* have *-i* only in the Abl. and *volucris* and *vigil* have sometimes *-um* in the Genitive Plural.

*Locuples*, rich, has *locuplētum*, or *locupletum*.

## § 22. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

Irregular adjectives are *Defective* or *Redundant*.

## I. DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. *Quot*, how many? *tot*, so many; *aliquot*, some; *quot-quot*, and *quotcunque*, how many soever; *totidem*, just so many; are indeclinable, and used only in the Plural Number. *Nquam*, worthless, is also indeclinable, but used in both Numbers.

2. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *potis*, *pote*, able, are used only in the Nominative. They are of all Genders, and the latter is also found joined with Plural Nouns.

*Tantundem*, as much, has *tantidem*, in the Genitive, and *tan/undem*, m. and n. in the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

*Necesse*, or *-um*, necessary; and *volūpe*, pleasant, are used only in the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

3. *Mactus*, *-e*, and Pl. *-i*, a common word of encouragement, brave! gallant! is used only in the Nominative, and Vocative Singular, and Nominative Plural.

*Plus*, more, in the Singular is Neuter only; wants the Dative, and probably the Vocative; has *-e* only in the Ablative, and *-a*, seldom *-ia*, in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural Neuter.

*Primōris*, Gen. first, wants the Nominative and Voc. Singular, and the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural Neuter; likewise *seminēcis*, half dead, which is not used in the Neuter and has *seminēcum*, in the Genitive Plural.

*Pauci*, few, and *plerique*, the most part, are seldom used in the Singular.

4. The following classes of words want the Vocative: viz, Partitives: as, *quidam*, *alius*: Relatives; as, *qualis*, *quantus*: Negatives; as, *nullus*, *neuter*: Interrogatives; as, *quotus? uter?*

Except *aliquis*, *quicunque*, *quilibet*, and *quisque*. See § 37.

5. The following Adjectives of one termination in *-er*, *-es*, *-or*, *-os*, and *-fex*, with the others contained in the subjoined list, are scarcely used in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural Neuter.

Adjectives in ER : as, *pauper, puber, celer, degèner, uber.*

Adjectives in FEX : as, *artífex, carnāfex.*

Adjectives in OR : as, *memor, concōlor, bicorpor.*

Adjectives in ES : as, *ales, dives, locuples, sospes, superstes, deses, reses, hebes, teres, præpes.*

Adjectives in OS : as, *compos, impos, exos.*

Also *pubis, impūbis, supplex, comis, inops, vigil, sons, insons, intercus, redux*; and perhaps some others.

*Cæter.* or *cætērus*, the rest, is scarcely used in the Nom. Sing. Masculine.

*Victrix*, victorious, and *ultrix*, revengeful, are Feminine only in the Sing. but Fem. and Neut. in the Plural; *victrīces, victricia.*

### REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

6. Some Adjectives compounded of *clivus, frēnum, bacillum, arma, jūgum, limus, somnus*, and *animus*, have two forms of Declension; one in *-us*, of the First and Second Declension; and another in *-is*, of the Third: as, *acclivus, -a, -um*, and *acclivis, -e*, steep; *imbecillus*, and *imbecillis*, weak; *semisomnus*, and *semisomnis*, half-sleeping; *exantmus* and *exanimis*, dead. Also *hilāris*, and *hilārus*, merry.

*Obs.* Some of these Compounds do not admit of this variation: as, *magnantmus, flexantmus, effrēnus, levisomnus*, not *magnantmis, &c.* On the contrary, *pusillantmis, injūgis, illimis, insomnis, exsominis*, are used. and not *pusillantmus, &c.* *Semiantmis, inermis, sublimis, acclivis, declivis, proclivis*, are more common than *semiantmus, &c.* *Inantmis* and *bijūgis* are scarcely used.

## § 23. EXERCISES ON ADJECTIVES.

### 1. Adjectives and Substantives to be declined together.

<i>Parva casa, a small cottage.</i>	<i>Alta arbor, a high tree.</i>
<i>Clarus poeta, a famous poet.</i>	<i>Priscus mos, an ancient custom.</i>
<i>Pulchra filia, a beautiful daughter.</i>	<i>Callida æstas, a warm summer</i>
<i>Dulce pomum, a sweet apple.</i>	<i>Tutus portus, a safe harbour.</i>
<i>Docilis puer, a docile boy.</i>	<i>Nobile carmen, a noble poem.</i>
<i>Breve ævum, a short life.</i>	<i>Antiqua urbs, an ancient city</i>
<i>Capax antrum, a capacious den.</i>	<i>Magna dos, a great dowry.</i>

Magnum opus, *a great work.* Cava navis, *a hollow ship.*  
 Serenus dies, *a clear day.* Culpatus Paris, *wicked Paris.*  
 Densa nubes, *a thick cloud.* Miser Tros, *a miserable Trojan*  
 Fidus pastor, *a faithful shepherd.* Infelix Dido, *unhappy Dido.*

2. Translate the following words into English according to their number and case:

Operis magni,	Urbem antiquam,	Urbis antiquæ,
Claro poetæ,	Poetis claris,	Paridi culpato,
Diēi sereno,	Pueri dociles,	Arbōres altæ,
Diēi sereni,	Dote magnâ,	Trois miseri,
Densis nubibus,	Morum priscorum,	Dido infelici,
Fidi pastoris,	Carminis nobilis,	Portibus tutis,
Ævo brevi,	Callida æstate,	Dulcium pomōrum.

3. Translate the following phrases into Latin, observing to put the adjective in the same gender, number and case with the substantive. The words will be found in the above list.

To a small cottage,	Of ancient customs,	In a great work,
Of a capacious den,	Of an ancient city,	With wicked Paris,
From lofty trees,	To a great work,	A harbour safe,
For unhappy Dido,	O wicked Paris,	In a clear day,
In a hollow ship,	Faithful shepherds,	Of small cottages,
A wretched Trojan,	In a short life,	To a thick cloud,
With thick clouds,	With a sweet apple,	With high trees,
From a clear day,	With clear days,	Beautiful daughters,
Of sweet apples,	Noble poems,	In a warm summer,
High trees,	Of ancient cities,	Of a short life,
With great dowries,	In small cottages,	With docile boys.

## § 24. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Numeral adjectives are those which signify number. In Latin, they are divided into four classes: viz.

1. *Cardinal*, which express number simply, or how many; as, *one, two, three, four, &c.*
2. *Ordinal*, denoting which one of a number; as, *first second, third, fourth, &c.*
3. *Distributive*, denoting how many to each; as, *bini*; two by two, or, two to each.
4. *Multiplicative*, denoting how many fold.

## I. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers, are :

Unus,	one.	I.
Duo,	two.	II.
Tres,	three.	III.
Quatuor,	four.	III, or IV.
Quinque,	five.	V.
Sex,	six.	VI.
Septem,	seven.	VII.
Octo,	eight.	VIII.
Novem,	nine.	VIII, or IX
Decem,	ten.	X.
Undëcim,	eleven.	XI.
Duodëcim,	twelve.	XII.
Tredëcim,	thirteen.	XIII.
Quatuordëcim,	fourteen.	XIII, or XIV.
Quindëcim,	fifteen.	XV.
Sedëcim, or Sexdëcim,	sixteen.	XVI.
Septemdëcim,	seventeen.	XVII.
Octodëcim,	eighteen.	XVIII.
Novemdëcim,	nineteen.	XVIII, or XIX
Viginti,	twenty.	XX.
Viginti unus, or } Unus et viginti, }	twenty-one.	XXI.
Viginti duo, or } duo et viginti, &c. }	twenty-two.	XXII.
Triginta,	thirty.	XXX.
Quadraginta,	forty.	XXXX, or XL.
Quinquaginta,	fifty.	L.
Sexaginta,	sixty.	LX.
Septuaginta,	seventy.	LXX.
Octoginta,	eighty.	LXXX.
Nonaginta,	ninety.	LXXXX, or XC
Centum,	a hundred.	C.
Centum unus, or } centum et unus, &c. }	a hundred and one, &c.	CI.
Ducenti, -æ, -a,	two hundred.	CC.
Trecenti,	three hundred.	CCC.
Quadringenti,	four hundred.	CCCC
Quingenti,	five hundred.	IO or D
Sexcenti,	six hundred.	IOC, or DC.
Septingenti,	seven hundred.	IOCC, or DCC.
Octingenti,	eight hundred.	IOCCC or DCCC

Nongenti,	nine hundred.	IOCCCC, or DCCCC
Mille,	a thousand.	CIO, or M.
Duo millia, or } bis mille, }	two thousand.	CIOCIO, or MM.
Quinque millia, or } quinqües mille, }	five thousand.	IOO, or V̄.
Decem millia, or } decies mille, }	ten thousand.	CCIOO, or X̄.
Quinquaginta millia, or } quingüages mille, }	fifty-thousand.	IOOO, or L̄.
Centum millia, or } centies mille, }	a hundred thousand.	CCCIOOO, or C̄.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Eighteen* and *nineteen* are more properly expressed by *duodeviginti*, and *undeviginti*; from which Ordinals, Distributives and Adverbs are likewise formed. The same form is also used in the corresponding numbers of each of the other decades; as, *duodetriginta*, twenty-eight; *undetriginta*, twenty-nine, &c.

2. The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

3. *Unus*, as a numeral, is not used in the plural except when joined with a substantive that wants the Singular; as, *una mētia*, one wall; or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. *Unus* is declined like *totus*, § 20. 4.

*Duo*, *two*, and *Tres*, *three*, are thus declined.

Plural.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	G. trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
Ac. duos,-o,	duas,	duo,	Ac. tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,	tres,	tria,
Ab. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	Ab. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

*Ambo*, both, is declined like *duo*.

4. All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, inclusive, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, they are declined like the plural of *bonus*, § 20. 1.

5. *Mille*, when placed before a Genitive Plural is a substantive indeclinable in the singular; in the plural it is de-



clined like the plural of *sedile*, § 12. 8; thus, *milla*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c. When it has a substantive in any other case, than the Genitive Plural joined to it, it is a plural adjective, indeclinable; as *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

#### ROMAN METHOD OF NOTATION BY LETTERS.

6. The capital letters used by the Romans to denote numbers, were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called Numeral Letters. I, denotes *one*; V, *five*; X, *ten*; L, *fifty*, and C, a hundred. By the various combinations of these letters, all numbers were expressed as follows.

The repetition of a letter repeats its value; thus, II, signifies *two*; III, *three*; XX, *twenty*; XXX, *thirty*; CC, *two hundred*; CCC, *three hundred*, &c. V and L are never repeated.

When a letter of less value is placed before another of greater value, the value of the less is *taken from* the greater. When placed after it, the value of the less is *added to* the greater; thus.

IV. Four.	V. Five,	VI. Six,
IX. Nine,	X. Ten,	XI. Eleven,
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty,	LX. Sixty,
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred,	CX. a hundred & ten

A *thousand* was marked CIO, which was afterwards expressed by M, the initial of *Mille*. *Five hundred* is marked IO, afterwards changed into D.

The annexing of O to IO, makes its value ten times greater; thus, IOO, denotes *five thousand*; IOOO, *fifty thousand*.

In like manner a C prefixed, together with another O annexed to the numerals CIO, always increases the value tenfold; thus, CIO, a *thousand*; CCIOO, *ten thousand*; CCCIOOO, a *hundred thousand*. Any higher number than this, according to Pliny, was expressed by repetition; thus, CCCIOOO, CCCIOOO, *two hundred thousand*.

*Thousands* are sometimes expressed by a line drawn over the numeral letters; thus,  $\overline{\text{III}}$ , denotes *three thousand*,  $\overline{\text{X}}$ , *ten thousand*, &c.

## II. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

The *Ordinal Numbers* are formed from the cardinal; they all end in *-us*, and are declined like *bonus*; § 20. 1. *as, primus*, first, *secundus*, second, &c. See the following table.

## III. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

The *Distributive Numbers* are all plural and declined like the plural of *bonus*, except that they usually have *-ūm* for *-ōrum*, in the genitive plural; as, *singuli*, one by one, *or*, one to each; *bini*, two by two, *or*, two to each.

The following table contains the Ordinal and Distributive numbers, and the corresponding Numeral Adverbs.

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1. <i>Primus, first.</i>	<i>Singuli, one by one.</i>	<i>Semel, once.</i>
2. <i>Secundus, second.</i>	<i>Bini, two by two.</i>	<i>Bis, twice.</i>
3. <i>Tertius, third.</i>	<i>Terni, or trini, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Ter, thrice.</i>
4. <i>Quartus, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Quaterni,</i>	<i>Quater, four times.</i>
5. <i>Quintus,</i>	<i>Quini,</i>	<i>Quinques, &amp;c.</i>
6. <i>Sextus,</i>	<i>Seni,</i>	<i>Sexies.</i>
7. <i>Septimus,</i>	<i>Septēni,</i>	<i>Septies.</i>
8. <i>Octavus,</i>	<i>Octōni,</i>	<i>Octies.</i>
9. <i>Nonus,</i>	<i>Novēni,</i>	<i>Novies.</i>
10. <i>Decimus,</i>	<i>Deni,</i>	<i>Decies.</i>
11. <i>Undecimus,</i>	<i>Undēni,</i>	<i>Undecies.</i>
12. <i>Duodecimus,</i>	<i>Duodēni,</i>	<i>Duodecies.</i>
13. <i>Tertius decimus,</i>	<i>Terni deni,</i>	<i>Terdecies.</i>
14. <i>Quartus decimus,</i>	<i>Quaterni deni,</i>	<i>Quaterdecies.</i>
15. <i>Quintus decimus,</i>	<i>Quini deni,</i>	<i>Quindecies.</i>
16. <i>Sextus decimus,</i>	<i>Seni deni,</i>	<i>Sedecies.</i>
17. <i>Septimus decimus,</i>	<i>Septēni deni,</i>	<i>Decies et septies.</i>
18. <i>Octavus decimus,</i>	<i>Octōni deni,</i>	<i>Decies et octies.</i>
19. <i>Nonus decimus,</i>	<i>Novēni deni,</i>	<i>Decies et nonies.</i>
20. <i>Vicesimus, or } vigesimus, }</i>	<i>Vicēni,</i>	<i>Vicies.</i>
21. <i>Vicesimus primus,</i>	<i>Vicēni singuli,</i>	<i>Semel et vicies,</i>
22. <i>Vicesimus secundus,</i>	<i>Vicēni bini,</i>	<i>Bis et vicies, &amp;c.</i>
30. <i>Tricesimus, or } trigesimus, }</i>	<i>Tricēni, }</i>	<i>Tricies.</i>
40. <i>Quadragesimus,</i>	<i>Quadragēni,</i>	<i>Quadrages.</i>
50. <i>Quinquagesimus,</i>	<i>Quinquagēni,</i>	<i>Quinquages.</i>



10. To these classes may be added,

1st. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *duplus*, twice as great.

2d. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *bimus*, two years old; *biennis*, of two years' continuance.

3d. Those which denote how many parts a thing contains; as, *binarius*, of two parts.

4th. *Interrogatives*, as *quot*, how many? *quotus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? which have for their correlatives, *tot*, *totidem*, &c.

11. The learner should carefully notice the distinction between the cardinal and distributive numerals in their ordinary use. Thus, for example, *Duo consules VIGINTI naves habebant*, means, "the two consuls together had twenty ships," i. e. twenty in all, or ten each; but *Duo consules VICENAS naves habebant*, means "the two consuls had twenty ships each," or forty in all.

---

## § 25. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the *Positive*, *Comparative* and *Superlative*.

The **POSITIVE** expresses a quality simply; as, *bonus*, good. The **COMPARATIVE** asserts it in a higher or lower degree in one object than in another. The **SUPERLATIVE** asserts it in the highest or lowest degree in one object compared with several; as, Gold is *heavier* than silver; it is the *most precious* of the metals. Hence, those adjectives only can be compared whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The *Superlative* is often used to express a very high or low degree of a quality, without implying comparison; as, *vir doctissimus*, "A very learned man;" *hortus amoenissimus*, "A most delightful garden." Thus used, it is called the *Superlative of eminence*, and is commonly translated with the article *a*, or *an*;—when comparison is implied, the article *the* must be used.

The *Comparative* is always of the third declension, and declined like *minor*, § 21. 4. The *superlative* is always of the first and second, and declined like *bonus*, § 20. 1

## RULES OF COMPARISON.

1. The Comparative is formed from any case of the positive ending in *-i*, by adding *-or*, for the Masculine and Feminine, and *-us* for the Neuter; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	
	M. F.	N.
Durus, <i>hard</i> , (duri,)	duri-or,	duri-us, <i>harder</i> .
Brevis, <i>short</i> , (brevi,)	brevi-or,	brevi-us, <i>shorter</i> .
Audax, <i>bold</i> , (audaci,)	audaci-or,	audaci-us, <i>boldest</i> .

2. The Superlative is formed from any case of the positive ending in *-i*, by changing *-i* into *-issimus*.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Durus, <i>hard</i> , (duri,)	durissimus-a-um, <i>hardest</i> .
Brevis, <i>short</i> , (brevi,)	brevissimus-a-um, <i>shortest</i> .
Audax, <i>bold</i> , (audaci,)	audacissimus, <i>boldest</i> .

*Exc.* If the positive end in *-er*, the superlative is formed by adding *-rimus*; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Pulcher, <i>fair</i> ,	pulcher-rimus-a-um, <i>fairest</i> .
<i>Nom.</i> Pauper, <i>poor</i> ,	pauper-rimus-a-um, <i>poorest</i> .

Hence these adjectives will be compared thus:

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>			
Durus,	durior,	durissimus,	<i>Hard,</i>	<i>harder,</i>	<i>hardest.</i>
Brevis,	brevior,	brevissimus,	<i>Short,</i>	<i>shorter,</i>	<i>shortest</i>
Audax,	audacior,	audacissimus,	<i>Bold,</i>	<i>boldest,</i>	<i>boldest</i>
Pulcher,	pulchrior,	pulcherrimus,	<i>Fair,</i>	<i>fairer,</i>	<i>fairest.</i>
Pauper.	pauperior,	pauperrimus,	<i>Poor,</i>	<i>poorer,</i>	<i>poorest</i>

In the same manner compare,

Altus, <i>high</i> .	Felix, <i>happy</i> .	Levis, <i>light</i> .
Durus, <i>hard</i> .	Lentus, <i>slow</i> .	Sapiens, <i>wise</i> .
Capax, <i>capacious</i> .	Gravis, <i>heavy</i> .	Vehemens, <i>vehement</i>
Creber, <i>frequent</i> .	Integer, <i>entire</i> .	Prudens, <i>prudent</i> .
Firmus, <i>strong</i> .	Fortis, <i>brave</i> .	Liber, <i>free</i> .
Piger, <i>slow</i>	Velox, <i>swift</i>	Doctus. <i>learned</i>

## § 26. IRREGULAR &amp; DEFECTIVE COMPARISONS.

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>			
Bonus,	melior,	optimus;	Good,	better,	best.
Magnus,	major,	maximus;	Great,	greater,	greatest
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus;	Bad,	worse,	worst.
Multus,	plus, n.	plurimus;	Much,	more,	most.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus;	Little,	less,	least.

*Obs.* *Plus* has only the neuter in the singular. In the plural it is regular, and is declined as, § 21. 4. *Exc.*

1. The following Adjectives form the Superlative in *-limus*:

Facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facilior,	facillimus.
Gracilis, <i>lean</i> .	gracilior,	gracillimus.
Humilis, <i>low</i> .	humilior,	humillimus.
Imbecillis, <i>weak</i> .	imbecillior,	imbecillimus.
Similis, <i>like</i> .	similior,	simillimus.

## 2. The following Adjectives have the Comparative regular, but the Superlative irregular.

Citer, <i>near</i> ,	citerior,	citimus.
Dexter, <i>right</i> ,	dexterior,	dextimus.
Exter, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior,	extrēmus, or extimus.
Inferus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior,	infimus, or imus.
Intērus, <i>inward</i> ,	interior,	intimus.
Matūrus, <i>ripe</i> ,	maturior,	maturrimus, or maturissimus
Postērus, <i>behind</i> ,	posterior,	postrēmus, or postumus.
Sinister, <i>left</i> .	sinisterior,	sinistimus.
Supērus, <i>high</i> ,	superior,	suprēmus, or summus.
Vetus, <i>old</i> ,	veterior,	veterrimus.

*Note.*—*Dives*, rich, has commonly *ditior* and *ditissimus*, for its Comparative and Superlative; contracted for *divitior* and *divi-issimus*.

3. Compounds in *dīcus*, *fīcus*, *lōquus*, and *vōlus*, form the Comparative in *-entior*, and the Superlative in *-entissimus*.

Maledicus, <i>railling</i> ,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus
Beneficus, <i>beneficent</i> ,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus.
Mirificus, <i>wonderful</i> ,	mirificentior,	mirificentissimus.
Magnilōquus, <i>boasting</i> ,	magniloquentior,	magniloquentissimus.
Benevōlus, <i>benevolent</i> ,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus

*Note.*—*Mirificus* has also *mirificissimus* in the Superlative. The Compounds of *loquus* are not found in the Superlative.

4. The following Adjectives want the Positive:

Deterior, <i>worse</i> .	detrerrimus.	Propior, <i>nearer</i> ,	proximus.
Ocior, <i>swifter</i> ,	ocissimus.	Uterior, <i>farther</i> ,	ultimus.
Prior, <i>former</i> ,	primus.		

5. The following Adjectives want the Comparative:

Inclutus, <i>renowned</i> ,	inclutissimus.	Par, <i>equal</i> ,	parissimus.
Invictus, <i>invincible</i> ,	invictissimus.	Persuāsus, <i>persuaded</i> ,	persuassissimus.
Meritus, <i>deserving</i> ,	meritissimus.		
Novus, <i>new</i> ,	novissimus.	Sacer, <i>sacred</i> ,	sacerrimus.
Nup̄rus, <i>late</i> ,	nuperrimus.		

6. The following Adjectives want the Superlative:

Adolescens, <i>young</i> ,	adolescentior.	Opimus, <i>rich</i> ,	opimior.
Diurnus, <i>lasting</i> ,	diurnior.	Pronus, <i>bending down</i> ,	pronior.
Ingens, <i>huge</i> ,	ingentior.	Satur, <i>full</i> ,	saturior.
Juvenis, <i>young</i> ,	junior.	Senex, <i>old</i> ,	senior.

*Note.*—The Superlative of *juvenis*, or *adolescens*, is supplied by *minimus natu*, the youngest; *senex* takes *maximus natu*, the oldest.

7. Almost all Adjectives in *-ilis*, (penult long,) *-ālis*, and *-bīlis*, want the Superlative; as, *civilis*, *civilior*, civil; *regālis* *regalior*, regal; *flēbīlis*, *-ior*, lamentable.

*Note.*—Some Adjectives of these terminations have the superlative also; as *equālis*, *frugālis*, *hospitālis*, *liberālis*, *vocālis* — *affabilis*, *amabilis*, *habilis*, *ignobilis*, *mirabilis*, *mobilis*, *mutabilis*, *nobilis*, *stabilis*.

Some Adjectives of other terminations also want the Superlative: as, *arcānus*, *-ior*, secret; *declivis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near; *salutāris*, healthful, *salutarior*.

*Anterior*, former, and *sequior*, worse, are found only in the comparative.

*Nequam*, worthless (indeclinable,) has *nequior*, *nequissimus*.

8. Many Adjectives, which are capable of having their signification increased, do not admit of comparison: as,

*Albus*, white; *almus*, gracious; *egēnus*, needy; *lacer*, torn; *memor* mindful; *mirus*, wonderful; *precoz*, early ripe; *sospes*, safe. &c.

Participles in *-rus* and *-dus*, and Adjectives in *-ivus*, *-inus*, *-ōrus* and *-imus*: as, *fugitivus*, fugitive; *matutinus*, early; *canōrus*, shrill; *legitimus*, lawful.

Adjectives compounded with Nouns and Verbs: as, *versicolor*, of various colors; *degener*, degenerating; *pestifer*, poisonous, &c.

Diminutives, which, in themselves, involve a sort of comparison. as, *tenellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscūlus*, somewhat big.

9. Adjectives, in which a vowel precedes *-us*, except *-quus*, form the Comparative by putting *magis* before the Positive; and the Superlative, by putting *valde* or *maxime* before it: as, *arduus*, high; *magis arduus*, higher; *valde*, or *maxime arduus*, highest, or very high.

## § 27. DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

Derivative Adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

1. Those derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*. They are such as *aureus*, golden; *capitālis*, capital, relating to the life; *puerilis*, boyish; *animōsus*, full of courage, &c. from *aurum*, *caput*, *puer*, *animus*, &c.

2. Those derived from adjectives are also called *denominatives*; they are chiefly diminutives; as, *dulcicūlus*, sweetish; *duriuscūlus*, somewhat hard, &c. from *dulcis*, *durus*, &c.

3. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbal* adjectives. They commonly end in *-bundus*, *-īdus*, *-bīlis*, *-īlis*, *-itius*, and *-ax*; as, *errabundus*, given to wandering; *rapidus*, rapid; *credibilis*, credible; *flexibilis*, easy to be bent; *fictitius*, feigned; *capax*, capacious, &c. from *erro*, *rapio*, *credo*, *flecto*, *fingo*, *capio*, &c.

4. Participles divested of the idea of time and expressing merely a quality, become adjectives, and are capable of comparison; as, *amans*, fond of; *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, *doctissimus*. These are called *participial Adjectives*.

Adjectives are also derived from adverbs and prepositions; as, *hodiernus*, *contrarius*, &c. from *hodie*, *contra*, &c.



## § 28. OF PRONOUNS.

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun.

In Latin there are eighteen simple pronouns, namely, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*; *nostras*, *vestras* and *cujas*.

Of these, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, are substantive or personal pronouns, the rest are adjectives.

## SUBSTANTIVE OR PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The Substantive or Personal pronouns take the gender of the noun for which they stand, and are thus declined:

Ego, I. First Person. M, or F.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. ego,	I,	N. nos,	We.
G. mei,	of me,	G. nostrum, or nostri,*	of us.
D. mihi,	to me,	D. nobis,	to us.
Ac. me,	me,	Ac. nos,	us.
V. —	—	V. —	—
Ab. me,	with &c. me.	Ab. nobis,	with, &c. us.

Tu, thou, Second Person, M, or F.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. tu,	thou or you,	N. vos,	ye, or you,
G. tui,	of thee, or of you,	G. vestrum, or vestri,	of you,
D. tibi,	to thee, or to you,	D. vobis,	to you,
Ac. te,	thee, or you,	Ac. vos,	you,
V. tu,	O thou, or O you,	V. vos,	O ye, or you,
Ab. te,	with, &c. thee, or you.	Ab. vobis,	with &c. you.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself. Third Person.

M. F. N. Reflexive.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. —	—	N. —	—
G. sui,	of himself, &c.	G. sui,	of themselves,
D. sibi,	to himself, &c.	D. sibi,	to themselves,
Ac. se,	himself, &c.	Ac. se,	themselves.
V. —	—	V. —	—
Ab. se,	with &c. himself, &c.	Ab. se,	with, &c. themselves.

\* *Nostrum*, *vestrum*, G. subjective; *nostri*, *vestri*, objective. § 106, Obs. 1

*Obs.* 1. In all speech three things are implied, the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person or thing spoken of. These are called in Grammar the *first*, *second* and *third* persons; and the pronouns representing them are called *Personal Pronouns*.

*Obs.* 2. The pronoun of the first person is *Ego*, I; of the second *Tu*, thou or you; of the third *Sui*, of himself, of herself, of itself. Also the adjective pronouns, *ipse*, *ille*, *iste*, *is*, and *hic*, without a substantive, in the gender of the nouns represented by them, and with the general meaning of *he*, *she*, *it*, may be called *Substantive* or *Personal Pronouns*.

*Note.*—"Thou" and "thee" are used as the rendering of *tu* and its cases in the singular, only in solemn addresses, or to mark special emphasis or contempt. In ordinary discourse it is translated by "you." See Eng. Gram § 15. 4.

*Obs.* 3. The third personal pronouns, though all translated by one term in English,\* differ from each other in meaning and use, as follows:

1st. *Sui* is used only in the oblique cases and in a reflexive sense. referring to the main subject of the sentence,† and consequently indicating no change of subject; as, *Cato se occidit*, "Cato killed himself;" *Cato dixit se esse Cæsare felicior*. "Cato said that he (Cato) was more happy than Cæsar."—But when the pronoun refers to another word, and there is consequently a transition from the principle to a subordinate subject, some of the other pronouns *ille*, *iste*, *is*, must be used, thus, the above sentence; "Cato said that he was a happier man than Cæsar;" if the word "he" did not refer to Cato, but to some other person, *illum* or *eum*, and not *se* would be used; thus, *Cato dixit illum*, &c.

*Exc.* *Sui* and its corresponding possessive pronoun *suus*, are some-

\* The want of different pronouns of the third person in English, is frequently the cause of ambiguity, which never can occur in Latin or Greek. Thus if we say, "Lysias promised his father never to abandon his friends;" it is impossible to tell from this sentence whose friends are meant,—whether those of Lysias or of his father. If the former, "his" in Latin would be *suos*; if the latter, "*ejus*," and if the latter in a special manner, "*ipsius*."

† The main subject is generally the nominative to the leading verb, as in the above examples. Sometimes, however, the construction requires it to be in a different case; as, *Ab Antonio admonitus sum ut mane sibi adessem*; here the leading subject is *Antonio* in the Ablative, and to this, of course, *sibi* refers; so in the following: "*Est libido homini suo animo obsequi*," the principal subject is "*homini*."

times used when the reference is not to be primary, but to a subordinate subject; but this is never done by good writers when it would cause ambiguity. The most common cases of this usage are:— 1st. When the primary subject is in the first or second person to which of course *sui*, being the third, cannot refer; as, *illum occidi suo gladio*, I slew him with his own sword. 2d. After *quisque* or *unusquisque*; as, *sum cuique tribuunt*, “they give every man his own.” 3d. When the word to which *sui* refers stands immediately or almost immediately before it; as, *hunc cives sui ex urbe eiecērunt*; “his fellow citizens banished him from the city,” 4th. When the noun with which *sui* agrees is coupled with another by *cum*; as, *eum cum suis rebus dimisērunt*; “they dismissed him with his effects.”

2d. *Ipse* is applicable to any of the three persons, and,—in the nominative case, is used when either the primary or the subordinate subject is again introduced with emphasis, in a subsequent or subordinate clause, or in the next sentence; as, *Lycurgus nihil ulla lege in alios sanxit, cujus non ipse primus in se documenta daret*; “Lycurgus bound nothing by any law upon others, of which he did not first give an instance in himself;” here *ipse* refers to *Lycurgus*, the primary subject. In the following sentence, *ipsi* refers to the subordinate, and *ipse* to the principal subject; *Cæsar ad præfectos—mittit qui nunciarent ne hostes prælio lacesserent; et si ipsi lacesserentur. sustinerent quoad ipse accessisset*. Cæsar, IV. 11.

In the oblique cases, *ipse* hardly ever refers to the main subject, (this being the proper office of *sui*,) but to the subordinate when that is to be expressed with emphasis, and distinguished from the primary or any other subject previously expressed; as, *Senatus dixit non suâ negligentia, sed ipsius (Pompeji,) subito adventu factum*. “The senate said that it happened not through any negligence on their part but owing to his (Pompey’s) sudden arrival.” Instances however occur in which the oblique cases refer to the principal subject, but these are rare, and such as to create no ambiguity.

3d. *Ille, iste, is*, and *hic*, in all genders are used as pronouns, of the third person, and are all rendered *he, she, or it*, as the word which they represent may require. In the nominative they are applicable equally to the main or to the subordinate subject. But in the oblique cases, with few exceptions, they refer to the subordinate only. *Ille* means *he*, referring to a person at a distance from the speaker; *hic* means *he*, referring to a person near the speaker; *iste* means *he*, denoting a person near to, or mentioned by, the person spoken to; *is* means *he*, in a more general way, and very often designates a person

or thing not previously mentioned, but which is described in a succeeding clause with the relative. These distinctions may be illustrated thus :

*Ille venit*, he (the person formerly spoken of,) has come.

*Iste venit*, he (the person of whom you spoke,) has come.

*Is venit*, he has come.

*Hic venit*, he (the person present or just spoken of,) has come.

In the use of these pronouns, however, these distinctions are not always strictly observed ; *Ille* and *is*, especially are often used indiscriminately, and in the same sentence apparently for the sake of Euphony or variety of expression.

*Iste* is often used as an expression of worthlessness or contempt.

*Obs. 4.* The personal pronouns are rendered emphatic by annexing the definite *ipse*, and the syllable *-met* or *-te* separately or variously combined ; as, *ego ipse*, *egomet*, *tute, nosmet-ipsi*, &c. *Se* the accusative and ablative of *sui* is often doubled, as *sese*. When the preposition *cum* is used with the ablative of the personal pronouns, it is commonly annexed ; as, *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, &c.

*Obs. 5.* In the accusative plural with *inter*, or after an active verb with *invicem*, *se* is used as a reciprocal pronoun ; as, *Fratres inter se similes*, " Brothers like each other." *Brutus et Aruns se invicem occiderunt*, " Brutus and Aruns slew each other."

## § 29. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS are declined with three genders, to agree with their substantives in these accidents.

Adjective Pronouns may be divided into *Possessive*, *Demonstrative*, *Definite*, *Relative*, *Interrogative*, *Indefinite*, and *Patrial*.

## § 30. I. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS are derived from the Substantive as follows :

Meus,	-a,	-um,	my, my own,	from ego.
Tuus,	-a,	-um,	thy, thy own,	" tu.
Suus,	-a,	-um,	his, her, its, his own, &c.	" sui.
Noster,	-ra,	-rum,	our, our own,	" nos.
Vester,	-ra,	-rum,	your, your own,	" vos

*Obs. 1.* In *signification*, Possessive Pronouns correspond to the genitive of their primitives, for which they may be considered as a substitute; thus, *frater mei*, "the brother of me," and *meus frater*, "my brother," mean the same thing, and hence they may often be rendered as the genitive; as, *suo populi que Romani beneficio*, "by the kindness of himself, and of the Roman people." Cæs.

*Obs. 2.* In *form* they are regular adjectives of the first and second declension. *Meus*, *tuus* and *suus* are declined like *bonus*, § 20. 1; except that *meus* has *mi*, seldom *meus*, in the vocative singular masculine. *Noster* and *Vester* are declined like *ater*, § 20. 3.

*Obs. 3.* *Suus* like its primitive *sui*, (§ 28. Exc.) is used in a reflexive sense, referring to the subject of the main verb in the sentence, and must be rendered into English in the gender and number of that subject without regard to the noun with which it stands; thus, *suam rem familiarem perdiderunt*, "they squandered their property;" here *suam*, though singular, to agree with *rem*, must be rendered "their," because it refers to the plural subject of *perdiderunt*. *Illa suos fratres dilexit*, "she loved her brothers."

When the reference is not to the subject of the main verb but to some other third person the possessive is expressed in Latin, not by *suus*, but by the genitives of *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *is* and *hic*; thus, *ejus rem familiarem rapuerunt*, "they plundered his property." *Suos amicos amat*, means "he loves his own friends;" *ejus amicos amat*, is "he loves his friends," meaning (not his own, but) the friends of some other person to whom *ejus* refers.

## § 31. II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are such as point out with precision a person or thing already known.

They are, *hic*, this; *ille*, *iste*, *is*, that. They are declined as follows:

HIC, HÆC, HOC, *this*; Plural, *these*.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
Ac. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	Ac. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	Ab. his,	his,	his.

ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, *that*; Plural, *those*.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,*	G. illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum.
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
Ac. illum,	illam,	illud,	Ac. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
Ab. illo,	illā,	illo.	Ab. illis,	illis,	illis.

Iste, *that*; is declined like *ille*.

IS, EA, ID, *that*; Plural, *those*.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is,	eā,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	eā,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D. eī,	eī,	eī,	D. iis, or eīs,	iīs, or eīs,	iīs or eīs
Ac. eum,	eam,	id,	Ac. eos,	eas,	eā,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
Ab. eo,	eā,	eo.	Ab. iis, or eīs,	iīs, or eīs,	iīs, or eīs

From *is* and the syllable *-dem* is formed *īdem*, *eādem*, *īdem*, "*the same*," which is thus declined:

*Singular.*

M.	F.	N.
N. īdem,	eādem,	īdem,
G. ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem,
D. eidem,	eīdem,	eīdem,
Ac. eundem,	eādem,	īdem,
V. īdem,	eādem,	īdem,
Ab. eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.

\* See § 20. Note. 2

*Plural.*

M.	F.	N.
N. iidem,	eādem,	eādem,
G. eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
D. eīsdem, or iisdem, &c.		
Ac. eosdem,	easdem,	eādem,
V. iidem,	eādem,	eādem,
Ab. eīsdem, or iisdem, &c.		

*Obs. 1.* When *two* persons or things are spoken of, *ille* refers to the former, *hic* to the latter. When *three* are spoken of, *ille* refers to the first, *hic*, to the last, and *iste* to the intermediate.

*Obs. 2.* *Hic* means "this," referring to something near the speaker or just spoken of. *Ille* "that," refers to something at a distance or before spoken of. *Iste* "that," refers to something near, or belonging to, or some way connected with the person spoken to. *Is*, "that," is less precise in its reference than the other demonstratives, being not confined to something known or already spoken of, but is often used to point out that which is to be farther described; as, *ed legione quam secum habēbat*, "with that legion which he had with him."

When followed by *ut* or *qui*, *is* has the sense of *talis* "such;" as, *Neque enim tu is es, qui (or ut) quid sis nescias*, "neither art thou *such* a one as to be ignorant of what you are." With *que* it gives emphasis to the clause to which it refers; thus, *idque* "and that too," "especially," equivalent to the Greek "*καὶ ταῦτα*."

*Obs. 3.* *Hic*, and some cases of the other demonstratives, are rendered emphatic by adding *ce*; as, *hicce*, *hujusce*, *huncce*, &c. When *ne* interrogative is also added, *ce* is changed into *ci*; as *hiccine*, *hoscine*, &c.

*Obs. 4.* From *ille* and *iste* with *hic*, are formed the compounds *illic* and *isthic* or *istic*, used in some of the cases for *ille* and *iste*, but with greater emphasis.

*Istic* is thus declined,

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>istic</i> ,	<i>istæc</i> ,	<i>istoc</i> ,	} — — —	} — — —	<i>istæc</i> .
Ac. <i>istunc</i> ,	<i>istanc</i> ,	<i>istunc</i> ,			
Ab. <i>istoc</i> ,	<i>istâc</i> ,	<i>istoc</i> .			

*Illic* is declined in the same manner.

## § 32. III. THE DEFINITE PRONOUN.

The Definite Pronoun *ipse* is used to give a closer or more definite signification of a person or thing; as, *Ad ipsam portam accessit*, "he came up to the gate itself;" or "the very gate." It is thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ipse,	ipsă,	ipsum,	N. ipsī,	ipsæ,	ipsă,
G. ipsius,	ipsius,	ipsius,	G. ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum,
D. ipsi,	ipsi,	ipsi,	D. ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis,
Ac. ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	Ac. ipsos,	ipsas,	ipsă,
V. ———	———	———	V. ———	———	———
Ab. ipso,	ipsă,	ipso.	Ab. ipsis,	ipsis,	ipsis.

## § 33. IV. RELATIVE PRONOUN.

The RELATIVE PRONOUN is one that relates to a noun or pronoun going before it, called the antecedent. It is thus declined.

QUI, QUÆ, QUOD, *who, which, that.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis, or	quibus, &c.	
Ac. quem,	quam,	quod,	Ac. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ———	———	———	V. ———	———	———
Ab. quō,	quā,	quō.	Ab. queis, or	quibus, &c.	

For the construction of the relative, see § 99.

*Obs. 1. Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular in



all genders, seldom for the plural. To all forms of the Ablative, *cum* is frequently annexed; as, *quòcum, quibuscum, &c.*

*Obs. 2.* *Quicunque*, or *quicumque* and *quivis*, also used as relatives (§ 99, *Obs. 7.*) are declined like *qui*.

### § 34. V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

The INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN is used in asking a question; as, *quis fecit?* "who did it?"

The interrogatives are,

Quis?	} <i>who? what?</i>	Ecquis?	} <i>is any one?</i>
Quisnam?		Ecquisnam?	
Qui?	} <i>which? what?</i>	Numquis?	
Quinam?		Cujus? <i>whose?</i>	
		Cujas? <i>of what country?</i>	

The simple interrogative *quis*, is thus declined.

QUIS, QUÆ, QUOD, or QUID? *Who? which? what?*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i>	quis,	quæ,	quod, or quid,	<i>N.</i>	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>G.</i>	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	<i>G.</i>	quòrum,	quàrum,	quòrum,
<i>D.</i>	cui,	cui,	cui,	<i>D.</i>	queis, or quibus,	&c.	
<i>Ac.</i>	quem,	quam,	quod, or quid,	<i>Ac.</i>	quos,	quas,	quæ,
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—	<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	quò,	quâ,	quò.	<i>Ab.</i>	queis, or quibus,	&c.	

For the inflection of the compound interrogatives, see § 37. 2.

*Obs. 1.* All interrogative pronouns used in a dependent clause and without a question are *indefinites*, § 35. as, *nescio quis sit*, "I know not who he is." In this sense, *qui* is often used for *quis*; as, *qui sit aperit*, "he shews who he is." So also such adjectives as *quantus, quâlis, &c.*

*Obs. 2.* *Quod* in the neuter gender, as an adjective, commonly agrees with its noun; as, *quod beneficium est in hoc?* "what kindness is in this?" *Quid*, as a substantive, commonly governs its noun in the genitive; as, *quid beneficii est in hoc?*

*Obs. 3. Cujus, -a, -um,* "whose," used instead of the genitive of *quis* is defective. The parts in use are as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.
<i>N. cujus,</i>	<i>cujā,</i>	<i>cujum,</i>	<i>N. cuji,</i>	<i>cujā,</i>
<i>Ac. cujum,</i>	<i>cujam,</i>	—	<i>Ac. —</i>	<i>cujas</i>
<i>Ab. —</i>	<i>cujā,</i>	—		

*Obs. 4. Cujas,* "of what country," is declined like an adjective of one termination, § 21. I. *Nom. cujas, Gen. cujatis, &c.*

### § 35. VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are such as denote persons or things indefinitely, without indicating a particular individual. Besides the interrogatives used indefinitely, they are,

<i>Aliquis, some one.</i>	<i>Quispiam, some one.</i>
<i>Siquis, if any one.</i>	<i>Unusquisque, each one.</i>
<i>Nequis, lest any, no one.</i>	<i>Quidam, a certain one.</i>
<i>Quisque, each one, every one.</i>	<i>Quilibet, } any one you please.</i>
<i>Quisquam, any one.</i>	<i>Quivis, }</i>

For the inflection of these, see § 37. 1. 2. 3.

### § 36. VII. PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

The Patrial Pronouns are those which have reference to one's country. They are *nostras*, "of our country;" *vestras*, "of your country." They are both adjectives of one termination. *Nom. nostras, Gen. nostratis, &c.* § 21. I.

### § 37. COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

The compound pronouns all belong to some of the classes above enumerated.

In the compounds of *qui* and *quis*, *qui* is always the first part; *quis* is sometimes the first part and sometimes the last part of the word compounded.

1. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, "whosoever;" *quidam*, "some;" *quilibet*, *quivis*, "any one;" "whom you please." They are declined by adding the termination to the different cases and numbers of *qui*; thus,

QUICUNQUE, *whosoever, whatsoever.*

*Singular.*

M.	F.	N.
N. quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque,
G. cujuscunque,	cujuscunque,	cujuscunque, &c.

*Plural.*

N. quicunque,	quæcunque,	quæcunque,
G. quòrumcunque,	quàrumcunque,	quòrumcunque. &c.

So,

Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam, or quiddam.
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet, or quidlibet.
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis, or quidvis.

*Note.*—Before *-dam*, *m* is changed into *n*; as, *quendam*, *quòrumdam*, &c.

2. The compounds of *quis*, when *quis* is put first, are *quisnam*, "who?" *quispiam*, *quisquam*, "any one;" *quisque* "every one;" and *quisquis*, "whosoever."

QUISNAM, *who, which, what?*

*Singular.*

M.	F.	N.
N. quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam, or quidnam,
G. cujusnam,	cujusnam,	cujusnam,
D. cuinam,	cuinam,	cuinam,
Ac. quemnam,	quamnam,	quodnam, or quidnam,
V. _____	_____	_____
Ab. quònam,	quàmnam,	quònam.

*Plural.*

N. quīnam,	quānam,	quānam,
G. quōrumnam,	quārumnam,	quōrumnam,
D. quibusnam,	quibusnam,	quibusnam,
Ac. quosnam,	quasnam,	quānam,
V. ———	—————	—————
Ab. quibusnam,	quibusnam,	quibusnam.

So decline.

Quispiam,	quāpiam,	quodpiam, or quidpiam.
Quisquam,	quāquam,	quodquam, or quidquam.
Quisque,	quāque,	quodque, or quidque.
Quisquis,	—————	quidquid, or quicquid.

*Obs. 1.* *Quisquam* has *quenquam* in the accusative, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used; *quicque* is also used for *quidque*. *Quisquis* has no feminine termination except in the Ablative, and the Neuter only in the Nominative and Accusative. The following are the parts in use,

*Singular.*

M.	F.	N.
N. quisquis,	—————	quidquid, or quicquid,
Ac. quemquem,	—————	quidquid, or quicquid,
Ab. quoquo,	quaqua,	quoquo.

The Plural has Nom. Masc. *quique*, and Dat. *quibusque*. *Quisquis* is sometimes used for the feminine.

3. The compounds of *quis* when *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and in the Nom. and Accusative Plural Neuter. These are,

Aliquis, <i>some.</i>	Numquis, <i>whether any?</i>
Ecquis, <i>whether any?</i>	Siquis, <i>if any.</i>
Nequis, <i>lest any.</i>	

The last three are often written separately; as, *ne quis*, *num quis*, *si quis*. These pronouns are thus declined:

*Singular.*

M.	F.	N.
N. aliquis,	aliquā,	aliquid, or aliquid,
G. alicujus,	alicujus,	alicujus,
D. alicui,	alicui,	alicui,
Ac. aliquem,	aliquam,	aliquid, or aliquid,
V. aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid, or aliquid,
Ab. aliquē.	aliquā,	aliquō.

*Plural.*

M.	F.	N.
N. aliqui,	aliquæ,	aliqua,
G. aliquōrum,	aliquārum,	aliquōrum,
D. aliquibus,	aliquibus,	aliquibus,
Ac. aliquos,	aliquas,	aliqua,
V. aliqui,	aliquæ,	aliqua,
Ab. aliquibus,	aliquibus,	aliquibus.

*Note.* *Ecquis* and *siquis* have sometimes *quæ* in the nominative singular feminine.

*Obs. 2.* Some of these are twice compounded; as, *ecquisnam*, *ecquænam*, *ecquodnam*, or *ecquidnam*, "who?" *unusquisque*, *unaquæque*, *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*, "every one;" Gen. *unuscujusque*, &c. The former is scarcely declined beyond the Nom. Sing. and the latter wants the Plural.

*Obs. 3.* All these compounds want the vocative, except *quisque*, *aliquis*, *quilibet* and *quicumque*. They have seldom if ever *qucis*, but *quibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

## § 38. OF THE VERB.

A VERB is a word used to express the *act*, *being*, or *state* of its subject.

*Obs. 1.* The use of the verb in simple propositions is to affirm. That of which it affirms is called its *subject*, and, if a noun or pronoun, is usually in the nominative case. But when the verb is in the infinitive, its subject is put in the accusative.

1. Verbs are of two kinds, *Transitive* and *Intransitive*; (Also called *Active* and *Neuter*.\*)

\* These two classes comprehend all the verbs in any language. According to this division, *Transitive* verbs include those only which denote transitive action; i. e., action *passing over* from, or done by, one person or thing to another; and *Intransitive* verbs, those which have nothing transitive in their meaning, but which represent their subject in a certain state or condition, and nothing more. For this purpose not only are the terms *Transitive* and *Intransitive* more expressive and appropriate than *Active* and *Neuter*, but their use relieves the term "*Active*" to be employed solely as the name of the form called the *Active Voice*; and the term "*Neuter*," to be appropriated to the gender of nouns. E. G. App. III. 5.

2. A TRANSITIVE (OR ACTIVE) verb expresses an act done by one person or thing to another. It has two forms, called the *Active* and *Passive* voice. § 41.

3. AN INTRANSITIVE (OR NEUTER) verb expresses *being*, or a *state of being*, or *action confined to the actor*. It is commonly without the passive form.

*Obs. 2.* The verbs that express *beings* simply, in Latin, are *sum, fio, existo*, signifying in general “to be,” or “exist.” The state of being expressed by intransitive verbs may be a state of rest; as, *dormio*, I sleep; or of motion, as *cado*, I fall; or of action, as *curro*, I run.

*Obs. 3.* The action expressed by an intransitive verb does not, like the action expressed by a transitive verb, *pass over* from the agent or actor to an object. It has no immediate relation to anything beyond its subject, which it represents in a certain state or condition, and nothing more; and hence they may always be distinguished thus: A transitive verb always requires an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te*, I love thee; the intransitive verb does not, but the sense is complete without such an object; as, *sedeo*, I sit; *curro*, I run.

*Obs. 4.* Many verbs considered intransitive in Latin are translated by verbs considered transitive in English; as *placeo*, I please; *obedio*, I obey; *credo*, I believe, &c.

*Obs. 5.* Many verbs are used sometimes in a transitive, and sometimes in an intransitive sense. Such are *fugio, inclino, timeo*, &c.; as, *fuge dextrum littus* (tr.) “avoid the right hand shore;” *tempus fugit*, (intr.) “time flies;” *timeo Danaos*, (tr.) “I dread the Greeks,” *timeo* (intr.) “I am afraid.”

*Obs. 6.* Verbs usually intransitive assume a transitive sense when a word of similar signification with the verb itself is introduced as its object; as, *vivere vitam*, “to live a life;” *jurare jusjurandum*, “to swear an oath.”

*Obs. 7.* When we wish to direct the attention, not so much to any particular act of the subject of discourse, as to the employment or state of that subject, the object of the act—not being important—is omitted, and the transitive verb assumes the character of an intransitive; thus, in the sentence, *puer legit*

"the boy reads;" nothing more is indicated than the present state or employment of *puer*, "the boy," and the verb has obviously an intransitive sense: Still, an object is necessarily implied, as he who reads must read something. But when we say *puer legit Hom̃erum*, "the boy reads Homer," the attention is directed to a particular act, terminating on a certain object, "*Hom̃erum*," and the verb has its proper transitive sense.

---

### § 39. DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

Though the Division of Verbs into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*, comprehends all the verbs in any language, yet from something peculiar in their form or signification, they are characterized by different names, expressive of this peculiarity. The most common of these are the following, viz: *Regular, Irregular, Deponent, Common, Defective, Impersonal, Redundant, Frequentative, Inceptive, and Desiderative*.

1. **REGULAR VERBS** are those in which the secondary parts are formed from the primary, according to certain rules. § 51.

*Note.*—Under these are included *Transitive, Intransitive, Deponent, and Common* verbs belonging to the four conjugations.

2. **IRREGULAR VERBS** are those in which some of the secondary parts are not formed from the primary, according to rule. § 83.

3. **DEPONENT VERBS** under a passive form have an active signification. § 72.

4. **COMMON VERBS** under a passive form have an active or passive signification. § 72.

5. **DEFECTIVE VERBS** want some of their parts. § 84.

6. **IMPERSONAL VERBS** are used only in the third person singular. § 85.

7. REDUNDANT VERBS have more than one form of the same part. § 87.

8. FREQUENTATIVE VERBS express repeated action. § 88. 1.

9. INCEPTIVE VERBS mark the beginning or continued increase of an action. § 88. 2.

10. DESIDERATIVE VERBS denote desire or intention of doing. § 88. 3. The three last are always derivatives. § 88.

---

#### § 40. INFLECTION OF VERBS.

To the inflection of Verbs belong *Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.*

1. The VOICES in Latin are two, *Active* and *Passive*.

2. The MOODS are four, the *Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative* and *Infinitive*.

3. The TENSES are six, the *Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future* and *Future-Perfect*.

4. The NUMBERS are two, *Singular* and *Plural*.

5. The PERSONS are three, *First, Second* and *Third*.

6. Besides these, to the Verb belong *Participles, Gerunds* and *Supines*.

7. The CONJUGATION of a verb is the arrangement of its different moods, tenses, &c. according to a certain order. Of these, in Latin, there are four, called the *First, Second, Third* and *Fourth Conjugations*. § 51.



*Obs.* A few verbs in Latin are of more than one conjugation, and a few have some of their parts belonging to one conjugation, and others to another.

---

### § 41. OF VOICE.

VOICE is a particular form of the verb which shews the relation of the *subject* or thing spoken of, to the action expressed by the verb.

The transitive verb, in Latin, has two voices, called the *Active* and *Passive*.

1. The ACTIVE VOICE represents the subject of the verb as acting on some object; as, *amo te*, "I love thee."

2. The PASSIVE VOICE represents the subject of the verb as acted upon; as, *amātur*, "he is loved."

*Obs.* 1. In both voices the act expressed by the verb is the same, but differently related to the subject of the verb. In the *active* voice the subject is the actor; in the *passive*, it is acted upon, as in the above examples. Hence the same idea may be expressed with equal propriety in either voice, by simply changing the object of the active voice into the subject of the passive, thus, by the active voice, *Cæsar vicit Galliam*, "Cæsar conquered Gaul;" by the passive, *Gallia victa est a Cæsare*, "Gaul was conquered by Cæsar."

This property of the transitive verb enables the speaker or writer not only to vary his form of expression at pleasure, but also by means of the passive form, to direct the attention to the *act* and the *object* acted upon when the actor either is unknown, or, it may be, unimportant or improper to be mentioned: Thus, "America *was discovered* and *inhabited* before the days of Columbus." So also the attention may be directed by means of the active voice to the act and the actor, without regard to the object. See § 38. *Obs.* 7.

*Obs.* 2. Intransitive Verbs from their nature do not admit

a distinction of voice. They are generally in the form of the active voice, but are frequently used in the third person singular, passive form, as impersonal verbs. § 85. 3. Dependent intransitives, however, have the form of the passive.

*Obs.* 3. The passive voice in Latin is often used in a sense similar to the middle voice in Greek, to express actively what its subject does *to*, or *for itself*; as, *donec pauci, qui praelio superfuërant, paludibus abderentur*, “till the few who had survived the battle concealed themselves in the marshes.”

*Tac.* The following are examples of the same kind. *Columba—fertur in arva volans.* *Virg.—Nunc spicula vertunt infensi; facta pariter nunc pace feruntur.* *Id.—E scopulo multa vix arte revolsus—ratem Sergestus agebat.* *Id.—Quis ignorat, ii, qui mathematici vocantur, in quantâ obscuritate rerum—versentur.* *Cic.—Cum igitur vehementius inveheretur in causam principum consul Philippus.* *Id.—Cum omnes in omni genere scelërum volutentur.* *Id.*

*Circumdat nequidquam humëris, et inutile ferrum,*

*Cingitur, ac densos fertur moriturus in hostes.* *Virg.*

In all such constructions the words “*a se*” may be understood after the verb.

## § 42. OF MOODS.

Mood is the *mode* or *manner* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The moods in Latin are four; namely, the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative* and *Infinitive*.

I. The **INDICATIVE MOOD** expresses what is actual and certain, in an absolute and independent manner; as, *amo*, “I love.”

*Obs.* 1. That which is actual and certain is sometimes expressed by the subjunctive mood, but in that case the clause expressing it is dependent; as, *nescit quis sim*, “he knows not who I am.”

II. The **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD** is never used to

express an absolute and independent assertion, but it is used—

1st. To express a thing in a subordinate clause, dependent upon a preceding verb expressed or understood, and connected with it by an adverb, conjunction, or indefinite term; as,

*Nescit quis* SIM, "he knows not who I am." *Si REDEAT videbitus*, "if he return we shall see him," &c. *Accidit ut terga VERTERENT*, "it happened that they TURNED their backs."

Obs. 2. Thus used the Subjunctive is rendered by the English indicative or subjunctive; as, Indic. *lego*, "I read," Subj. *quod legam*, "because I read;" Indic. *omnes eum amaverunt*, all men loved him; Subj. *adeo benevolus erat ut omnes eum AMARENT*, "he was so kind that all men loved him;" See Eng. Gr. § 22. Obs 2. Thus used it comes under § 44.

2d. It is used *potentially* to express a thing not as actual and certain, but *contingent* and *hypothetical*, that is, not as what *does*, or *did*, or certainly *will* take place, but as what *may*, *can*, *might*, or *should* take place in certain circumstances.

In other words, it does not assert the positive action or state of its subject, but only the *liberty*, *power*, *will*, or *duty* of the subject with respect to the action expressed by the verb; as, *LEGEREM si necesse esset*, "I would read if it were necessary."

Obs. 3. In the first of these senses, this mood is strictly subjunctive and corresponds to the subjunctive mood in English, though commonly translated by the indicative. In the second sense it is evidently potential, and is translated by the English potential mood, implying, in the present, the sense of *may*, *can*, *shall*, *will*; and in the preterite tenses, the sense of *might*, *could*, *should*, *would*; as, *amem*, "I may or can love," *quisquam Junonis numen adoret*, "will any one adore," &c. *Cæsar nascetur, famam qui TERMINET astris*, "Cæsar—who shall or will bound," &c.

Obs. 4. This mood is often used in an *optative* and also in an *imperative* sense; as, *utinam sapères*, "O that thou wert wise;" *quod bene vertat*, "may it turn out well;" *sic eat*, 'thus let her go;' *facias*, "do it." See Obs. 5.

*Obs. 5.* When this mood is used in a potential, optative or imperative sense, still it ought to be regarded as strictly subjunctive, having the primary or leading clause evidently understood, on which the meaning of the mood in each case depends. Thus, "I may write," *licet mihi ut, or est ut scribam*, "I shall, or will write;" *futurum est, or erit ut scribam*, "I should write;" *oportet, æquum est ut, or est cur scriberem*, "I should have written;" *oportēbat, &c. ut scripsissem*, "O that they were wise;" *peropto utinam saperent*; "may it turn out well;" *precor quod bene vertat*, "do it;" *fac ut facias*, "let me do it;" *sine ut faciam, &c.*

Hence it follows that the particular English auxiliary by which this mood should be translated, depends, not upon the form of the Latin verb, seeing *scriberem* for example means equally, "I might, could, would, or should write," but upon the ellipsis to be supplied. What this is, must always be gathered from the connexion and sense of the passage.

*Obs. 6.* From these observations it will be manifest that the Latin subjunctive is in much more extensive use than either the subjunctive and potential mood in English, or the subjunctive and optative mood in Greek. Indeed, the proper use and management of this mood, constitutes one of the greatest difficulties in this language. For the construction of this mood, see § 139.

*Obs. 7.* When the ideas of *liberty, power, will, obligation, duty, &c.* involved in the auxiliaries *may, can, will, shall, might, could, would, should, &c.* are to be expressed in an absolute, independent, and emphatic manner, the subjunctive mood is not used, but separate verbs expressing these ideas in the indicative mood. These are such as *licet, volo, nolo, possum, debeo, &c.* thus :

"We will go,"  
 "They will not go,"  
 "I may come,"  
 "I can read,"

"Thou shouldst read,"

"It might have been done,"  
 (absolutely and sometimes  
 contingently.)

*Ire volūmus.*  
*Ire nolunt.*  
*Mihi venīre licet.*  
*Legēre possum.*  
*Legēre debes.*  
*Tibi legendum est.*  
*Te legēre oportet.*

*Fiēri potuit.*

*Obs.* 8. The future indicative is frequently used in dependent and hypothetical clauses, and consequently in a subjunctive sense; as, *si jubēbis faciam*, "if you order me, I will do it;" equivalent to *si jubeas*, &c.

III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits; as, *scribe*, "write thou;" *ito*, "let him go."

*Obs.* 9. The present subjunctive is very often used instead of the imperative, especially in forbidding, after *ne*, *nemo*, *nullus*, &c. as, *Valeas*, "farewell;" *ne noceas puēro*, "hurt not the boy;" No, 4 and 5. Besides this, the future and future perfect indicative, and the perfect subjunctive are also used imperatively. See § 44. V. 1, and VI. 3. § 45. III. 4,

IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the meaning of the verb in a general manner, without any distinction of person or number; as, *scribēre*, "to write;" *scripsisse*, "to have written;" *scribi*, "to be written."

### § 43. OF THE TENSES.

TENSES are certain forms of the verb which serve to point out the distinctions of time.

Time is naturally divided into the *Present*, *Past* and *Future*, and an action may be represented either as *incomplete* and *continuing*, or, as *completed* at the time spoken of. This gives rise to six tenses, which are expressed in Latin by distinct forms of the verb, thus:

PRESENT	{ Action continuing; as, <i>scribo</i> , "I write, I am writing."	Present.
	{ Action completed; as, <i>scripsi</i> , "I have written."	Perfect.
PAST	{ Action continuing; as, <i>scribebam</i> , "I was writing."	Imperf.
	{ Action completed; as, <i>scripseram</i> , "I had written."	Pluperf.
FUTURE	{ Action continuing; as, <i>scribam</i> , "I shall or will write."	Future.
	{ Action completed; as, <i>scripsero</i> , "I shall have written."	Fut-perf.

In order better to express the time and the state of the action by-one designation, these tenses in the above order might be properly denominated the *Present*, the *Present-perfect*

the *Past*, the *Past-perfect*; the *Future*, and the *Future-perfect*.

#### § 44. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

The Tenses of the indicative mood in Latin are six; the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*, the *Future*, and the *Future-perfect*.

I. The **PRESENT** tense expresses what is going on at the present time; as, *scribo*, "I write, or 'I am writing';" *domus edificatur*, "the house is building."

This tense is rendered with all the variety of the present tense in English; as, *I write, do write, am writing*; interrogatively; *do I write? am I writing?* Like the English present also it is used.

1. to express what is habitual or always true; as *qui cito dat, bis dat*, "he who gives promptly gives twice."

2. To express a general custom, if still existing; as, *Apud Parthos signum datur tympano*. "Among the Parthians the signal is given by the drum."

3. In historical narration it is used with great effect for the past tense, to represent the past event as it were present before us; thus, Livy, *Dicto parūēre, desiliunt ex equis, provolant in primum*, &c. "They obeyed, they dismount, they fly forward to the front," &c.

4. To denote an action which has continued for some time and which still exists; as, *Tot annos bella gero*, "For so many years I have waged, and am still waging war."

5. With certain adverbs of time, it is sometimes used, as in English, to denote what is yet future; as *Quam mox navigo Ephesum*, "as soon as I sail, or shall sail, for Ephesus."

6. In the passive voice, the present tense represents its subject as at present acted upon, or as the object of an action present and continuing, and is usually rendered into English by the verb *to be*, and the perfect participle, as *amātur*, "he is loved," and this rendering will often be correct.

*Obs.* There are many verbs however, in which this rendering of the present would be incorrect, as it does not express the present receiving of an action, but rather the present and continuing effect of an act, which act itself is now past. In all such cases it is more properly the rendering of the *perfect*, than of the *present* and is often so used. Thus *domus ædificāta est*; *opus peractum est*; *epistōla scripta est*, may be properly rendered "the house is built;" "the work is finished;" "the letter is written;" because in the English, as well as in Latin, the building of the house, the finishing of the work, and the writing of the letter, are represented as acts now past, and which are present only in their effects. The proper rendering of such verbs in the present passive, is by the verb *to be*, and the present participle in *-ing* in the passive sense; thus, *domus ædificatur*. "The house is building;" *opus peragitur*, "the work is finishing:" *epistōla scribitur*, "the letter is writing." When this mode of expression is not authorised, and when the other would be improper, it will be necessary to express the precise idea of the present by some other form of expression; thus, *dux vulneratur* strictly means, "the general is now receiving a wound," and should be so rendered. We cannot say "the general is wounded," because that implies that the act of wounding is past, as in the above examples. Neither can we say, "the general is wounding," because the participle "wounding," according to English usage has not a passive sense. The mode of forming a present passive by such expressions as, "the house is being built," "the work is being done," "the general is being wounded," is a recent and clumsy innovation. On examination it will be found as incorrect as it is barbarous and inelegant, and should therefore be avoided. See English Gram. § 31.

II. The IMPERFECT tense represents an action or event as passing and still unfinished at a certain time past, expressed or implied; as, *Domum ædificābat*, "he was (then) building a house." *Ibam forte viā sacrā*, "I was accidentally (viz. at the time spoken of,) going along the *via sacra*."

This tense corresponds to the English imperfect *definite*, Eng. Gr. § 24. II. It is, however, often used indefinitely, and hence it is rendered by all the variety that belongs to that tense in English; as, *scribēbam*, (indefinite) "I wrote, did write;" (definite) "I was writing;" (interrogatively) "did I write? was I writing?" Besides

1. It is used to denote what was usual or customary at some past time ; as, *Scribēbam*, "I was accustomed to write."

2. It is used to denote an action which had existed for some time and was still existing at a certain past time ; as, *Tot annos bella gerēbam*, "For so many years I had been, and then still was waging war." Sometimes it denotes an action desired, intended, or attempted, but not accomplished ; as, *Porsēna eum terrēbat*, "*Porsena attempted to frighten him.*"

3. It is sometimes used hypothetically instead of the imperfect subjunctive ; as, *Anceps certamen erat, nisi equites supervenissent*, "the battle would have been doubtful," &c.

4. The same observations made in I. 6. and *Obs.* in reference to the present passive, are applicable in all their extent to the imperfect ; as, *amabatur*, "he was loved ;" *domus ædificabatur*, "the house was building," not "was built ;" nor "was being built ;" *opus peragebatur*, "the work was finishing," &c.

III. The PERFECT tense is used in two different senses ; First it represents an action as just completed at the present time ; or, if in past time, still as continued to, and in some way connected with the present. Secondly, as completed in some indefinite past time.

In the first sense, it is *definite*, and corresponds to the English perfect ; as, *scripsi*, "I have written ;" *hujus ad memoriam nostram monumenta mansērunt duo*, "two monuments of him have remained to our day."

In the second sense it is *indefinite*, and corresponds to the indefinite form of the English Imperfect, (Eng. Gr. § 24. II.) as, *scripsi*, "I wrote," or "did write." In this sense it is commonly used in historical narrative, and corresponds to the Greek Aorist,—thus, *Cæsar exercitum finibus Italiæ admovit, Rubicon transiit, Romam occupavit*, "Cæsar marched his army to the confines of Italy, crossed the Rubicon, and took possession of Rome."

1. This tense, used indefinitely, is sometimes coupled with the imperfect, the former denoting a transitory, the latter a continued action, thus ; Virg. *Conticuere omnes, intentique ora*



**TENEbant.**—"All were silent, and with eager attention *kept their eyes fixed upon him.*"

2. It is sometimes used like the present, to express what is true at any time; thus, Virg. *Felix qui potuit rerum, cognoscere causas*, "Happy is that man, who is able to investigate the causes of things."

3. Sometimes it is used in the sense of the pluperfect; as *Quæ postquam evoluit—ligavit*, "After he had separated these things,—he bound them," &c. Ovid.

4. It is also used poetically for the imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive; as, *nec veni, nisi*, &c. "Nor would I have come, unless," &c.

5. In the passive form this tense is compound, consisting of the perfect participle of the verb, and the present or perfect tense of *sum* as an auxiliary; as, *amatus sum*, or *amatus fui*, "I have been loved."

**Note.**—In all compound tenses, the participle must be in the same gender and number with the nominative to the verb.

**IV. The PLUPERFECT tense** represents an action as completed at, or before some past time expressed or implied; and if before it, still continued to and in some way connected with it; as, *scripsëram*, "I had written."

This tense corresponds to the pluperfect in English and is rendered by it. It bears the same relation to the perfect that the imperfect does to the present.

1. The pluperfect is sometimes used, especially by the poets, for the perfect indicative, and also for the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Dixëram a principio, ut de republicâ sile-retur*,—Cic. "I have said from the beginning," &c. *Si mens non læva fuisset, impulerat*, &c. Virg.—"he would have impelled." The same idiom is found in English, "he had impelled," for "he would have impelled."

2. In the passive form this tense, like the perfect is compound, consisting of the perfect participle and the imperfect or pluperfect of *sum* used as an auxiliary; as, *amatus ëram*, or *amatus fuëram*, "I had been loved."

**Note.**—In these compound forms, the participle seems to be considered sometimes as little different from an adjective. In such cases,

*sum* becomes the verb and is rendered by its own tense; as, *operactum est*, "the work is finished;" *finitus jam labor erat*, "the labor was now finished."

V. The FUTURE TENSE represents an action or event indefinitely as yet to come; as, *scribam*, "I shall or will write."

1. This tense is sometimes used in the sense of the imperative; as, *liques vina*, "filtrate the wine." HOR.

2. The participle in *-rus*, with the verb *sum*, is frequently used instead of the future, especially if purpose or intention is signified; as, *scripturus sum*, "I am going to write."

VI. The FUTURE-PERFECT intimates that an action or event will be completed at or before a certain time yet future; as, *scripsēro*, "I shall have written;" viz, at or before some future time or event. In the passive it has two forms; as *scriptus ēro* or *scriptus fuēro*, the first denoting the completion of a future action indefinitely, the second as in the active voice.

1. This tense, sometimes called the Future subjunctive; properly belongs to the indicative mood, both in signification and construction. For the Future subjunctive see § 45. 1.

2. Though the proper rendering of this tense be *shall have*, yet generally the *have* or the *shall*, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit*, "he who shall cut off Antony shall put an end to the war."

3. This tense is also used imperatively; as, *meminēris tu*, "remember thou;" *ille vidērit*, "let him see to it."

#### § 45. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The tenses of the subjunctive mood are the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, and the *Pluperfect*.

1. There is no distinct form of a future in the subjunctive, all the tenses of this mood sometimes incline to a future signification. But when a future subjunctive is required the

future participle in *-rus* with the verb *sum* in the subjunctive present, is used; as, *haud dubito quin facturus sit*, "I doubt not that he will do it."

2. The tenses of the subjunctive mood in Latin, like those of the potential in English, are much less definite in respect of time, than the tenses of the indicative, being modified by the time and meaning of the verbs with which they stand connected.

3. All the tenses of the subjunctive mood are often rendered like the corresponding tenses of the indicative, § 42. II. 1st.

I. The PRESENT subjunctive is generally rendered by *may* or *can*, expressing present liberty, or ability; as, *scribam*, "I may write." But,

1. This tense is often used in the sense of the imperative mood to express a command, entreaty, or exhortation; as, *amem*, "let me love." This use is always elliptical § 42. Obs. 4. 5.

2. After *quasi*, *tanquam*, and the like, it is sometimes rendered as the imperfect indicative; as *quasi intelligant*, "as if they understood."

3. When a question is asked it is frequently rendered as the indicative; as, *Eloquar an sileam?* "Shall I speak or be silent?" Sometimes by *should*; as, *Singula quid refēram*, "Why should I relate every thing? Sometimes by *would*; as *In facinus jurāsse putes*, "You would think they had sworn to commit wickedness."

II. The IMPERFECT subjunctive is commonly rendered by the signs *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, expressing past liberty, power, will, or obligation; as, *scribērem*, "I might, could, would, or should write."

1. This tense may relate either to what is past, or present, or future; as, *si fata fuissent ut cadērem*, "if my destiny had been that I should fall;" *si possem sanior essem*, "If I could I would be wiser;" *post hæc præcipitem dārem*, "afterwards I would throw him down headlong."

2. Sometimes the imperfect is rendered as the pluperfect; as, *si quis dicēret, nunquam putārem*, "If any one had said it, I never would have thought," &c.

3. After *quo minus*, the whole may often be rendered by *from* with the present participle; as, *Si te tua infirmitas valetudinis tenuit, quo minus ad ludos venires*. If your weak state of health has prevented you *from coming* to the games. So, *Ne quis impediretur quo minus ejus rebus fruere*tur. Nep. *Deterre aliquem quo minus*, &c.

III. The PERFECT subjunctive is used to denote an act or event, spoken of as already past, or which will be past at some future time, but about which there is at present some contingency or uncertainty, in the mind of the speaker. It is commonly rendered by the signs *may have*; as, *fortasse scripsērim*, “perhaps I may have written,” implying, “if so, I have at present forgotten it.”

This general idea is expressed with much variety in English, according as the tense stands connected with other words in the sentence. This will be best explained by a few examples.

1. It is sometimes rendered like the present; as, *ut sic dixērim*, “that I may so speak.” Sometimes like the imperfect; as, *Ubi ego audivērim*, “where should I have heard it;” *fortasse erravērim* “perhaps I might be in an error.”

2. This tense sometimes inclines very much to a future signification, and is rendered by *should, would, could, can, will, shall*; as, *Citius credidērim*, “I should sooner believe;” Juv. *Libenter audiērim*, “I would gladly hear,” Cic; *Cicerōnem cuicumque eorum facile opposuērim*, “I could easily match Cicero with any of them.” *Non facile dixērim*, “I cannot well tell;” *Nec tamen exclusērim alios*, “and yet I will not exclude others.” *Si paulūlum modo quid te fugerit, ego periērim*, “If any thing however trifling escape you, I shall be undone.” Ter.

3. After *quasi, tanquam*, and the like, it is sometimes rendered by *had*; as, *quasi affuērim*, “As if I had been present;”—*perinde ac si jam vicerint*, “just as if they had already conquered.”

4. It is sometimes used in concessions; as, *parta sit pecunia*, “suppose the money were gotten.” Sometimes as

the imperative, with the idea of urgency ; as, *hæc dicta sint patribus*, "Let these things be told quickly to the fathers."

IV. The PLUPERFECT subjunctive denotes an action or event contingent at some past time, but regarded as to be perfected before another action or time subsequent to it and connected with it, as,

*Quodcumque jussisset me facturum esse dixi*, "I said (then) that I would do whatever he should order." Here his *ordering* was contingent at the time referred to, (then) but it was to take place before the doing connected with it so, *Id responderunt se facturos esse, cum ille vento Aquilone Lemnum venisset*, "They replied that they would do that when he should return to Lemnos with a north wind." In such constructions the leading verb is usually in the past tense, or in the present used for the past. It is variously rendered by *would*, *could*, *might*, *had*, *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *should have*, or *ought to have* ; as, *si jussisset, paruissem*, "If he had commanded, I would have obeyed." Hence observe.

1. That though the action or state is often future in respect to the time of the leading verb, yet it is past with regard to the action or state dependent on it.

2. After *quum* it is used in the sense of the pluperfect to express an action antecedent to another past action connected with it ; as, *Cæsar quum hæc dixisset, profectus est*, "When Cæsar had said these things he departed." Thus used, *quum* with the pluperfect, may be elegantly rendered by the compound perfect participle in English ; thus the above example may be rendered, "Cæsar *having said* these things, departed."

#### § 46. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

The Imperative mood in Latin, has only one tense, namely, the present. Still the act from the nature of this mood is necessarily future ; as, *scribe*, "write thou." The command is present, the act commanded, future.

The other tenses used imperatively, are the future and fu-

ture-perfect indicative, and the present, and perfect subjunctive ; which see.

### § 47. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The tenses of the Infinitive are three, the *Present*, the *Perfect* and the *Future*, and in the active voice, the *Future-perfect*.

In Latin, the tenses of the infinitive express its action as past, present, or future, not with regard to the present time, as in the other moods, but with regard to the time of the leading verb, on which it is dependent. i. e.

1. The **PRESENT** Infinitive represents the action or state expressed by the verb as present, and going on at the time of the leading verb, and consequently must be rendered into English in the time of the leading verb ; as, *dixit se scribēre*, "he said that he *was* writing;" *dicīt se scribēre*, "he says that he *is* writing." See No. 5.

2. The **PERFECT** Infinitive represents the action or state expressed by the verb, as past at the time of the leading verb, and must be rendered accordingly, i. e., after a past tense, by the English Pluperfect ; and after the present, by the English imperfect or perfect ; as, *dixit se scripsisse*, "he said that he *had* written;" *dicīt se scripsisse*, "he says that he *has* written."

3. The **FUTURE** Infinitive represents the action or state expressed by the verb, as future at the time of the leading verb, and must be rendered accordingly ; as, *dixit se scriptūrum esse*, "he said that he *would* write;" *dicīt se scriptūrum esse*, "he says that he *will* write."

4. The future infinitive active is compound, being made up of *esse*, or *fuisse*, and the participle in *-rus* agreeing in gender, number and case with the accusative before it, or with the nominative of the leading verb. With *esse*, it corresponds to the future indicative ; with *fuisse*, to the future-perfect ; as, *dixit se scriptūrum esse*, "he said that he would write;" *dicīt eos scriptūros esse*, "he says that they will write. *dixit eam scriptūram fuisse*, "he said that she would have written;" *dicīt se scriptūrum fuisse*, "he says that he would

have written;" *dicitur scripturus esse*, "he is said to be about to write."

*Note.* 1. *Esse* and *fuisse*, in the future infinitive, are generally understood; thus, *dixit se scripturum*; and so of others.

5. When the leading verb is in the future tense, the infinitive mood will be properly translated in its own tense, not in that of the leading verb; as, *dicet se scribere*, "he will say that he is writing;" *dicet se scripsisse*, "he will say that he has written;" *dicet se scripturum esse*, "he will say that he will write;" *se scripturum fuisse*, "that he will have written." So also in the passive voice.

6. The perfect infinitive passive is made up of *esse* or *fuisse* and the perfect participle in *-us*, agreeing in gender, number and case with the accusative before it, or with the nominative of the leading verb, when that is in the passive voice; as, *dicat litēras scriptas esse*, "he says that letters were written;" *litērae dicuntur scriptae esse*, "letters are said to have been written," &c. *Esse* and *fuisse* are sometimes understood. See *Note* 1.

7. The future infinitive passive is also a compound tense, consisting of the former supine, and *iri* the present infinitive passive of *eo*; as, *scriptum iri*, "to be about to be written."

8. The future infinitive of deponent verbs, § 72 is made with *esse* or *fuisse*, and the participle in *-rus*, as in the active voice No. 4, and not like the future infinitive passive.

9. When the verb in the active voice has no supine, and consequently no participle in *-rus*, there can of course be no future infinitive. In this case the want of it is supplied by the future infinitive of *sum*, viz. *futurum esse*, or *fore* followed by *ut*, and the subjunctive in the present or imperfect, as the leading verb may require. Thus, *dixit fore ut lūgeret* "he said that he would mourn;" *dicat fore ut lugeat*, "he says that he will mourn."

*Note.* 2. This form of expression is often used both in the active and passive, even when the verb has the regular form of the future infinitive. § 145. *Obs.* 6.

10. *Fore* the infinitive of *sum* is used with all participles in *-us*; as, *Commissum cum equitatu praelio fore videbat*, *Cæs.* *Deinde addis, te fore venturum*, *Cic.* *Mittendos fore legatos.* *Liv.*

11. The infinitive mood with a subject, i. e. with an accu

saive before it is usually rendered as the indicative, the participle *that*, being commonly placed before it. The following examples will illustrate the method of translating the different tenses, of the infinitive when preceded by the leading verb in present, past, and future time.

### INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

- 1 *Dicit me scribère*, He says that I write, or am writing
- 2 *Dixit me scribère*, He said that I wrote, or was writing.
- 3 *Dicet me scribère*, He will say that I am writing.
- 4 *Dicit me scripsisse*, He says that I wrote, or did write.
- 5 *Dixit me scripsisse*, He said that I had written.
- 6 *Dicet me scripsisse*, He will say that I have written, or did write.
- 7 *Dicit me scripturum esse*, He says that I will write.
- 8 *Dixit me scripturum esse*, He said that I would write.
- 9 *Dicet me scripturum esse*, He will say that I will write.
- 10 *Dicit me scripturum fuisse*, He says that I would have written.
- 11 *Dixit me scripturum fuisse*, He said that I would have written.
- 12 *Dicet me scripturum fuisse*, He will say that I would have written

### INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

- 13 *Dicit literas scribi*, He says that letters are written, or writing.
- 14 *Dixit literas scribi*, He said that letters were written, or writing.
- 15 *Dicet literas scribi*, He will say that letters are written, or writing
- 16 *Dicit literas scriptas esse*, He says that letters are, or were written
- 17 *Dixit literas scriptas esse*, He said that letters had been written.
- 18 *Dicet literas scriptas esse*, He will say that letters are, or were written.
- 19 *Dicit literas scriptas fuisse*, He says that letters have been written
- 20 *Dixit literas scriptas fuisse*, He said that letters had been written.
- 21 *Dicet literas scriptas fuisse*, He will say that letters have been written
- 22 *Dicit literas scriptum iri*, He says that letters will be written.
- 23 *Dixit literas scriptum iri*, He said that letters would be written.
- 24 *Dicet literas scriptum iri*, He will say that letters will be written

*Note 3.*—When the preceding verb is of the imperfect, or pluperfect tense, the English of the infinitive is the same as when it is of the perfect, i. e. is the same as the infinitive after *dixit*, in the above table.

*Note 4.*—As the perfect definite, § 14. III, connects the action com



pleted with the present time, the infinitive after it, in this sense, will generally be translated as it is after the present; as, *DIXIT me scribere,—scripsisse,—scripturum esse*, he has said that I am writing,—was writing,—will write, i. e. as it is in Examples No. 1, 4, and 7. With *dixit* used indefinitely, the infinitive would be rendered as in Examples No. 2, 5, and 8.

## § 48. OF NUMBER AND PERSON.

1. Every tense of the verb has two NUMBERS, the singular and plural, corresponding to the singular and plural of Nouns and Pronouns.

2. In each number, the verb has three PERSONS, called *first*, *second* and *third*. The first asserts of the person speaking; the second of the person spoken to; and the third of the person or thing spoken of. In the *Imperative* there are only two persons, the second and third.

3. The subject or nominative of the verb in the first person singular, is always *ego*, in the plural, *nos*; in the second person singular, *tu*; in the plural, *vos*. These are seldom expressed, being sufficiently indicated by the termination of the verb; as, *scribo*, "I write;" *scribimus*, "we write;" *scribis*, "thou writest," *scribitis* "you write."

The subject of the verb in the third person, is any person or thing spoken of, whether it be expressed by a noun, pronoun, infinitive, gerund, or clause of a sentence; as, *vir scribit*, "the man writes;" *illi legunt*, "they read;" *ludere jucundum est*, "to play is pleasant;" *incertum est, quam longa vita futura sit*, "how long our life will be is uncertain."

4. Two or more nouns or pronouns together may be the subject of one verb. If these happen to be of different persons, the verb takes the first person, rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *Ego, et tu, et ille scribimus*, "I and thou and he write."

5. Pronouns, participles or adjectives having nouns understood to them, are of the third person. *Qui* takes the person of the antecedent. *Ipse* may be joined to any person, according to the sense.

6. To verbs also belong *Participles*, *Gerunds* and *Supines*.

## §. 49. PARTICIPLES.

1. PARTICIPLES are parts of the verb which contain no affirmation, but express the meaning of the verb considered as a general quality or condition of an object; as, *amans*, "loving;" *doctus*, "learned."

2. Participles belong partly to the verb, and partly to the adjective. From the former they have *signification*, *voice* and *tense*; from the latter, *declension*; those in *-ns* are of the third declension, and declined like *prudens*, § 21. 2; all others are of the first and second, and declined like *bonus*, § 20. 1. In construction they have the government of the verb, and the concord or agreement of the adjective, § 98.

3. When the idea of time is separated from the participle, it becomes a participial or verbal adjective, and is capable of comparison; as, *doctus*, *doctior*, *doctissimus*, "learned, more learned, most learned."

4. To the same class also belong participles whose meaning is reversed or modified by composition with words or participles never combined with other parts of the same verb; as, *innocens*, *indoctus*, *impransus*, *nefandus*, &c.

5. The time of the participle like that of the infinitive is estimated from the time of the leading verb; i. e. the accompanying action or state expressed by the participle is present, past, or future, at the time indicated by the leading verb, with which it is connected; thus, *vīdi eum venientem*, "I saw him coming." *Numa, Curibus nātus, rex creātus est*, "Numa born at Cures was made king." *Elephantes amnem transitūri minūmos præmittunt*, "Elephants about to cross a river send the smallest first."

*Note 1.*—The perfect participle, both of deponent and common verbs often expresses an action, nearly or entirely contemporaneous with that of the leading verb. In such cases it is better rendered into English by the present participle in *-ing* than by its ordinary rendering; as, *Hoc facinus rex MIRATUS juvēnem dimisit*, "The king *admir- ing* this act dismissed the youth," Liv. *ARBISTRATUS id bellum celeriter confici posse, eō exercitum adduxit*. Cæs. *Hac arte Pollux—ENISUS, arces attigit igneas*. Hor. *Columba fixamque refert DELAPSA sagittam*. Virg. *Puēri bis sēni quemque SECUTI, aq̄mine partito, fulgent*. So also the perfect participle of the active verb, see No. 8, *Note 3*.

6. The future passive participle in *-dus* sometimes expres-

ses bare futurity as, *his* (scil. *ventis*) *quoque habendum aëra permisit*, "to these also he gave the region of the air to be possessed." But in conjunction with the verb *sum* and frequently also in other constructions, it denotes *necessity*, *propriety*, or *obligation*, and hence by inference, futurity; as, *Delenda est Carthago*, "Carthage must be destroyed." *Facta narrābas dissimulanda tibi*, "You were relating facts which you should have concealed."

7. The participle in-*dus* of transitive verbs is often used in the oblique cases in the sense of the gerund. Thus used it is called a *Gerundive* participle, and agrees with its substantive in gender and number; and both take the case which the gerund would have in the same place, thus; *tempus petendæ pācis*, by the gerund, is *petendi pācem*; "time of seeking peace," *rērum repetundārum causā* "for the sake of demanding redress;" by the gerund, *repetundi res*.

*Note 2.*—Crombie, as well as Perizonius, to whom he refers, thinks that the participle in-*dus*, is strictly and properly a present passive participle; that the ideas of futurity as well as of necessity or obligation supposed to be expressed by it, are not inherent in the word, but have come by usage to be assigned to it, in certain connexions. It is certain the arguments in support of this opinion, are not without great weight, yet as no inconvenience can arise from regarding it as future, and as *necessity*, *obligation*, *propriety*, and consequently *futurity* are commonly expressed by it, it has been thought proper to retain the usual designation. Still if the opinion just stated is correct, it affords an easy and natural explanation of what is called the *gerundive* use of this participle; it is only expressing by a passive form in Latin, an idea which we now commonly express in English, by the active form. Thus,

Active form; *tempus petendi pācem*, "time of seeking peace."

Passive form; *tempus petendæ pācis*, "time of peace being sought."

These different forms express the same idea both in Latin and English, but as the passive form is not usual in English, the active is used as the rendering of both forms in Latin.

8. The Latin language has no perfect participle in the active voice, nor present participle in the passive, unless the participle in-*dus* be so considered. The want of the former is made up in two ways. *First*, by the perfect participle passive in the case absolute as, *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*, "Cæsar, (these things being said, i. e.) having said these things departed." And *Secondly*, by *quum* with the pluper

fect subjunctive; as, *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset, profectus est*, "Cæsar (when he had said, i. e.) having said these things, departed."

*Note 3*—The want of the present participle passive, is made up either by the perfect participle, or by the future participle in *-dus*, both of which appear to be sometimes used in a present sense; as, *Notus evolat piceâ tectus caligine*, "Notus flies forth (being) covered with pitchy darkness, Ovid. *VOLVENDA dies en attulit ultro*, "Lo! revolving time (lit. time being rolled on) hath of itself brought about." Virg. Or by the gerundive form of expression as in No. 7, together with *Note 2*. See also, No. 5, *Note 1*.

9. Transitive (or Active) verbs have four participles of which the present in *-ns*, and the future in *-rus*, belong to the active voice; the perfect in *-tus*, *-sus*, or *-xus*, and the future in *-dus*, to the passive.

10. Intransitive (or Neuter) verbs have two participles, namely, the present in *-ns*, and the future in *-rus*; frequently also the future passive in *-dus*, and also the perfect passive.

11. Neuter passive verbs have commonly three participles, namely, the present, perfect, and future in *-rus*, § 78.

12. Deponent verbs of an active signification have generally four participles; those of a neuter signification commonly want the future in *-dus*, except that the neuter in *-dum* is sometimes used impersonally.

13. Common verbs have generally four participles, of which the perfect only is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *adeptus victoriam*, "having obtained the victory;" *victoriâ adeptâ*, "the victory being obtained;" the rest are active, § 72. *Obs. 2*.

14. Some Intransitive verbs, though they have no passive, yet have participles of the perfect passive form, but still with an intransitive signification; such are *cenâtus*, "having supped;" *pransus*, "having dined;" *jurâtus*, "having sworn."

## § 50. GERUNDS AND SUPINES

The GERUND is a kind of verbal noun used only in the singular number. It represents the action or state expressed by the verb as a thing now going on, and at the same

time, if in the nominative, or in the accusative before the infinitive as the subject of discourse; and if in the oblique cases, as the object of some action or relation. They are construed in all respects as nouns, and also govern the case of their verbs, § 147.

In meaning and use, the gerund resembles the English present participle, used as a noun. See Eng. Gr. § 30. 7, and the Greek infinitive with the article prefixed. See Gr. Gr. § 173.

SUPINES are defective verbal nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative singular.

The supine in *-um* has an active signification and governs the case of the verb, § 116. *Exp.*

The supine in *-u* has usually a passive signification, and governs no case.

## § 51. CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

1. REGULAR VERBS are those in which the secondary parts are formed from the primary, according to certain rules, § 52.

2. The CONJUGATION of a verb is the regular combination and arrangement of its several *voices, moods, tenses, numbers* and *persons*.

3. Of regular verbs in Latin, there are four conjugations, called the *First, Second, Third* and *Fourth*. These are distinguished from each other by the vowel before *-re*, in the present infinitive active; thus,

The <i>First</i> conjugation	has	<i>a</i> long	before <i>-re</i> of the infinitive.
The <i>Second</i>	has	<i>e</i> long	before <i>-re</i> of the infinitive.
The <i>Third</i>	has	<i>e</i> short	before <i>-re</i> of the infinitive.
The <i>Fourth</i>	has	<i>i</i> long	before <i>-re</i> of the infinitive.

*Exc.* *Dāre* and its compounds of the first conjugation have *ā* short.

4. The primary tenses or parts of the verb from which all the other parts are formed, are four, namely, *-o* of the present indicative, *-re* of the present infinitive, *-i* of the perfect indicative, and *-um* of the supine. The giving of these

parts in the order just mentioned is called *conjugating the verb*; thus,

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>1st Supine.</i>
<i>1st Conj.</i>	Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.
<i>2d</i>	Monēo,	monēre,	monūi,	monitum.
<i>3d</i>	Rēgo,	regere,	rexī,	rectum.
<i>4th</i>	Audio,	audire,	audīvi,	audītum.

The manner of conjugating each verb being accurately ascertained from the Dictionary, the other tenses may be formed with certainty by the rules laid down in the next section.\*

\* Though general rules may be, and have been laid down to form the primary tenses, from the general root or stem of the verb, yet there is such a multitude of exceptions in the third conjugation, (and some in the others also,) which it is impossible to bring under any rule, that it will be found indispensable, after all, to learn the conjugation of each verb from the dictionary or from the table of irregular conjugations. § 81. For this reason they are here omitted in the text as useless for any practical purpose. The principle methods proposed are in substance the two following:

*First.* The general root or stem that runs through the whole verb, consists of the letters preceding the infinitive terminations, *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-īre*, *-ire*.

To form the primary tenses there is added to the general root as follows:

	<i>Pr. Ind.</i>	<i>Pr. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>1st. Supine.</i>
In the 1st. Conj.	-o,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum.
" 2d. "	-eo,	-ēre,	-ūi,	-ītum.
" 3d. "	-o, & -io,	-ēre,	-i & -si,	-tum, & -sum.
" 4th. "	-io,	-īre,	-īvi,	-ītum.

In the Perfect of the third Conjugation observe,

1. If the root of the verb ends with a vowel, the termination added is *-i*; as *acūo*, root *acū*, perfect *acūi*.

2. If the root of the verb ends with a consonant, the usual termination is *-si*, which in uniting with the root causes, the following changes, viz.

1st. If the letter preceding *-si* be *c*, *g*, *h*, or *qu*, it unites with the *s* and forms *x*; as, *duco* (*duc-si*) *duxī*; *finco*, (*fin-si*) *finxī*; *traho*, (*trah-si*) *traxī*; *coquo*, (*coqu-si*) *coxi*.

2d. The letter *b* before *-si* is changed into *p*; as, *scribo*, *scripsi*.

3d. When *d* precedes *-si*, either the *d* or the *s* is rejected; as, *defendo*, *defendi*; *claudio*, *clausi*.

4th. The *s* is dropped in many verbs which cannot be brought under any definite rule; as, *lego*, *legi*; *emo*, *emi*.

In the Supine of the third Conjugation observe,

1. When the root of the verb ends in a vowel the supine adds *-tum* and lengthens the vowel preceding it; as. *acuo*, *acūtum*.

## § 52. FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

### I. Indicative Mood.

1. The *Present* is a primary tense.
2. The *Imperfect* is formed from the present by changing,
 

in the 1st Conj.	-o into -ābam; as, <i>am-o</i> , <i>am-ābam</i> ,
in the 2d	-eo into -ēbam; as, <i>mon-eo</i> , <i>mon-ēbam</i> ,
in the 3d and 4th	-o into -ēbam; as $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{reg-o}, \textit{reg-ēbam}, \\ \textit{audi-o}, \textit{audi-ēbam}. \end{array} \right.$

2. When the root ends with a consonant, the supine adds -*tum* sometimes -*sum*. In uniting with the root, the following changes for the sake of euphony take place; viz.

1st. The letter *b*, before -*tum* is changed into *p*; as *scribo*, *scriptum*.

2d. The letters *g*, *h*, and *qu*, before -*tum* are changed into *c*; as, *rego. rectum*; *traho, tractum*; *coquo, coctum*.

3d. The letter *g* before -*sum* when a vowel precedes, unites with the *s* and forms *x*; as, *figo*, (*fig-sum*) *fixum*; when *r* precedes, the *g* is rejected; as, *tergo, tersum*.

4th. The letter *d* before -*sum* is rejected as *defendo, defensum*.

*Secondly.* The general root being found as before; then, to form the *second* root in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, (i. e. the root of the perfect tense,) add -*av* for the first, -*u* for the second, and -*iv* for the fourth; as, *am*, *amav*; *mon*, *monu*; *aud*, *audiv*.

To form the *third* root (i. e. the root of the supine,) in the same conjugations, add to the general root the syllables -*ātu*, -*itū*, and -*itū*; as, *am*, *amātu*; *mon* *monitū*; *aud*, *auditū*.

The three roots being thus found, the primary tenses are formed as follows; viz:

1. From the first root the present indicative is formed,

in the 1st conjugation	by adding -o,	as, <i>am</i> , <i>am-o</i> .
in the 2d	by adding -eo,	as, <i>mon</i> , <i>mon-eo</i> .
in the 3d	by adding -o, or -io,	as, <i>reg</i> , <i>reg-o</i> .
in the 4th	by adding -io,	as, <i>aud</i> , <i>aud-io</i> .

2. From the same root the present infinitive is formed,

in the 1st conjugation	by adding -āre,	as, <i>am</i> , <i>am-āre</i> .
in the 2d	by adding -ēre,	as, <i>mon</i> , <i>mon-ēre</i> .
in the 3d	by adding -ere,	as, <i>reg</i> , <i>reg-ere</i> .
in the 4th	by adding -ire,	as, <i>aud</i> , <i>aud-ire</i> .

3. From the second root in all conjugations, the perfect is formed by adding *i*; as, *amāv-i*, *monū-i*, *audiv-i*.

4. From the third root in all conjugations, the first supine is formed by adding *m*; as, *amātu-m*, *monitū-m*, &c.

The third conjugation is so irregular in the formation of its roots that no rules are attempted.

The first of these methods is substantially that offered in the Grammar of Zumpt. The second is the plan of Andrews and Stoddart which they carry out by applying it to all the tenses as well as to the primary.

3. The *Perfect* is a primary tense.

4. The *Pluperfect* in all conjugations is formed from the perfect, by changing *-i* into *-eram*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-eram*: *monū-i*, *monu-eram*, &c.

5. The *Future* is formed from the present by changing—  
in the 1st conjugation *-o* into *-ābo*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābo*.  
in the 2d, *-eo* into *-ēbo*; as, *mon-eo*, *mon-ēbo*.  
in the 3d and 4th, *-o* into *-am*; as,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{reg-o}, \textit{reg-am.} \\ \textit{audi-o}, \textit{audi-am.} \end{array} \right.$

6. The *Future-perfect* in all conjugations is formed from the perfect, by changing *-i* into *-ero*; as, *amav-i*, *amav-ero*; *monu-i*, *monu-ero*, &c.

## II. The Subjunctive Mood.

7. The *Present Subjunctive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing,—in the first conjugation, *-o* into *-em*; as, *am-o*, *am-em*; in the second, third and fourth, by changing *-o* into *-am*; as, *monē-o*, *monē-am*; *reg-o*, *reg-am*; *audī-o*, *audī-am*.

8. The *Imperfect Subjunctive* in all conjugations is formed from the present infinitive by adding *m*; as, *amāre*, *amārem*; *monēre*, *monērem*, *regēre*, *regērem*, &c.

9. The *Perfect Subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *-i* into *-erim*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-erim*; *monu-i*, *monu-erim*, &c.

10. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *-i* into *-issem*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-issem*, *monu-i*, *monu-issem*, &c.

## III. The Imperative Mood.

11. The *Present Imperative* is formed from the present infinitive by taking away *-re*; as, *amāre*, *amā*; *monēre*, *monē*; *regēre*, *regē*; *audīre*, *audī*.

## IV. The Infinitive Mood.

12. The *Present Infinitive* is a primary tense.

13. The *Perfect Infinitive*, is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *-i* into *-isse*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-isse*; *monu-i*, *monu-isse*, &c.



14. The *Future Infinitive* is a compound tense, made up of *esse* or *fuisse*, and the future participle in *-rus*; as, *esse* or *fuisse amātūrus*, *-a*, *-um*; *esse* or *fuisse monītūrus*, *-a*, *-um*, &c.

### V. Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

15. The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative by changing,

-o in the 1st Conjug.	into -ans; as,	am-o, am-ans.
-eo in the 2d	into -ens; as,	mon-eo, mon-ens.
-o in the 3d and 4th	into -ens; as,	{ reg-o, reg-ens, audi-o, audi-ens.

16. The *Future Participle* is formed from the former supine by changing *-um* into *-ūrus*; as, *amāt-um*, *amāt-ūrus*; *monīt-um*, *monīt-ūrus*, &c.

17 The *Gerund* is formed from the present indicative by changing,

-o in the 1st Conj.	into -andum; as,	am-o, am-andum.
-eo in the 2d	into -endum; as,	mon-eo, mon-endum.
-o in the 3d and 4th	into -endum; as,	{ reg-o, reg-endum, audi-o, audi-endum.

18. The *Former Supine* is a primary part of the verb.

19. The *Latter Supine* is formed from the former by dropping *m*; as, *amātum*, *amātu*; *monītum*, *monītu*, &c.

### § 53. FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. In the *Indicative* mood, the *Present* tense is formed from the present active by adding *r*; as, *amo*, *amor*; *moneo*, *moneor*, &c. In the imperfect and future from the same tenses in the active voice, by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amābam*, *amābar*;—or adding *r* to *bo*; as, *monēbo*, *monēbor*, &c.

2. In the *Subjunctive* mood, the *Present* and *Imperfect* are formed from the same tenses in the active, by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amem*, *amer*; *moneam*, *monear*, &c.

3. The *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future-perfect Indicative*, and the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Subjunctive* are compound

tenses, made up of the perfect participle passive, and the verb *sum*, as an auxiliary, as exhibited in the paradigm of these tenses.

4. The *Imperative* in all verbs is formed by adding *-re* to the imperative active; as, *amā*, *amāre*; *monē*, *monēre*, &c. Hence, the imperative passive is like the present infinitive active.

5. The *Present Infinitive* is formed from the present infinitive active by changing *-re* in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *-ri*; as, *amā-re*, *amā-ri*; *monē-re*, *monē-ri*; *audī-re*, *audī-ri*; and by changing *-ēre* in the third into *-i*; as, *reg-ēre*, *reg-i*. But *arcesso* has *arcessīri*.

The *Perfect infinitive* is a compound tense, made up of the perfect participle, and *esse* or *fuisse* prefixed; as, *esse* or *fuisse amātus*, *-a*, *-um*, &c.

The *Future Infinitive* is also a compound tense, made up of the former supine and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*; as, *amātum iri*; *monitum iri*, &c.

6. The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine by changing *-um* into *-us*; as, *amāt-um*, *amāt-us*; *monit-um*, *monit-us*, &c.

The *Future Participle* is formed as the active gerund by putting *-dus* instead of *-dum*; as, Gerund, *amandum*, Part. *amandus*; Gerund, *monendum*, Part. *monendus*, &c.

---

## § 54. THE IRREGULAR VERB SUM.\*

This verb is sometimes called a *substantive* verb, as it denotes being, or simple existence; as, *sum*, "I am," "I exist." Sometimes it is called *auxiliary*, because it is used as an auxiliary verb in the conjugation of the passive voice. It is conjugated thus,

---

\* This verb being irregular, properly belongs to § 83. but is inserted here because, as an auxiliary, it is much used in the inflection of regular verbs.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>
Sum,	esse,	fui.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>Ego</i> Sum,*	<i>I am,</i>
	2. <i>Tu</i> Es,	<i>Thou† art, or you are,</i>
	3. <i>Ille</i> Est,	<i>He is;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>Nos</i> Sūmus,	<i>We are,</i>
	2. <i>Vos</i> Estis,	<i>Ye, or you are,</i>
	3. <i>Illi</i> Sunt,	<i>They are.</i>

IMPERFECT, *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>Eram</i> ,	<i>I was,</i>
	2. <i>Eras</i> ,	<i>Thou wast, or you were,</i>
	3. <i>Erat</i> ,	<i>He was;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>Erāmus</i> ,	<i>We were,</i>
	2. <i>Erātis</i> ,	<i>Ye, or you were,</i>
	3. <i>Erant</i> ,	<i>They were.</i>

PERFECT Definite, *have been;* Indefinite, *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>Fui</i> ,	<i>I have been,</i>
	2. <i>Fuisti</i> ,	<i>Thou hast been,</i>
	3. <i>Fuit</i> ,	<i>He has been;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>Fuīmus</i> ,	<i>We have been,</i>
	2. <i>Fuistis</i> ,	<i>Ye have been,</i>
	3. <i>Fuērunt, or fuēre</i> ,	<i>They have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>Fuēram</i> ,	<i>I had been,</i>
	2. <i>Fuēras</i> ,	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>
	3. <i>Fuērat</i> ,	<i>He had been;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>Fuērāmus</i> ,	<i>We had been,</i>
	2. <i>Fuērātis</i> ,	<i>Ye had been,</i>
	3. <i>Fuērant</i> ,	<i>They had been.</i>

\* In the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative mood, every part of the verb must have its Nominative expressed or understood. See § 48. 3. The nominatives, *Ego*, *tu*, *ille*, of the singular, and *Nos*, *vos*, *illi*, of the plural, are here prefixed in the present tense, to show their place and their use; but in the following tenses, and in the following conjugations they are omitted. Still they are to be regarded as understood, and may be supplied at pleasure.

† See § 28. *Note*. In the plural, "you" is much more common than "ye" which is now seldom used.

FUTURE, *shall, or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Ero,	<i>I shall, or will be,</i>
	2. Eris,	<i>Thou shalt, or wilt be,</i>
	3. Erit,	<i>He shall, or will be ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Erīmus,	<i>We shall, or will be,</i>
	2. Erītis,	<i>Ye shall, or will be,</i>
	3. Erunt,	<i>They shall, or will be.</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuēro,	<i>I shall, or will have been,</i>
	2. Fuēris,	<i>Thou shalt, or wilt have been,</i>
	3. Fuērit,	<i>He shall, or will have been ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuērīmus,	<i>We shall, or will have been,</i>
	2. Fuērītis,	<i>Ye shall, or will have been,</i>
	3. Fuērint,	<i>They shall, or will have been.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Sim,	<i>I may or can be,</i>
	2. Sis,	<i>Thou mayst, or canst be,</i>
	3. Sit,	<i>He may or can be ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Sīmus,	<i>We may or can be,</i>
	2. Sītis,	<i>Ye may or can be,</i>
	3. Sint,	<i>They may or can be.</i>

IMPERFECT *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Essem,	<i>I might, could, &amp;c. be,</i>
	2. Esses,	<i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. be,</i>
	3. Esset,	<i>He might, &amp;c. be ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Essēmus,	<i>We might, &amp;c. be,</i>
	2. Essētis,	<i>Ye might, &amp;c. be,</i>
	3. Essent,	<i>They might, &amp;c. be.</i>

PERFECT, *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuērim,	<i>I may have been,</i>
	2. Fuēris,	<i>Thou mayst have been,</i>
	3. Fuērit,	<i>He may have been ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuērīmus,	<i>We may have been,</i>
	2. Fuērītis,	<i>Ye may have been,</i>
	3. Fuērint,	<i>They may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would or should have.*

Sing.	1. Fuissem,	<i>I might, &amp;c. have been,</i>
	2. Fuisses,	<i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. have been,</i>
	3. Fuisset,	<i>He might, &amp;c. have been;</i>
Plur.	1. Fuissēmus,	<i>We might, &amp;c. have been,</i>
	2. Fuissētis,	<i>Ye might, &amp;c. have been,</i>
	3. Fuissent,	<i>They might, &amp;c. have been.</i>

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	2. Es, or Esto,	<i>Be thou,</i>
	3. Esto,	<i>Let him be;</i>
Plur.	2. Este, or estote,	<i>Be ye;</i>
	3. Suntō,	<i>Let them be.</i>

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Esse,	<i>To be, § 47. 11.</i>
PERF.	Fuisse,	<i>To have been.</i>
FUT.	Esse futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to be.</i>
F.PERF.	Fuisse futūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to be.</i>

### PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. Futūrus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

### SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES

	Indicative.	Subjunc.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	Part.
Pres.	sum.	sim.	es or esto.	esse.	
Imp.	ēram.	essem.			
Perf.	fui.	fuērim.		fuisse.	
Plup.	fuēram.	fuissem.			
Fut.	ēro.			esse futūrus.	futūrus.
F-perf.	fuēro.			fuisse futūrus.	

Obs. 1. The compounds of *sum*; namely, *adsum, absum, desum, insum, intersum, obsum, præsum, subsum, super-sum*, are conjugated like the simple verb; but *insum*, and *subsum* want the perfect, and the tenses formed from it. *Prosum*, and *possum*, from *potis* and *sum* are very irregular, § 83. 1. 2.

Obs. 2. Instead of *Essem, fōrem* is sometimes used, and also *fōre*, instead of *fuisse*.

Obs. 3. The participle *ens* is not in use, but appears in two compounds, *absens*, and *præsens*.

*Note.*—The great irregularity of this verb arises from the different parts being formed from different themes; viz. the parts beginning with *e* from *eo*, the root of the Greek *εἶμι*, and those beginning with *f* from *fuō* the same as the Greek *φύω*.

## § 55. EXERCISES ON SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

1. Give the designation of the verb,—conjugate it,—give the tense, mood, person, number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order; thus,—*Sum*, Verb, intrans., irregular; found in the present, indicative, first person, singular, “I am.”—*Fuit*, V. neut. irr. found in the perf. ind. 3d pers. sing.; definite, “he has been,” indefinite “he was.”\*

*Est*, *erat*, *erit*, *fuëram*, *fuërim*, *fuëro*, *sit*, *esset*, *fuisti*, *fuimus*, *fuërun*t, *fuëre*, *ërun*t, *sint*, *sumus*, *ëran*t, *essent*, *fuis*-*sent*, *esse*, *esto*, *sunto*, *fuisse*, *es*, *ëras*, *fuëras*, *fuistis*, *futurus esse*, *futurus*, *sint*, &c. *ad libitum*.

2. Translate the following English words into Latin, naming the part of the verb used; thus,—“I will be,” *ëro*, in the future ind. 1st pers. sing. The Latin word for *I*, *thou*, *he*, *we*, *you*, *they*, to be omitted or inserted at pleasure.†

We are, they were, you have been, thou hast been, they will be, he may be, I shall have been, to be, be thou, let them be, about to be, to be about to be, we should be, we should have been, I may have been, they will have been, they may have been, they have been, you were, thou wast, he is, they are, &c. *ad libitum*.

\* In these and all following exercises on the verb, it will be of great importance, in order to form habits of accuracy, and as a preparation for future exercises in translating and parsing, to require the pupil in this manner to state every thing belonging to a verb in the order here indicated, or in any other the teacher may direct, always, however, observing the same. And also for the saving of time and unnecessary labor, to state them in the fewest words possible, and without waiting to have every word drawn from him by questions.

† N. B. It will be a profitable exercise to require each pupil to write out the Latin for these and other English words that may be dictated,—carefully to mark the quantity of long and short vowels and to pronounce them correctly after they are written.

## § 56. FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Ind. Pres. Inf. Perf. Ind. Supine.*

*Amo, amāre, amāvi, amātum, To love.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRESENT TENSE, love, do love, am loving, § 44. I.**

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-o,	<i>I love, do love, am loving,</i>
	2. Am-as,	<i>Thou lovest, dost love, art loving,</i>
	3. Am-at,	<i>He loves, does love, is loving;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-āmus,	<i>We love, do love, are loving,</i>
	2. Am-ātis,	<i>Ye or you love, do love, are loving</i>
	3. Am-ant,	<i>They love, do love, are loving.</i>

**IMPERFECT loved, did love, was loving, § 44. II.**

<i>S.</i>	1. Am-ābam,	<i>I loved, did love, was loving,</i>
	2. Am-ābas,	<i>Thou lovedst, didst love, wast loving</i>
	3. Am-ābat,	<i>He loved, did love, was loving;</i>
<i>P</i>	1. Am-ābāmus,	<i>We loved, did love, were loving,</i>
	2. Am-ābātis,	<i>Ye loved, did love, were loving,</i>
	3. Am-ābant	<i>They loved, did love, were loving.</i>

**PERFECT Def. have loved; Indef. loved, did love, § 44. III.**

<i>S.</i>	1. Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved, loved, did love,</i>
	2. Am-āvisti,	<i>Thou hast loved, lovedst, didst love,</i>
	3. Am-āvit,	<i>He has loved, loved, did love;</i>
<i>P.</i>	1. Am-āvimus,	<i>We have loved, loved, did love,</i>
	2. Am-āvistis,	<i>Ye have loved, loved, did love,</i>
	3. Am-āvērunt, or -āvère,	<i>They have loved, loved, did love.</i>

**PLUPERFECT, had loved. § 44. IV.**

<i>S.</i>	1. Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved,</i>
	2. Am-āvēras,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
	3. Am-āvērat,	<i>He had loved;</i>
<i>P.</i>	1. Am-āvērāmus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
	2. Am-āvērātis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
	3. Am-āvērant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

**FUTURE, shall, or will love, § 44. V.**

- |                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ābo,    | <i>I shall, or will love,</i>    |
| 2. Am-ābis,      | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt love.</i> |
| 3. Am-ābit,      | <i>He shall, or will love;</i>   |
| P. 1. Am-ābimus, | <i>We shall, or will love,</i>   |
| 2. Am-ābitis,    | <i>Ye shall, or will love,</i>   |
| 3. Am-ābunt,     | <i>They shall or will love.</i>  |

**FUTURE-PERFECT, shall, or will have loved, § 44. VI.**

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| S. 1. Am-āvēro,    | <i>I shall, or will have loved,</i>    |
| 2. Am-āvēris,      | <i>Thou shalt, or will have loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-āvērit,      | <i>He shall, or will have loved;</i>   |
| P. 1. Am-āverimus, | <i>We shall, or will have loved,</i>   |
| 2. Am-āveritis,    | <i>Ye shall, or will have loved,</i>   |
| 3. Am-āverint,     | <i>They shall, or will have loved.</i> |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****PRESENT TENSE, may, or can love, § 45. I.**

- |                |                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-em,   | <i>I may, or can love,</i>         |
| 2. Am-es,      | <i>Thou mayest, or canst love,</i> |
| 3. Am-et,      | <i>He may, or can love;</i>        |
| P. 1. Am-ēmus, | <i>We may, or can love,</i>        |
| 2. Am-ētis,    | <i>Ye may, or can love,</i>        |
| 3. Am-ent,     | <i>They may, or can love.</i>      |

**IMPERFECT, might, could, would, or should love, § 45. II.**

- |                  |                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ārem,   | <i>I might, &amp;c. love,</i>      |
| 2. Am-āres,      | <i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. love,</i> |
| 3. Am-āret,      | <i>He might, &amp;c. love;</i>     |
| P. 1. Am-ārēmus, | <i>We might, &amp;c. love,</i>     |
| 2. Am-ārētis,    | <i>Ye might, &amp;c. love,</i>     |
| 3. Am-ārent,     | <i>They might, &amp;c. love.</i>   |

**PERFECT, may have loved, § 45. III.**

- |                    |                                |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-āvērim,   | <i>I may have loved,</i>       |
| 2. Am-āvēris,      | <i>Thou mayest have loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-āvērit,      | <i>He may have loved;</i>      |
| P. 1. Am-āverimus, | <i>We may have loved,</i>      |
| 2. Am-āveritis,    | <i>Ye may have loved,</i>      |
| 3. Am-āverint,     | <i>They may have loved.</i>    |



PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have*, § 45. IV.

S. 1.	Am-avissem,	<i>I might, &amp;c. have loved,</i>
2.	Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. have loved,</i>
3.	Am-avisset,	<i>He might, &amp;c. have loved;</i>
P. 1.	Am-avissēmus,	<i>We might, &amp;c. have loved,</i>
2.	Am-avissētis,	<i>Ye might, &amp;c. have loved,</i>
3.	Am-avissent,	<i>They might, &amp;c. have loved.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD, § 42.

Sing. 2.	Am-ā, or am-āto,	<i>Love thou,</i>
3.	Am-āto,	<i>Let him love;</i>
Plur. 2.	Am-āte, or am-ātote,	<i>Love ye,</i>
3.	Am-ānto.	<i>Let them love.</i>

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-āre,	<i>To love, § 47, 11.</i>
PERF.	Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved,</i>
FUT.	Esse am-ātūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love,</i>
F-PERF.	Fuisse am-ātūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
FUT.	Am-ātūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

#### GERUNDS.

Nom.	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
Gen.	Am-andi,	<i>Of loving,</i>
Dat.	Am-ando,	<i>To loving,</i>
Acc.	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
Abl.	Am-ando,	<i>With, from, &amp;c. loving</i>

#### SUPINES.

Former,	Am-ātum,	<i>To love.</i>
Latter,	Am-ātu,	<i>To be loved, to love.</i>

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participle</i>
Pres.	Amo,	Amem,	Amā	Amāre,	Amans,
Imp.	Amābam,	Amārem,			
Perf.	Amāvi,	Amāvērīm,		Amāvisse,	
Plup.	Amāvēram,	Amāvissem.			
Fut.	Amābo,			Esse amātūrus.	Amātūrus
F. perf.	Amāvēro.			Fuisse amātūrus.	

After the same manner inflect,

Cre-c,	cre-āre,	cre-āvi,	cre-ātum,	<i>To create.</i>
Voc-o,	voc-āre,	voc-āvi,	voc-ātum,	<i>To call.</i>
Dom-o,	dom-āre,	dom-ūi,	dom-ītum,	<i>To tame.</i>

## § 57. EXERCISES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation of the verb, conjugate it, give the tense—mood,—voice,—person,—number and translation of the following words, always observing the same order; thus,—*Amo*, Verb, trans., first, *amo*, *amāre*, *amāvi*, *amātum*. It is found in the present, ind. active; first person singular, “I love.” “I do love,” “I am loving.”

*Amābat*, *amāverat*, *amet*, *amāveritis*, *amābunt*, *creāvīmus*, *creāverat*, *domuērat*, *domuisset*, *amāvēro*, *domuēro*, *vocāvērim*, *vocā*, *vocāre*, *domā*, *creāvisse*, *domūisse*, *amātūrus*, *domītūrus*, *amans*, *amandum*, *amātu*, *domītum*, *domābam*, *domābo*,—*creat*, *creāret*, *amāret*, *amāvisti*, *amāvēre*, *domuistis*, *amāto*, *amando*, *amāverunt*, *creāre*, *vocāverunt*, *vocāverint*, *vocābunt*, *vocārētis*, *domābītis*, &c. &c. *ad libitum*.

2. Translate the following English words into Latin, giving the part of the verb used; thus,—“I was loving,” *amābam*, in the imperfect indicative act. first person singular.

He will love, I might love, I had loved, I might have loved, he shall love, I may love, he created, I called, I may have called, he will tame, he has tamed, he would have tamed, love thou, let them love, to love, about to love, of loving, to have loved, they were loving, they have loved, thou hast created, thou hast tamed, &c. *ad libitum*.

3. *The Infinitive with a subject.* The infinitive after another verb, and with an accusative before it as its subject, is translated into English in the indicative or potential mood; and the accusative in Latin is made the nominative in English; as *dicit me amāre*, “he says that I love.” The accusatives are thus translated;

<i>me</i> , that I;	<i>nos</i> , that we;	<i>homīnem</i> , that the man.
<i>te</i> , that thou;	<i>vos</i> , that you;	<i>homīnes</i> , that the men.
<i>illum</i> , that he;	<i>illos</i> , that they;	<i>femīnas</i> , that the women.

Infinitives after verbs of the present, past and future tenses, are rendered as in the examples, § 47- 11; or according to the following rules; viz.

**RULE I.** When the preceding verb is of the present or future tense, the present infinitive is translated as the present indicative; the perfect infinitive as the perfect indicative; and the future infinitive as the future indicative, § 47. 11. Nos. 1. 4. 7. also 3- 6. 9.

**RULE II.** When the preceding verb is in past time, (i. e. in the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect tense,) the present infinitive is transla-

ted as the imperfect, or perfect indicative; the perfect infinitive as the pluperfect indicative; and the future infinitive as the imperfect subjunctive, § 47. 11. Nos. 2, 5, 8.

RULE III. The Future perfect of the infinitive with a subject is always translated as the pluperfect subjunctive, whatever be the tense of the preceding verb, § 47. 11. Nos. 10. 11. 12.

4. According to the preceding rules and the examples referred to, translate the following sentences into English—observing that *dicit*, "he says," is present time; *dixit*, "he said," past; and *dicet*, "he will say," future.

*Dicit* me vocāre,—te amāre,—nos amāvisse,—vos amātūros esse,—nos amātūros fuisse, illos domāre,—te amātūrum esse.

*Dixit* me vocāre,—te amāre,—nos amāvisse—nos amātūros esse,—nos amātūros fuisse,—vos domāre,—te amātūrum esse.

*Dixit* nos vocāre, *dicet* illum creāre, *dicit* te creātūrum esse, *dixit* se amātūrum, (§ 47. Note 1.) *dicit* illos creātūros, illum vocātūrum, vos domītūros esse, domītūros fuisse, &c.

5. Translate the following English into Latin, taking care to put the participle of the future infinitive in the same gender, number, and case, as the accusative preceding it.

He said that I loved,—that I was calling. He says that they will tame,—that I would have created,—that they will call,—that he loves. He will say that I love,—that I have loved,—that I will love. He said that I had called,—that they would have called,—that they tamed,—that they would tame,—that he would have tamed, &c.

## § 58, PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Part.
Amor,	amāri,	amātus, To be loved.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am loved*, § 44. 1. 6.

S. 1. Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
2. Am-āris, or -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
3. Am-ātur,	<i>He is loved;</i>
P. 1. Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
2. Am-āmini,	<i>Ye are loved,</i>
3. Am-āntur.	<i>They are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT, *was loved*, § 44. II. 4.

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ābar,           | <i>I was loved,</i>     |
| 2. Am-ābāris, or -ābāre, | <i>Thou wast loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-ābātur,            | <i>He was loved;</i>    |
| P. 1. Am-ābāmur,         | <i>We were loved,</i>   |
| 2. Am-ābāmini,           | <i>Ye were loved,</i>   |
| 3. Am-ābantur,           | <i>They were loved.</i> |

PERFECT, *have been loved, was loved, am loved*, § 44. III. 5.

- |                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ātus* sum, or fui,        | <i>I have been loved, &amp;c.</i> |
| 2. Am-ātus es, or fuisti,          | <i>Thou hast been loved,</i>      |
| 3. Am-ātus est, or fuit,           | <i>He has been loved;</i>         |
| P. 1. Am-āti sūmus, or fuīmus,     | <i>We have been loved,</i>        |
| 2. Am-āti estis, or fuistis,       | <i>Ye have been loved,</i>        |
| 3. Am-āti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre, | <i>They have been loved.</i>      |

PLUPERFECT, *had been loved*, § 44. IV. 2. and Note.

- |                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ātus ēram, or fuēram,    | <i>I had been loved,</i>      |
| 2. Am-ātus ēras, or fuēras,       | <i>Thou hadst been loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-ātus ērat, or fuērat,       | <i>He had been loved;</i>     |
| P. 1. Am-āti ērāmus, or fuērāmus, | <i>We had been loved,</i>     |
| 2. Am-āti ērātis, or fuērātis,    | <i>Ye had been loved,</i>     |
| 3. Am-āti ērant, or fuērant,      | <i>They had been loved.</i>   |

FUTURE, *shall, or will be loved*.

- |                          |                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ābor,           | <i>I shall, or will be loved,</i>    |
| 2. Am-ābēris, or -ābēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-ābitur,            | <i>He shall, or will be loved;</i>   |
| P. 1. Am-ābīmur,         | <i>We shall, or will be loved,</i>   |
| 2. Am-ābimīni,           | <i>Ye shall, or will be loved,</i>   |
| 3. Am-ābuntur,           | <i>They shall, or will be loved.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have been loved*.

- |                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-ātus fuēro,*  | <i>I shall have been loved,</i>   |
| 2. Am-ātus fuēris,     | <i>Thou wilt have been loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-ātus fuērit,     | <i>He will have been loved;</i>   |
| P. 1. Am-āti fuerīmus, | <i>We shall have been loved,</i>  |
| 2. Am-āti fuerītis,    | <i>Ye will have been loved,</i>   |
| 3. Am-āti fuērīnt,     | <i>They will have been loved.</i> |

\* See § 44. III. 6. Note. *Fui* and *fuisti*, are very seldom found with the Perfect Participle. *Ero*, as well as *fuero*, is used in the Future-Perfect.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can be loved.*

- |                      |                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Am-er,         | <i>I may, or can be loved,</i>        |
| 2. Am-ēris, or -ēre, | <i>Thou mayest or canst be loved.</i> |
| 3. Am-ētur,          | <i>He may, or can be loved ;</i>      |
| P. 1. Am-ēmur,       | <i>We may, or can be loved,</i>       |
| 2. Am-ēmīni,         | <i>Ye may, or can be loved,</i>       |
| 3. Am-entur.         | <i>They may, or can be loved.</i>     |

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be loved.*

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Am-ārer,           | <i>I might, &amp;c. be loved,</i>      |
| 2. Am-ārēris, or -ārēre, | <i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. be loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-ārētur,            | <i>He might, &amp;c. be loved ;</i>    |
| P. 1. Am-ārēmur,         | <i>We might, &amp;c. be loved,</i>     |
| 2. Am-ārēmīni,           | <i>Ye might, &amp;c. be loved,</i>     |
| 3. Am-ārentur.           | <i>They might, &amp;c. be loved.</i>   |

PERFECT, *may have been loved.*

- |                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. Am-ātus sim, or fuērim,    | <i>I may have been loved,</i>      |
| Am-ātus sis, or fuēris,       | <i>Thou mayst have been loved,</i> |
| Am-ātus sit, or fuērit,       | <i>He may have been loved ;</i>    |
| P. Am-āti simus, or fuerīmus, | <i>We may have been loved,</i>     |
| Am-āti sitis, or fueritis,    | <i>Ye may have been loved,</i>     |
| Am-āti sint, or fuērint.      | <i>They may have been loved.</i>   |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been loved.*

- |                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. Am-ātus essem, or fuissem,   | <i>I might have been loved,</i>      |
| Am-ātus esses, or fuisses,      | <i>Thou mightst have been loved,</i> |
| Am-ātus esset, or fuisset,      | <i>He might have been loved ;</i>    |
| P. Am-āti essēmus or fuissēmus, | <i>We might have been loved,</i>     |
| Am-āti essētis, or fuissētis,   | <i>Ye might have been loved,</i>     |
| Am-āti essent, or fuissent.     | <i>They might have been loved.</i>   |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. 2. Am-āre, or ātor, | <i>Be thou loved,</i>     |
| 3. Am-ātor,               | <i>Let him be loved ;</i> |
| Plur. 2. Am-āmīni,        | <i>Be ye loved,</i>       |
| 3. Am-āntor,              | <i>Let them be loved.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i> § 47. 11.
PERF. Esse, or fuisse am-ātus,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
FUT. Am-ātum iri.	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Am-ātus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved, being loved, having been loved.</i>
FUT. Am-āndus, -a, -um.	<i>To be loved, proper, or necessary to be loved.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Part.
Pres. Amor,	Amer,	Amāre.	Amāri.	
Imp. Amābar,	Amārer,			
Perf. Amātus sum,	Amātus sim,		Esse or fuisse	Amātus,
Plup. Amātus eram,	Amātus essem.		amātus,	
Fut. Amābor,			Amātum iri.	Amandus.
F. P. Amātus fuero.				

After the same manner inflect,

Creor,	creāri,	creātus,	<i>To be created.</i>
Vocor,	vocāri,	vocātus,	<i>To be called.</i>
Domor,	domāri,	domītus,	<i>To be tamed.</i>

## § 59. EXERCISES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation of the verb, —conjugate it, —give the tense, mood, voice, person, number, and translation of the following words, always following the same order; thus, —Amor. Verb, trans., first; Amo, amāre, amavi, amātum. —found in the present ind. passive, first person sing. "I am loved."

Amābatur, amāntur, amātus est, amābītur, amābar, amārētur, amentur, amātus sim, amātus fuero, amāti fuērunt, amāti essēmus, amābāmini, amāris, amātus esset, amāti fuissent, amābuntur, amāntor, amāre, amātus esse, amātus, amātum iri, amandus, amēmini, amārēmini, amāntur, creātur, creārētur, vocābītur, domantur, vocātus sum; &c.

2. Translate the following English words into Latin, giving the part of the verb used; thus, "I am loved," Amor. —in the pres ind. pass. first person, sing.

He is loved, they are loved, I have been loved, they were

created, he had been called, they will be tamed, I might be loved, they may have been loved, to be loved, to have been called, I had been called, being called, they are tamed, they have been tamed, he will be loved, they will have been loved, they may be called, I may be called, he might have been created, they will be loved, &c.

3. *Translate the following sentences into English, according to the rules, § 57. 3.*

*Dicit eum amāri, illos vocātos esse, me vocātum iri, te amātum iri, me creāri, eos domāri, illum amātum fuisse, nos domītos esse, nos domītum iri, illos amāri, illos vocātum iri,*

*Dixit eum amare, illos vocātos esse, me vocātum iri, te amātum iri, me creāri, eos domāri, illum amātum fuisse, nos domītos esse, nos domītum iri, illos amāri, illos vocātum iri, te amāri. Dicet eum amāri, &c. as in the preceding.*

4. *Translate the following English into Latin, taking care that the participle of the perfect infinitive be put in the same gender, number and case, as the accusative before it.*

*He says that I am loved, that he was loved, that he will be called, that they were created, that we were tamed. He said that I was called, that we were created, that they had been created. He will say that I was loved, that I will be loved, that they will be called, that you are called, that he will be called. He said that they had been tamed. &c.*

#### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.

5. *Give the designation, &c. as directed, No. 1. Amābo, amārem, amārētur, amātus sim, amant, vocātur, creārentur, domāntur, domītum iri, creāri, amant, amābuntur, amārent, amāvissent, amāvērāt, amētis, amātis, amābātis, amāvēris, ama, amāvisse, amandum, amātur, vocātum iri, vocātus es, vocāti erant, vocātus esset, (dicit se, "he says that he,") amātūrum esse, (dixit se, "he said that he,") amāre, amāri, (nos, that we,) vocātos esse, amanto, amābunt, amāvistis, amāvēre, amārētis.*

Conjugate the following verbs like *Amo*; viz.

*Accūso, I accuse,*

*Certo, I strive,*

*Repāro, I repair,*

*Æstimo, I value,*

*Cogito, I think,*

*Rōgo, I ask,*

*Ambūlo, I walk,*

*Festīno, I hasten,*

*Servo, I keep,*

*Cūro, I care,*

*Navigo, I sail,*

*Vito, I shun.*

## § 60. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum, <i>To advise.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *I advise, do advise, am advising*, § 44. I.

S. 1. Mon-ĕo,	<i>I advise, do advise, &amp;c.</i>
2. Mon-es,	<i>Thou advisest, dost advise, &amp;c.</i>
3. Mon-et,	<i>He advises, does advise, &amp;c;</i>
P. 1. Mon-ĕmus,	<i>We advise, do advise, &amp;c.</i>
2. Mon-ĕtis,	<i>Ye advise, do advise, &amp;c.</i>
3. Mon-ent,	<i>They advise, do advise, &amp;c.</i>

IMPERFECT, *advised, did advise, was advising*, § 44. II.

S. 1. Mon-ĕbam,	<i>I advised, did advise, &amp;c</i>
2. Mon-ĕbas,	<i>Thou advisedst, didst advise, &amp;c.</i>
3. Mon-ĕbat,	<i>He advised, did advise, &amp;c ;</i>
P. 1. Mon-ĕbāmus,	<i>We advised, did advise, &amp;c.</i>
2. Mon-ĕbātis,	<i>Ye advised, did advise, &amp;c.</i>
3. Mon-ĕbant,	<i>They advised, did advise, &amp;c.</i>

PERFECT, Def. *have advised*, Indef. *advised; did advise*, § 44. III.

S. 1. Monu-i,	<i>I have advised, &amp;c.</i>
2. Monu-isti,	<i>Thou hast advised, &amp;c.</i>
3. Monu-it,	<i>He has advised, &amp;c ;</i>
P. 1. Monu-imus,	<i>We have advised, &amp;c.</i>
2. Monu-istis,	<i>Ye have advised, &amp;c.</i>
3. Monu-ērunt, or -ĕre.	<i>They have advised, &amp;c.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had advised*, § 44. IV.

S. 1. Monu-ĕram,	<i>I had advised,</i>
2. Monu-ĕras,	<i>Thou hadst advised,</i>
3. Monu-ĕrat,	<i>He had advised;</i>
P. 1. Monu-ĕrāmus,	<i>We had advised,</i>
2. Monu-ĕrātis,	<i>Ye had advised,</i>
3. Monu ĕrant,	<i>They had advised.</i>



FUTURE, *shall, or will advise.*

- S. 1. Mon-ēbo, *I shall, or will advise,*  
 2. Mon-ēbis, *Thou shalt, or wilt advise,*  
 3. Mon-ēbit, *He shall, or will advise ;*  
 P. 1. Mon-ēbimus, *We shall, or will advise,*  
 2. Mon-ēbitis, *Ye shall, or will advise,*  
 3. Mon-ēbunt, *They shall, or will advise.*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have advised, § 44. V.*

- S. 1. Monu-ēro, *I shall, or will have advised,*  
 2. Monu-ēris, *Thou shalt, or wilt have advised,*  
 3. Monu-ērit, *He shall, or will have advised ;*  
 P. 1. Monu-erimus, *We shall, or will have advised,*  
 2. Monu-eritis, *Ye shall, or will have advised,*  
 3. Monu-erint, *They shall, or will have advised.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may or can advise. § 45. I.*

- S. 1. Mon-eam, *I may, or can advise,*  
 2. Mon-eas, *Thou mayest, or canst advise,*  
 3. Mon-eat, *He may, or can advise ;*  
 P. 1. Mon-eāmus, *We may, or can advise,*  
 2. Mon-eātis, *Ye may, or can advise,*  
 3. Mon-eant, *They may, or can advise.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should advise, § 45. II.*

- S. 1. Mon-ērem, *I might, could, &c. advise,*  
 2. Mon-ēres, *Thou mightst, &c. advise,*  
 3. Mon-ēret, *He might, &c. advise ;*  
 P. 1. Mon-ērēmus, *We might, &c. advise,*  
 2. Mon-ērētis, *Ye might, &c. advise,*  
 3. Mon-ērent, *They might, &c. advise.*

PERFECT, *may have advised, § 45. III.*

- S. 1. Monu-ērim, *I may have advised,*  
 2. Monu-ēris, *Thou mayest have advised,*  
 3. Monu-ērit, *He may have advised ;*  
 P. 1. Monu-erimus, *We may have advised,*  
 2. Monu-eritis, *Ye may have advised,*  
 3. Monu-erint, *They may have advised.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have advised,*  
§ 45. IV.

S. 1. Monu-issem,	<i>I might, &amp;c. have advised,</i>
2. Monu-isses,	<i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. have advised.</i>
3. Monu-isset,	<i>He might, &amp;c. have advised;</i>
P. 1. Monu-issēmus,	<i>We might, &amp;c. have advised,</i>
2. Monu-issētis,	<i>Ye might, &amp;c. have advised,</i>
3. Monu-issent.	<i>They might, &amp;c. have advised,</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. Mon-ē, or -ēto,	<i>Advise thou, § 47. 11.</i>
3. Mon-ēto,	<i>Let him advise;</i>
P. 2. Mon-ēte, or -ētote,	<i>Advise ye or you,</i>
3. Mon-ento.	<i>Let them advise.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Mon-ēre,	<i>To advise, § 47. 11.</i>
PERF. Monu-isse,	<i>To have advised,</i>
FUT. Esse monitūrus,	<i>To be about to advise,</i>
F. PERF. Fuisse monitūrus,	<i>To have been about to advise.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Mon-ens	<i>Advising,</i>
FUT. Mon-itūrus,	<i>About to advise.</i>

GERUNDS.

Nom. Mon-endum,	<i>Advising,</i>
Gen. Mon-endi,	<i>Of advising,</i>
Dat. Mon-endo,	<i>To advising,</i>
Acc. Mon-endum,	<i>Advising,</i>
Abl. Mon-endo,	<i>With, &amp;c. advising.</i>

SUPINES.

FORMER, Mon-itum,	<i>To advise,</i>
LATTER, Mon-itu.	<i>To be advised, or to advise.</i>

SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Part.
Pres.	Moneo,	Moneam,	Monē.	Monēre,	Monens.
Imp.	Monēbam,	Monērem,			
Perf.	Monui,	Monuērim,		Monuisse,	
Plup.	Monuēram,	Monuissē.			
Fut.	Monēbo,			Esse monitūrus,	Monitūrus
F. P.	Monuēro.			Fuisse monitūrus.	

After the same manner inflect,

Doc-eo,	doc-ēre,	docū-i,	doc-tum,	<i>To teach.</i>
Jub-eo,	jub-ēre,	juss-i,	jus-sum,	<i>To order.</i>
Vid-eo,	vid-ēre,	vid-i,	vī-sum,	<i>To see.</i>

---

## § 61. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation, &c. as directed, § 57. 1.*—Monē-bo, monuit, monēret, monuērit, monē, monuisse, monens, monendum, monēbat, monent, monento, monuisti, monuēre, monuēratis, monuissent.—Docent, jubēbat, jussērat, vidēret, vidēat, vidēbit, docuēris, docē, doctūrus, jussūrus, visum, jussu, docens, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, &c. as directed, § 57. 2.*—I have advised, I will advise, he may advise, I might advise, he will have advised, they advise, they had advised, they might have advised, thou hast advised, ye have advised, I did advise, he was advising.—He teaches, they taught, we had ordered, we would have ordered, I saw, I have seen, thou wilt see, he may see, they would have ordered, &c.

3. *Translate according to the rules, § 57. 3. 4.*—*Dicit*, (he says) me monere,—nos monuisse,—illos monēre, vos monitūros esse, me monitūrum fuisse.—*Dixit* (he said) se, monēre,—nos vidēre,—eum vidisse,—nos visūros esse, me visūrum esse,—me visūrum fuisse,—vos vidisse, se docēre, nos docūisse, vos docturos esse, illam (*that she*) visūram esse, illum doctūrum esse, &c.

4. *As directed, § 57. 3, 5.* *He says* that I advised, *he said* that I advised, that I had advised, that I would advise, *he says* that I will advise, that I would have advised, *he said* that he (*se*) saw, had seen, would see, would have seen. I advise that you should order, he says that I am advising, that we will order, &c.

---

## § 62. PASSIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Monēor,	monēri,	monitus, <i>To be advised.</i>

PRESENT TENSE, *am advised*, § 44. I. 6.

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| S. 1. Mon-eor,        | <i>I am advised,</i>     |
| 2. Mon-ēris, or -ēre, | <i>Thou art advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ētur,          | <i>He is advised ;</i>   |
| P. 1. Mon-ēmur,       | <i>We are advised,</i>   |
| 2. Mon-ēmīni,         | <i>Ye are advised,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-entur,         | <i>They are advised.</i> |

IMPERFECT, *was advised*, § 44, II. 4.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| S. 1. Mon-ēbar,           | <i>I was advised,</i>     |
| 2. Mon-ēbāris, or -ēbāre, | <i>Thou wast advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ēbātur,            | <i>He was advised ;</i>   |
| P. 1. Mon-ēbāmur,         | <i>We were advised,</i>   |
| 2. Mon-ēbāmīni,           | <i>Ye were advised,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-ēbantur,           | <i>They were advised.</i> |

PERFECT, *have been, was, am*, § 44. III. 5.

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Mon-ītus* sum, or fui,    | <i>I have been advised, &amp;c.</i>    |
| 2. Mon-ītus es, or fuisti,      | <i>Thou hast been advised, &amp;c.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ītus est, or fuit,       | <i>He has been advised ;</i>           |
| P. 1. Mon-īti sūmus, or fuīmus, | <i>We have been advised,</i>           |
| 2. Mon-īti estis, or fuistis,   | <i>Ye have been advised,</i>           |
| 3. Mon-īti sunt, fuērunt, &c.   | <i>They have been advised.</i>         |

PLUPERFECT, *had been*.

- |                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| S. Mon-ītus ēram, or fuēram,    | <i>I had been advised,</i>      |
| Mon-ītus ēras, or fuēras,       | <i>Thou hadst been advised,</i> |
| Mon-ītus ērat, or fuērat,       | <i>He had been advised ;</i>    |
| P. Mon-īti ēramus, or fuērāmus, | <i>We had been advised,</i>     |
| Mon-īti ērātis, or fuērātis,    | <i>Ye had been advised,</i>     |
| Mon-īti ērant, or fuērant.      | <i>They had been advised.</i>   |

FUTURE, *shall, or will be*,

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Mon-ēbor,           | <i>I shall or will be advised,</i>     |
| 2. Mon-ēbēris, or -ēbēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ēbitur,            | <i>He shall, or will be advised ;</i>  |
| P. 1. Mon-ēbīmur,         | <i>We shall, or will be advised,</i>   |
| 2. Mon-ēbimīni,           | <i>Ye shall, or will be advised,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-ēbuntur.           | <i>They shall, or will be advised.</i> |

\* See § 44. III. 6. *Nota*.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall, or will have been.*

- |                         |                                     |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Mon-ītus fuēro,   | <i>I shall have been advised,</i>   |
| 2. Mon-ītus fuēris,     | <i>Thou wilt have been advised.</i> |
| 3. Mon-ītus fuērit,     | <i>He will have been advised;</i>   |
| P. 1. Mon-īti fuerīmus, | <i>We shall have been advised,</i>  |
| 2. Mon-īti fuerītis,    | <i>Ye will have been advised,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-īti fuērint,     | <i>They will have been advised.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may or can be advised.*

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Mon-e-ar,           | <i>I may, or can be advised,</i>         |
| 2. Mon-e-āris, or -e-āre, | <i>Thou mayest, or canst be advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-e-ātur;            | <i>He may, or can be advised;</i>        |
| P. 1. Mon-e-āmur,         | <i>We may, or can be advised,</i>        |
| 2. Mon-e-āminī,           | <i>Ye may, or can be advised,</i>        |
| 3. Mon-e-antur,           | <i>They may, or can be advised.</i>      |

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be.*

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Mon-ērer,           | <i>I might, &amp;c. be advised,</i>      |
| 2. Mon-ērēris, or -ērēre, | <i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. be advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ērētur,            | <i>He might, &amp;c. be advised;</i>     |
| P. 1. Mon-ērēmur,         | <i>We might, &amp;c. be advised,</i>     |
| 2. Mon-ērēmīni,           | <i>Ye might, &amp;c. be advised,</i>     |
| 3. Mon-ērentur,           | <i>They might, &amp;c. be advised.</i>   |

PERFECT, *may have been advised.*

- |                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| S. Monītus sim, or fuērim,    | <i>I may have been advised,</i>       |
| Monītus sis, or fuēris,       | <i>Thou mayest have been advised,</i> |
| Monītus sit, or fuērit,       | <i>He may have been advised;</i>      |
| P. Monīti sīmus, or fuerīmus, | <i>We may have been advised,</i>      |
| Monīti sītis, or fuerītis,    | <i>Ye may have been advised.</i>      |
| Monīti sint, or fuērint,      | <i>They may have been advised.</i>    |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been.*

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Monītus essem, or fuissem,    | <i>I might &amp;c. have been advised,</i> |
| Monītus esses, or fuisses,    | <i>Thou mightst have been advised,</i>    |
| Monītus esset, or fuisset,    | <i>He might have been advised;</i>        |
| Monīti essēmus, or fuissēmus, | <i>We might have been advised,</i>        |
| Monīti essētis, or fuissētis, | <i>Ye might have been advised,</i>        |
| Monīti essent, or fuissent,   | <i>They might have been advised.</i>      |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. Mon-ēre, or -ētor,	<i>Be thou advised,</i>
3. Mon-ētor,	<i>Let him be advised;</i>
P. 2. Mon-ēmīni,	<i>Be ye advised,</i>
3. Mon-entor.	<i>Let them be advised.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Mon-ēri,	<i>To be advised, § 47. 11,</i>
PERF. Esse, or fuisse monitus,	<i>To have been advised,</i>
FUT. Mon-ītum iri	<i>To be about to be advised.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Mon-ītus, -a, -um,	{ <i>advised, being advised, or having been advised,</i>
FUT. Mon-endus, -a, -um,	
	{ <i>to be advised, proper, or ne- cessary to be advised.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Monēor,	Monēar,	Monēre.	Monēri,	
<i>Imp.</i>	Monēbar,	Monērer,			
<i>Perf.</i>	Monitus sum,	Monitus sim,		Esse, or fu-	Monitus,
<i>Plup.</i>	Monitus eram	Monitus essem.		isse monitus,	
<i>Fut.</i>	Monēbor,			Monītum iri.	Monendus
<i>F. P.</i>	Monitus fuero				

After the same manner inflect,

Docēor,	docēri,	doctus,	<i>To be taught.</i>
Jubēor,	jubēri,	jussus,	<i>To be ordered.</i>
Vidēor,	vidēri,	vīsus,	<i>To be seen.</i>

## § 63. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation, &c. as directed, § 59. 1. Monēor, monētur, monēbātur, monēbītur, monitus est, monīti estis, moneāmur, monērētur, monītus fuero, monēre, monēri, monītus, monītus esse, monendus. Vidērētur, vīsus, vīsum iri, docērentur, doceantur, docēmīni, doceāminī, jubēbītur, jussi fuērunt, jubērentur, jubētor, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed* § 59. 2. I was advised, he has been advised,—he may be advised, we will be advised, we were advised, I am advised, they might have been advised. Be ye advised, to be about to be advised, to be advised, he may have been seen,—they should be ordered, we will be seen, they will be taught, having been taught, necessary to be taught, let them be taught; they have been ordered, we might have been ordered, to be about to be ordered, being ordered, they may have been ordered, &c.

#### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

3. *Give the designation, &c. as directed*, § 57. 1; § 59. 1. Monēbam, monuērat, monuērit, monēbunt, monēam, monē, monēbar, monitus es, monuit, monēri, doctus sum, docēar, docērer, docēbītur, docento, docentor, docentur, jubet, jussērunt, jussērint, jubēbo, jubērentur, jussus esse, jubē, vidēo, vident, vidērētur, vidē, vidistis, vidērātis, vidērent, vidēro, videndum, videns, visūrus, vidisse, visum iri, vidēri, monēbuntur, monēantur, vidērentur, jussērim, jubēbam, jubērer, videntur, docuērunt, docē, docens.

4. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed*, § 57. 2. I am advised, he advises, they will advise, ye have advised, they will have advised, he will be advised, he is taught, he has taught, they will teach, I will see, they may see, they are seen, he has been seen, to order, to have been ordered, ordering, about to order, to have seen, I might see, I might have been seen, they will not (*non*) see, he will not see, I do not advise, he is teaching, he is not teaching, he will not order, I will order, &c.

5. *As directed*, § 57. 3 and 4. *Dicit* se monēre,—nos monuisse,—eum monitūrum esse,—vos vidēre,—eum visum iri; *Dixit* se monēre,—nos monuisse,—eum monitūrum esse, vos vidēre, eum visum iri. *Dicet* se monēre, &c. vos monuisse, homines monitūros esse, feminam monitūram esse, vos jubēre.

6. *As directed*, § 57. 5. HE SAYS that he advises,—that he will advise,—that we have advised. HE SAID that I advised, that he had advised, that they would have advised, that I would order, would have ordered, would have been ordered, was taught, had been taught, would have been taught, &c.

## § 64. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Reg-o,	reg-ĕre,	rex-i,	rect-um, <i>To rule.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *rule, do rule, am ruling*, § 44. I.

<i>S.</i> 1. Reg-o,	<i>I rule, do rule, am ruling,</i>
2. Reg-is,*	<i>Thou rulest, dost rule, art ruling,</i>
3. Reg-it,	<i>He rules, does rule, is ruling ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Reg-ĭmus,	<i>We rule, do rule, are ruling,</i>
2. Reg-ĭtis,	<i>Ye rule, do rule, are ruling,</i>
3. Reg-unt,	<i>They rule, do rule, are ruling.</i>

IMPERFECT, *ruled, did rule, was ruling*, § 44. II.

<i>S.</i> 1. Reg-ĕbam,	<i>I ruled, did rule, was ruling,</i>
2. Reg-ĕbas,	<i>Thou ruledst, didst rule, wast ruling,</i>
3. Reg-ĕbat,	<i>He ruled, did rule, was ruling ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Reg-ĕbāmus,	<i>We ruled, did rule, were ruling,</i>
2. Reg-ĕbātis,	<i>Ye ruled, did rule, were ruling,</i>
3. Reg-ĕbant,	<i>They ruled, did rule, were ruling.</i>

PERFECT, Def. *have ruled*, Indef. *ruled, did rule*, § 44. III.

<i>S.</i> 1. Rex-i,	<i>I have ruled, ruled, did rule,</i>
2. Rex-isti,	<i>Thou hast ruled, ruledst, didst rule,</i>
3. Rex-it,	<i>He has ruled, ruled, did rule ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Rex-ĭmus,	<i>We have ruled, ruled, did rule,</i>
2. Rex-istis,	<i>Ye have ruled, ruled, did rule,</i>
3. Rex-ĕrunt, or -ĕre,	<i>They have ruled, ruled, did rule.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled*. § 44. IV.

<i>S.</i> 1. Rex-ĕram,	<i>I had ruled,</i>
2. Rex-ĕras,	<i>Thou hadst ruled,</i>
3. Rex-ĕrat,	<i>He had ruled ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Rex-ĕrāmus,	<i>We had ruled,</i>
2. Rex-ĕrātis,	<i>Ye had ruled,</i>
3. Rex-ĕrant,	<i>They had ruled.</i>

\* *C* and *g* are hard before *a*, *o*, *u* ; and soft like *s* and *j* before *e* and *i*. Soft *g* is here marked in Italics, and sounds like *j*.



FUTURE, *shall*, or *will* rule, § 44. V.

- |                 |                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| S. 1. Reg-am,   | <i>I shall, or will rule,</i>    |
| 2. Reg-es,      | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt rule,</i> |
| 3. Reg-et,      | <i>He shall, or will rule ;</i>  |
| P. 1. Reg-ēmus, | <i>We shall, or will rule,</i>   |
| 2. Reg-ētis,    | <i>Ye shall, or will rule,</i>   |
| 3. Reg-ent,     | <i>They shall, or will rule.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall*, or *will* have ruled, § 44. VI.

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| S. 1. Rex-ēro,    | <i>I shall, or will have ruled,</i>    |
| 2. Rex-ēris,      | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have ruled,</i> |
| 3. Rex-ērit,      | <i>He shall, or will have ruled ;</i>  |
| P. 1. Rex-erīmus, | <i>We shall, or will have ruled,</i>   |
| 2. Rex-erītis,    | <i>Ye shall, or will have ruled,</i>   |
| 3. Rex-ērint,     | <i>They shall, or will have ruled.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can* rule, § 45. I.

- |                 |                                    |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Reg-am,   | <i>I may, or can rule,</i>         |
| 2. Reg-as,      | <i>Thou mayest, or canst rule,</i> |
| 3. Reg-at,      | <i>He may, or can rule ;</i>       |
| P. 1. Reg-āmus, | <i>We may, or can rule,</i>        |
| 2. Reg-ātis,    | <i>Ye may, or can rule,</i>        |
| 3. Reg-ant,     | <i>They may, or can rule.</i>      |

IMPERFECT *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* rule, § 45. II.

- |                   |                                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Reg-ērem,   | <i>I might, &amp;c. rule,</i>      |
| 2. Reg-ēres,      | <i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. rule,</i> |
| 3. Reg-ēret,      | <i>He might, &amp;c. rule ;</i>    |
| P. 1. Reg-ērēmus, | <i>We might, &amp;c. rule,</i>     |
| 2. Reg-ērētis,    | <i>Ye might, &amp;c. rule,</i>     |
| 3. Reg-ērent,     | <i>They might, &amp;c. rule.</i>   |

PERFECT, *may* have ruled, § 45. III.

- |                   |                                |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. 1. Rex-ērim,   | <i>I may have ruled,</i>       |
| 2. Rex-ēris,      | <i>Thou mayest have ruled,</i> |
| 3. Rex-ērit,      | <i>He may have ruled ;</i>     |
| P. 1. Rex-erīmus, | <i>We may have ruled,</i>      |
| 2. Rex-erītis,    | <i>Ye may have ruled,</i>      |
| 3. Rex-ērint,     | <i>They may have ruled.</i>    |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have ruled*  
§ 45. IV.

S. 1. Rex-issem,	<i>I might, &amp;c. have ruled</i>
2. Rex-isses,	<i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. have ruled,</i>
3. Rex-isset,	<i>He might, &amp;c. have ruled;</i>
P. 1. Rex-issēmus,	<i>We might, &amp;c. have ruled,</i>
2. Rex-issētis,	<i>Ye might, &amp;c. have ruled,</i>
3. Rex-issent,	<i>They might, &amp;c. have ruled.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD, § 42.

S. 2. Reg-ě, or -ito,	<i>Rule thou,</i>
3. Reg-ito,	<i>Let him rule;</i>
P. 2. Reg-ite, or -itote,	<i>Rule ye,</i>
3. Reg-unto,	<i>Let them rule.</i>

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Reg-ěre,	<i>To rule, § 47. 11.</i>
PERF. Rex-isse,	<i>To have ruled,</i>
FUT. Esse rectūrus,	<i>To be about to rule,</i>
F.PERF. Fuisse rectūrus,	<i>To have been about to rule.</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Reg-ens,	<i>Ruling,</i>
FUT. Rect-ūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to rule.</i>

#### GERUNDS.

Nom. Reg-endum,	<i>Ruling,</i>
Gen. Reg-endi,	<i>Of ruling,</i>
Dat. Reg-endo,	<i>To ruling,</i>
Acc. Reg-endum,	<i>Ruling,</i>
Abl. Reg-endo,	<i>With, &amp;c. ruling.</i>

#### SUPINES.

FORMER, Rect-um,	<i>To rule,</i>
LATTER, Rect-u,	<i>To be ruled, or to rule.</i>

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles</i>
<i>Pres</i>	Rego,	Regam,	Regē.	Regēre,	Regens,
<i>Imp.</i>	Regēbam,	Regērem,			
<i>Perf.</i>	Rexi,	Rexērim,		Rexisse,	
<i>Plup.</i>	Rexēram,	Rexissem.			
<i>Fut.</i>	Regam,			Esse rectūrus,	Rectūrus.
<i>F.perf.</i>	Rexēro.			Fuisse rectūrus.	

After the same manner inflect.

Lēgo,	legēre,	lēgi,	lectum,	To read.
Scribo,	scribēre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	To write.
Cædo,	cædēre,	cecīdi,	cæsum,	To slay.

EXAMPLE OF VERBS IN -IO. ACTIVE VOICE ;

*Pres. Ind. Pres. Inf. Perf. Ind. Supine.*

Capio, capēre, cēpi, captum, To take.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i> Cap-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
<i>Imp.</i> Capi-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
<i>Perf.</i> Cēp-i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt or -ēre.
<i>Plup.</i> Cēp-eram,	-ēras,	-erat;	-ērāmus,	-ērātis,	
<i>Fut.</i> Capi-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
<i>F.P.</i> Cēp-ero,	-ēris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Capi-am,	-as,	-at,	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
<i>Imp.</i> Cap-ērem,	-ēres,	-eret,	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
<i>Perf.</i> Cēp-erim,	-ēris,	-erit,	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erint.
<i>Plup.</i> Cēp-issem,	-isses,	-isset,	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Cap-e, or -ito, -ito ; -ite, or -itote, -iunto.

INFINITIVE.

*Present,* Cap-ēre.  
*Perfect,* Cēp-isse.  
*Future,* Esse captūrus.  
*F. Perfect,* Fuisse captūrus.

PARTICIPLES.

*Present,* Capiens.  
*Future,* Captūrus -a, -um.

GERUNDS.

*N.* Capi-endum,  
*G.* Capi-endi, &c.

SUPINES.

*Former,* Captum,  
*Latter,* Captu.

So also Rapio, rapēre, rapui, raptum, To seize  
 Fugio, fugēre, fugi. fugitum, To flee.

## § 65. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

*Give the designation, &c. as directed, § 57. 1.*—Regēbam, rexisti, rexeram, regam, regērem, rexēro, rexisset, regē, rexisse, regens. Scribit, scribēbat, scripsit, scribēmus, scribāmus, legunt, legēret, leget, legē, legērunt, legērant. Capiunt, capiēbat, capiunto, capērem, cēpit, cepērim, cepēram, cepissem, capit, capēre, capiendum, &c.

*2. Translate the following into Latin, as directed, § 57. 2.*—He rules, we are ruling, he has ruled, we will rule, they will have ruled, ye might rule, they may rule, we will rule, they were ruling, he had ruled, they might have ruled. He has read, they will read, we shall read, to have read, to have written, to write, writing, write thou, let them write

*3. Translate according to the Rules, § 57. 3. 4. (Dicit he says,) me regēre, me scribēre, se rexisse, nos rectūros esse, illum scripsisse, me scriptūrum fuisse, vos lectūros esse, me capēre, vos cepisse, vos captūros esse, vos captūros fuisse, (Dixit, he said,) me regēre, me rexisse, me rectūrum esse, &c.*

*4. As directed, § 57. 4—5. He says that I rule, that he ruled, that we write, that they will write, that he is about to write. He writes that he rules, that you are reading, that you will write. He said that he was writing, that you had written, that we would write, would have written. He will say that I am ruling, was ruling, will rule, &c.*

## § 66 PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Reg-or,	reg-i,	rectus, <i>To be ruled.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am ruled, § 44. I. 6.*

<i>S. 1.</i> Reg-or,	<i>I am ruled,</i>
<i>2.</i> Reg-ēris, or -ēre,	<i>Thou art ruled,</i>
<i>3.</i> Reg-itur,	<i>He is ruled ;</i>
<i>P. 1.</i> Reg-īmur,	<i>We are ruled,</i>
<i>2.</i> Reg-imīni,	<i>Ye are ruled,</i>
<i>3.</i> Reg-untur	<i>They are ruled.</i>

IMPERFECT, *was ruled*, § 44. II. 4.

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| S. 1. Reg-ēbar,           | <i>I was ruled,</i>     |
| 2. Reg-ēbāris, or -ēbāre, | <i>Thou wast ruled,</i> |
| 3. Reg-ēbātur,            | <i>He was ruled ;</i>   |
| P. 1. Reg-ēbāmur,         | <i>We were ruled,</i>   |
| 2. Reg-ēbāmīni,           | <i>Ye were ruled,</i>   |
| 3. Reg-ēbantur.           | <i>They were ruled.</i> |

PERFECT, *have been ruled, was ruled, am ruled*, § 44. III. 5.

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| S. 1. Rectus sum, or fui,         | <i>I have been ruled,</i>    |
| 2. Rectus es, or fuisti,          | <i>Thou hast been ruled,</i> |
| 3. Rectus est, or fuit,           | <i>He has been ruled ;</i>   |
| P. 1. Recti sūmus, or fuīmus,     | <i>We have been ruled,</i>   |
| 2. Recti estis, or fuistis,       | <i>Ye have been ruled,</i>   |
| 3. Recti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre, | <i>They have been ruled.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *had been ruled*.

- |                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| S. 1. Rectus ēram, or fuēram,    | <i>I had been ruled,</i>      |
| 2. Rectus ēras, or fuēras,       | <i>Thou hadst been ruled,</i> |
| 3. Rectus ērat, or fuērat,       | <i>He had been ruled ;</i>    |
| P. 1. Recti ērāmus, or fuērāmus, | <i>We had been ruled,</i>     |
| 2. Recti ērātis, or fuērātis,    | <i>Ye had been ruled,</i>     |
| 3. Recti ērant, or fuērant,      | <i>They had been ruled.</i>   |

FUTURE, *shall, or will be ruled*.

- |                       |                                      |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Reg-ar,         | <i>I shall, or will be ruled,</i>    |
| 2. Reg-ēris, or -ēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be ruled,</i> |
| 3. Reg-ētur,          | <i>He shall, or will be ruled ;</i>  |
| P. 1. Reg-ēmur,       | <i>We shall, or will be ruled,</i>   |
| 2. Reg-ēmini,         | <i>Ye shall, or will be ruled,</i>   |
| 3. Reg-entur,         | <i>They shall, or will be ruled.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have been ruled*.

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| S. 1. Rectus fuēro,   | <i>I shall, or will have been ruled,</i>    |
| 2. Rectus fuēris,     | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have been ruled,</i> |
| 3. Rectus fuērit,     | <i>He shall, or will have been ruled ;</i>  |
| P. 1. Recti fuerīmus, | <i>We shall, or will have been ruled,</i>   |
| 2. Recti fuerītis,    | <i>Ye shall, or will have been ruled,</i>   |
| 3. Recti fuērint,     | <i>They shall, or will have been ruled.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may or can be ruled.*

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| S. 1. Reg-ar,         | <i>I may, or can be ruled,</i>         |
| 2. Reg-āris, or -āre, | <i>Thou mayest, or canst be ruled,</i> |
| 3. Reg-ātur,          | <i>He may, or can be ruled ;</i>       |
| P. 1. Reg-āmur,       | <i>We may, or can be ruled,</i>        |
| 2. Reg-āmīni,         | <i>Ye may, or can be ruled,</i>        |
| 3. Reg-antur,         | <i>They may, or can be ruled.</i>      |

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be.*

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Reg-ērer,           | <i>I might, &amp;c. be ruled,</i>      |
| 2. Reg-ērēris, or -ērēre, | <i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. be ruled,</i> |
| 3. Reg-ērētur,            | <i>He might, &amp;c. be ruled ;</i>    |
| P. 1. Reg-ērēmur,         | <i>We might, &amp;c. be ruled,</i>     |
| 2. Reg-ērēmīni,           | <i>Ye might, &amp;c. be ruled,</i>     |
| 3. Reg-ērentur,           | <i>They might, &amp;c. be ruled.</i>   |

PERFECT, *may have been.*

- |                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Rectus sim, or fuërim,    | <i>I may have been ruled,</i>       |
| 2. Rectus sis, or fuëris,       | <i>Thou mayest have been ruled.</i> |
| 3. Rectus sit, or fuërit,       | <i>He may have been ruled ;</i>     |
| P. 1. Recti sīmus, or fuerīmus, | <i>We may have been ruled,</i>      |
| 2. Recti sītis, or fuerītis,    | <i>Ye may have been ruled.</i>      |
| 3. Recti sint, or fuërint,      | <i>They may have been ruled.</i>    |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been.*

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Rectus essem, or fuissē,     | <i>I might &amp;c. have been ruled,</i> |
| Rectus esses, or fuisses,    | <i>Thou mightst have been ruled,</i>    |
| Rectus esset, or fuisset,    | <i>He might have been ruled ;</i>       |
| Recti essēmus, or fuissēmus, | <i>We might have been ruled,</i>        |
| Recti essētis, or fuissētis, | <i>Ye might have been ruled,</i>        |
| Recti essent, or fuissent,   | <i>They might have been ruled.</i>      |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| S. 2. Reg-ere, or -itor, | <i>Be thou ruled,</i>     |
| 3. Reg-itor,             | <i>Let him be ruled.</i>  |
| P. 2. Reg-imini,         | <i>Be ye ruled.</i>       |
| 3. Reg-untor,            | <i>Let them be ruled.</i> |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

- |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| PRES. Reg-i,                  | <i>To be ruled, § 47. 11.</i>  |
| PERF. Esse, or fuisse rectus, | <i>To have been ruled,</i>     |
| FUT. Rectum iri,              | <i>To be about to be ruled</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Rectus, -a, -um,	{ Ruled, being ruled, having been ruled.
FUT. Regendus, -a, -um,	{ To be ruled, proper, or necessary to be ruled.

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Participles.
Pres.. Regor,	Regar,	Regere	Regi,	
Imp. Regēbar,	Regērer,			
Perf. Rectus sum,	Rectus sim,		Esse or fuisse	Rectus,
Plup. Rectus ēram,	Rectus essem.		rectus,	
Fut. Regar,			Rectum iri.	Regendus
F. P. Rectus fuēro				

After the same manner inflect,

Legor,	lēgi,	lectus,	To be read.
Scribor,	scribi,	scriptus,	To be written.
Cædor,	cædi,	cæsus,	To be slain.

## EXAMPLE OF VERBS IN -IO—PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Part.
Capior,	capi,	captus, To be taken.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
PRES. Cap-ior,	{ -ēris, or -ēre,	-itur;	-Imur,	-Imini,	-iuntur.	
IMP. Capi-ēbar,	{ -ēbāris, or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmini,	-ēbantur.	
PERF. Captus sum, or fui,	captus es, or fuisti, &c.					
PLUP. Captus eram, or fueram,	captus ēras, or fuēras, &c.					
FUT. Capi-ar,	{ -ēris, or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmini,	-entur.	
F. P. Captus fuēro,	captus fuēris. captus fuērit, &c.					

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Capi-ar,	{ -āris, or -āre,	-ātur,	-āmur,	-āmini,	-antur.
IMP. Cap-ērer,	{ -ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur,	-ēremur,	-ērēmini,	-ēreatur.
PERF. Captus sim, or fuērim,	captus sis, or fuēris, &c.				
PLUP. Captus essem, or fuissem,	captus esses, or fuisses, &c.				

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	2	3	2	3
PRES. Cap-ēre or -itor,	-itor.	-imīni,	-iuntor	

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Cap-i.

PERF. Captus, -a, -um.

PERF. Esse, or fuisse captus. FUT. Capiendus, -a, -um.

FUT. Captum iri.

So also Rapior, rapi, raptus, To be seized

## § 67. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1 *Give the designation, &c. as directed, § 59. 1.*—Regitur, regētur, regimini, rectus est, rectus fuērit, regērer, regar, regor, regēre, reguntor, rectus, rectum iri, rectus esse, regi, regēbātur, reguntur, regentur, rectus sim, rectus esset. Capiar, capiuntur, capiuntor, capiēbātur, captus sum, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed, § 59. 2.*—He is ruled, I was ruled, they will be ruled, they have been ruled, we might be ruled, he might have been ruled, they were ruled, ye had been ruled, to have been ruled, being ruled, to be ruled, let them be ruled.—They are taken, they will be taken, let them be taken, they have been taken, he will be taken, they might be taken, be thou taken, &c.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

3. *Give the designation, &c. as directed, § 57. 1; or § 59. 1.*—Regēbat, rexērunt, rexērat, reget, rexit, rexērint, lēgit, lēgit, leget, legat, legērit, scripsērit, scripsisse, scribitur, scriptus est, scriptum iri, lēgi, legēre, legisse, rexisse, lectus esse, legitor, rectus, regens, scripturus, scribendus, lectu, scribere, scripsere, legere, legere, legimini, capiunt, capiuntor, captus sum, capitor, capitor, cepērunt, cepērint, scriptum esse, rexi, regi, regam, regeret, &c.

4. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed, § 57. 2, or § 59. 2.*—I rule, I am ruled, he rules, they are ruled, they have ruled, they have been ruled, they will rule, he might rule, they might be ruled, we will read, he may have been taken, they will have been ruled, he might have written, to be ruled, rule thou, let him be ruled, they were writing, they might write, to have written, to have read, to have ruled, to have taken, they had written, had ruled, had read, had taken.



## § 68. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>Audīo,</i>	<i>audīre,</i>	<i>audīvi,</i>	<i>audītum, To hear</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *hear, do hear, am hearing*, § 44. I.

S. 1. <i>Aud-io,</i>	<i>I hear, do hear, am hearing,</i>
2. <i>Aud-is,</i>	<i>Thou hearest, dost hear, art hearing,</i>
3. <i>Aud-it,</i>	<i>He hears, does hear, is hearing;</i>
P. 1. <i>Aud-īmus,</i>	<i>We hear, do hear, are hearing,</i>
2. <i>Aud-ītis,</i>	<i>Ye hear, do hear, are hearing,</i>
3. <i>Aud-iunt,</i>	<i>They hear, do hear, are hearing.</i>

IMPERFECT, *heard, did hear, was hearing*, § 44. II.

S. 1. <i>Audi-ēbam,</i>	<i>I heard, did hear, was hearing,</i>
2. <i>Audi-ēbas,</i>	<i>Thou heardst, didst hear, wast hearing</i>
3. <i>Audi-ēbat,</i>	<i>He heard, did hear, was hearing;</i>
P. 1. <i>Audi-ēbāmus,</i>	<i>We heard, did hear, were hearing</i>
2. <i>Audi-ēbātis,</i>	<i>Ye heard, did hear, were hearing,</i>
3. <i>Audi-ēbant,</i>	<i>They heard, did hear, were hearing.</i>

PERFECT, Def. *have heard* ; Indef. *heard, did hear*, § 44. III.

S. <i>Audīv-i,</i>	<i>I have heard, heard, did hear,</i>
<i>Audīv-isti,</i>	<i>Thou hast heard, heardst, didst hear,</i>
<i>Audīv-it,</i>	<i>He has heard, heard, did hear ;</i>
P. <i>Audīv-īmus,</i>	<i>We have heard, heard, did hear,</i>
<i>Audīv-istis,</i>	<i>Ye have heard, heard, did hear,</i>
<i>Audīv-ērunt, or -ēre.</i>	<i>They have heard, heard, did hear.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had heard*, § 44. IV.

S. 1. <i>Audīv-ēram,</i>	<i>I had heard,</i>
2. <i>Audīv-ēras,</i>	<i>Thou hadst heard,</i>
3. <i>Audīv-ērat,</i>	<i>He had heard ;</i>
P. 1. <i>Audīv-ērāmus,</i>	<i>We had heard,</i>
2. <i>Audīv-ērātis,</i>	<i>Ye had heard,</i>
3. <i>Audīv-ērant,</i>	<i>They had heard.</i>

FUTURE, *shall*, or *will hear*, § 44. V.

- |                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| S. 1. Audi-am,   | <i>I shall, or will hear.</i>    |
| 2. Audi-es,      | <i>Thou shalt, or will hear,</i> |
| 3. Audi-et,      | <i>He shall, or will hear ;</i>  |
| P. 1. Audi-ēmus, | <i>We shall, or will hear,</i>   |
| 2. Audi-ētis,    | <i>Ye shall, or will hear,</i>   |
| 3. Audi-ent,     | <i>They shall, or will hear.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall*, or *will have heard*, § 44, VI.

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| S. 1. Audīv-ēro,    | <i>I shall, or will have heard,</i>    |
| 2. Audīv-ēris,      | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have heard,</i> |
| 3. Audīv-ērit,      | <i>He shall, or will have heard;</i>   |
| P. 1. Audīv-erīmus, | <i>We shall, or will have heard,</i>   |
| 2. Audīv-erītis,    | <i>Ye shall, or will have heard,</i>   |
| 3. Audīv-erint,     | <i>They shall, or will have heard.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can hear*, § 45. I.

- |                  |                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Audi-am,   | <i>I may, or can hear,</i>         |
| 2. Audi-as,      | <i>Thou mayest, or canst hear,</i> |
| 3. Audi-at,      | <i>He may, or can hear;</i>        |
| P. 1. Audi-āmus, | <i>We may, or can hear,</i>        |
| 2. Audi-ātis,    | <i>Ye may, or can hear,</i>        |
| 3. Audi-ant,     | <i>They may or can hear.</i>       |

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, § 45. II.

- |                   |                                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Aud-īrem,   | <i>I might, &amp;c. hear,</i>      |
| 2. Aud-īres,      | <i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. hear,</i> |
| 3. Aud-īret,      | <i>He might, &amp;c. hear;</i>     |
| P. 1. Aud-irēmus, | <i>We might, &amp;c. hear,</i>     |
| 2. Aud-irētis,    | <i>Ye might, &amp;c. hear,</i>     |
| 3. Aud-irent,     | <i>They might, &amp;c. hear.</i>   |

PERFECT, *may have heard*, § 45. III.

- |                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| S. 1. Audīv-ērim,   | <i>I may have heard,</i>      |
| 2. Audīv-ēris,      | <i>Thou mayst have heard,</i> |
| 3. Audīv-erit,      | <i>He may have heard;</i>     |
| P. 1. Audīv-erīmus, | <i>We may have heard,</i>     |
| 2. Audīv-erītis,    | <i>Ye may have heard,</i>     |
| 3. Audīv-erint,     | <i>They may have heard.</i>   |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should hear*, § 45. IV.

S. 1. Audīv-issem,	<i>I might, &amp;c. have heard,</i>
2. Audīv-isses,	<i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. have heard,</i>
3. Audīv-isset,	<i>He might, &amp;c. have heard ;</i>
P. 1. Audīv-issēmus,	<i>We might, &amp;c. have heard,</i>
2. Audīv-issētis,	<i>Ye might, &amp;c. have heard,</i>
3. Audīv-issent,	<i>They might, &amp;c. have heard.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD, § 42.

S. 2. Aud-ī, or -īto,	<i>Hear thou,</i>
3. Aud-īto,	<i>Let him hear;</i>
P. 2. Aud-īte, or -ītote,	<i>Hear ye, or you,</i>
3. Aud-iunto,	<i>Let them hear.</i>

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud-īre,	<i>To hear, § 47. 11.</i>
PERF. Audīv-isse,	<i>To have heard,</i>
FUT. Esse auditūrus,	<i>To be about to hear,</i>
F. PERF. Fuisse auditūrus,	<i>To have been about to hear.</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Aud-iens,	<i>Hearing,</i>
FUT. Aud-ītūrus,-a,-um,	<i>About to hear.</i>

#### GERUNDS

Nom. Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
Gen. Aud-iendi,	<i>Of hearing,</i>
Dat. Aud-iendo,	<i>To hearing,</i>
Acc. Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
Abl. Aud-iendo,	<i>With, &amp;c. hearing.</i>

#### SUPINES.

FORMER, Audit-um,	<i>To hear.</i>
LATTER, Audit-u,	<i>To be heard, or to hear.</i>

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles</i>
Pres.	Audio,	Audiam,	Audi.	Audire,	Audiens
Imp.	Audiēbam,	Audirem,			
Perf.	Audivi,	Audivērim,		Audivisse,	
Plu.	Audivēram,	Audivissem.			
F.	Audiam,			Esse auditūrus.	Auditūrus
F. perf.	Audivēro			Fuisse auditūrus.	

After the same manner inflect,

Munio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	<i>To fortify.</i>
Venio,	Venīre,	vēni,	ventum,	<i>To come.</i>
Vincio,	Vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	<i>To bind.</i>

## § 69. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation, &c. as directed, § 57. 1.*—Audio, audiunt, audivit, audiet, audirent, audī, audivisse, audivērant, audivērunt, muniant, munient, munivērunt, munivērint, munīunto, munīunt, venērat, venisset, vinxisti, vinxisse, vinciet, vincirent, vinciēbam, veniens, ventum, ventūrus, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, &c. as directed, § 57. 2.* I have heard, he heard, they were hearing, we will hear, you might hear, they could have heard, hear thou, let them hear, to have heard, hearing, to be about to hear, he shall have come, they will bind, let them bind, to have bound, binding, of binding, with binding, he had come, he had bound, they will fortify, I was hearing, they would have heard, the men (*homīnes*) may have heard, about to hear, of hearing, they had bound—may have bound—will have bound; bind ye, I have bound, to bind, to have bound, about to bind, binding, to have been about to fortify, to have fortified, &c.

3. *Translate according to the rule, § 57. 3. 4.* Dicit (*he says,*) me audire, vos audire, eos audivisse, hominem audītūrum esse, hominem audītūrum fuisse, homines audītūros esse, feminam f. (*that the woman*) ventūram esse,—ventūram fuisse, Dixit (*he said,*) se (*that he himself,*) venturum esse; eum (*that he, viz. some other person, not himself,*) ventūrum fuisse, nos ventūros esse, &c.

4. *As directed, § 57. 3. 5.* He says that I hear, that we hear, that they have heard, that they will hear, that he (*himself*) will come, that he (*some other*) will come, that the men will come, that the women will come, he said that he (*himself*) came, that he (*another*) came, that they had come, that they would come, that they would have come, that the women would come,—would have come, &c. He will say that I hear, that I heard, that I will hear

## § 70. PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Audior,	audīri,	audītus. <i>To be heard.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am heard*, § 44. I. 6.

<i>S.</i> 1. Aud-īor,	<i>I am heard,</i>
2. Aud-īris, or -īre,	<i>Thou art heard,</i>
3. Aud-ītur,	<i>He is heard ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Aud-īmur,	<i>We are heard,</i>
2. Aud-īmīni,	<i>Ye are heard,</i>
3. Aud-īuntur,	<i>They are heard.</i>

IMPERFECT, *was heard*, § 44. II. 4.

<i>S.</i> 1. Audi-ēbar,	<i>I was heard,</i>
2. Audi-ēbāris, or -ēbāre,	<i>Thou wast heard,</i>
3. Audi-ēbātur,	<i>He was heard ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Audi-ēbāmur,	<i>We were heard,</i>
2. Audi-ēbāmīni,	<i>Ye were heard,</i>
3. Audi-ēbantur,	<i>They were heard.</i>

PERFECT, *have been heard, was heard, am heard*, § 44. III. 5

<i>S.</i> 1. Audītus* sum, or fui,	<i>I have been heard,</i>
2. Audītus es, or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been heard,</i>
3. Audītus est, or fuit,	<i>He has been heard ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Audīti sumus, or fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard,</i>
2. Audīti estis, or fuistis,	<i>Ye have been heard,</i>
3. Audīti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre,	<i>They have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had been heard*.

<i>S.</i> 1. Audītus* ēram, or fuēram,	<i>I had been heard,</i>
2. Audītus ēras, or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been heard,</i>
3. Audītus ērat, or fuērat,	<i>He had been heard ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Audīti erāmus, or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been heard,</i>
2. Audīti erātis, or fuerātis,	<i>Ye had been heard,</i>
3. Audīti erant, or fuērant,	<i>They had been heard.</i>

\* See § 44. III. 6 Note.

**FUTURE, shall, or will be heard.**

- |                        |                                      |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Audi-ar,         | <i>I shall, or will be heard,</i>    |
| 2. Audi-ēris, or -ēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be heard,</i> |
| 3. Audi-ētur,          | <i>He shall, or will be heard;</i>   |
| P. 1. Audi-ēmur,       | <i>We shall, or will be heard,</i>   |
| 2. Audi-ēmini,         | <i>Ye shall, or will be heard,</i>   |
| 3. Audi-entur,         | <i>They shall, or will be heard.</i> |

**FUTURE-PERFECT, shall, or will have been heard.**

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| S. 1. Audītus fuēro,   | <i>I shall, or will have been heard,</i>    |
| 2. Audītus fuēris,     | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have been heard</i>  |
| 3. Audītus fuērit,     | <i>He shall, or will have been heard;</i>   |
| P. 1. Audīti fuerīmus, | <i>We shall, or will have been heard,</i>   |
| 2. Audīti fuerītis,    | <i>Ye shall, or will have been heard,</i>   |
| 3. Audīti fuērint,     | <i>They shall, or will have been heard.</i> |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**PRESENT TENSE, may, or can be heard.**

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| S. 1. Audi-ar,        | <i>I may, or can be heard,</i>         |
| 2. Audi-āris or -āre, | <i>Thou mayest, or canst be heard,</i> |
| 3. Audi-ātur,         | <i>He may, or can be heard;</i>        |
| P. 1. Audi-āmur,      | <i>We may, or can be heard,</i>        |
| 2. Audi-āmini,        | <i>Ye may, or can be heard,</i>        |
| 3. Audi-antur,        | <i>They may, or can be heard.</i>      |

**IMPERFECT, might, could, would, or should be heard.**

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| S. 1. Aud-īrer,           | <i>I might, &amp;c. be heard,</i>      |
| 2. Aud-īrēris, or -īrēre, | <i>Thou mightst, &amp;c. be heard,</i> |
| 3. Aud-īrētur,            | <i>He might, &amp;c. be heard,</i>     |
| P. 1. Aud-īrēmur,         | <i>We might, &amp;c. be heard,</i>     |
| 2. Aud-īrēmīni,           | <i>Ye might, &amp;c. be heard,</i>     |
| 3. Aud-īrentur,           | <i>They might, &amp;c. be heard.</i>   |

**PERFECT, may have been heard.**

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. Audītus sim, or fuērim,    | <i>I may have been heard,</i>      |
| 2. Audītus sis, or fuēris,       | <i>Thou mayest have been heard</i> |
| 3. Audītus sit, or fuērit,       | <i>He may have been heard;</i>     |
| P. 1. Audīti simus, or fuerīmus, | <i>We may have been heard,</i>     |
| 2. Audīti sitis, or fuerītis,    | <i>Ye may have been heard,</i>     |
| 3. Audīti sint, or fuērint,      | <i>They may have been heard</i>    |

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

Auditus essem, or fuissem,	<i>I might, &amp;c. have been heard,</i>
Auditus esses, or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightst have been heard,</i>
Auditus esset, or fuisset,	<i>He might have been heard ;</i>
Auditi essemus, or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been heard,</i>
Auditi essētis, or fuissētis,	<i>Ye might have been heard,</i>
Auditi essent, or fuissent,	<i>They might have been heard.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2. Aud-īre, or -ītor,	<i>Be thou heard,</i>
3. Aud-ītor,	<i>Let him be heard;</i>
P. 2. Aud-īmini,	<i>Be ye heard,</i>
3. Aud-iuntor,	<i>Let them be heard.</i>

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud-īri,	<i>To be heard, § 47. 11.</i>
PERF. Esse, or fuisse auditus,	<i>To have been heard.</i>
FUT. Audītum iri,	<i>To be about to be heard.</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Audītus -a -um,	<i>Heard, being heard, having been heard.</i>
FUT. Audiendus -a -um,	<i>To be heard, proper, or necessary to be heard.</i>

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imper.	Infinitive.	Part.
Pres. Audior,	Audiar,	Audire.	Audiri,	
Imp. Audiēbar,	Audīrer,			
Perf. Auditus sum,	Audītus sim,		Esse or fuisse	Auditus.
Plup. Auditus eram,	Auditus essem.		auditus,	
Fut. Audiar,			Auditum iri.	Audiendus.
F. P. Auditus fuero.				

After the same manner inflect,

Munior,	munīri,	munītus,	<i>To be fortified.</i>
Polior,	polīri,	polītus,	<i>To be polished.</i>
Vincior,	vincīri,	vinctus,	<i>To be bound.</i>

#### § 71. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation, &c. as directed, § 59. 1.—Audior, audiar, audiēbatur, audītus sum, audiētur, audīmini, audiēmīni, audiāmini, audirēmīni, audītus fuēris, audire, audiri.

audiuntur, audiuntor, audientur, audiantur, audīti sunt, audītus erat, muniēbantur, munitus fuērit, munitus esse, muniūtur, munitur, vincitur, vinciētur, vinciatur, vincitor, venitur.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed, § 59. 2.* He is heard, we were heard, he has been heard, they will be heard, ye may be heard, he should be heard, hear ye, to be heard, to be about to be heard, I was bound, he will be bound, they would be bound, we may have been bound, to be fortified, being fortified, to be about to be fortified, to have been fortified, &c.

#### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

3. *Give the designation, &c. as directed, § 59. 1.*—Audīvit, audīvēre, audiēbatur, audiretur, audiuntur, audiuntor, muniēnt, munivērint, muni, munire, munitor, muniens; veniat, ventum, veniendi, vēni, venēre, ventum erat, vinciunt, vinciuntor, vincirent, vinxisset, vinctus esset, vinctus fuerit, vēnit, vēnit, &c.

4. *Translate the following words into Latin, &c. as directed, § 57. 2; or 59. 2.*—I was heard, he heard, he has heard, we were heard, ye had been heard, they will be heard, they may be heard, they might have been heard, let them come, they should come, they will come, they will have come, I might have been bound, thou hast been bound, thou wilt be bound, thou art bound, thou wast bound, to be about to be bound, being bound, necessary to be bound, binding, &c.

5. *As directed, § 57. 3. 4.*—(*Dicit* he says) se audire, se audivisse, eum audītūrum esse, eos audītūros fuisse, eum audītum esse, nos audītum iri. (*Dixit* he said) nos audiri, vos auditos esse, illos audītūros esse, feminas audītūras fuisse, feminas audītum iri, vos vincire, vos vinciri, &c.

6. *Translate as directed, § 57. 5.*—He says (*dicit*) that he was heard, that he will hear, that he bound, that he was bound, that he will come, that we will not (*non*) come; he said (*dixit*) that he (*himself*) heard, that he (*some other*) heard, that we would hear, that they would have been heard, that we are bound, that we have been bound, that we would be bound, that he has polished,—has been polished, might have polished,—might have been polished, to have been polished—bound—fortified, proper to be fortified. He will say (*dicet*) that we will hear—will be heard—would have been bound—polished, &c.



## § 72. DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

1. **DEPONENT VERBS\*** are those which under a passive form have an active signification; *loquor*, "I speak;" *morior*, "I die."

2. **COMMON VERBS** are those which under a passive form have an active or passive signification; as, *criminator*, "I accuse," or "I am accused."

*Obs. 1.* All deponent verbs seem to have been originally passives. Hence there are many verbs which, though found in the active voice, are used as deponents in the passive.

*Obs. 2.* In common verbs the passive sense is generally confined to the perfect participle; thus, we can say, *adeptus victoriam*, "having obtained the victory;" or, *victoriā adeptā*, "the victory being obtained." Hence *adipiscor* is called a common verb, though in all its parts except the perfect participle, it is usually deponent, or has an active signification.

*Obs. 3.* Deponent verbs are conjugated and inflected like the passive voice of the conjugations to which they belong; except that they have also the participles, gerunds, supines and future of the infinitive like the active voice, § 49. 12. 13.

## § 73. EXAMPLE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
<i>Miror,</i>	<i>mirāri,</i>	<i>mirātus,</i>	<i>To admire</i>
[Inflected like <i>Amor</i> , § 58.]			

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PR.** *Mir-or, -āris, or -āre, &c.* *I admire, am admiring, &c.*

**IMP.** *Mir-ābar, -ābāris, or -ābāre, I admired, was admiring,*

**PER.** *Mirātus sum, or fui, &c.* *I have admired, I admired.*

**PLU.** *Mirātus -eram, or -fuēram, I had admired.*

**FUT.** *Mir-abor, -abēris, or -abēre I shall, or will admire.*

**F.P.** *Mirātus fuēro, &c.* *I shall, or will have admired.*

\* So called from *depono*, "I lay aside," because, as is supposed, having formerly been common verbs, they have laid aside the passive sense.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** Mir-er -ēris, or -ēre, &c. *I may, or can admire.*

**IMP.** Mir-ārer, -arēris, or -ārēre, *I might, &c. admire.*

**PERF.** Mirātus sim, or fuērim, &c. *I may have admired.*

**PLUP.** Mirātus essem, or fuisset, *I might, &c. have admired.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** Mir-āre, or -ātor, &c. *Admire thou, &c.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** Mirāri, *To admire, § 47. 11.*

**PERF.** Mirātus esse, or fuisse, *To have admired.*

**FUT.** Mirātūrus esse, *To be about to admire.*

**F. PERF.** Mirātūrus fuisse, *To have been about to admire.*

## PARTICIPLES.

**PRES.** Mirans, *Admiring.*

**PERF.** Mirātus, *Having admired.*

**F. ACT.** Mirātūrus, -a, -um, *About to admire.*

**F. PASS.** Mirandus, -a, -um, *To be admired, deserving, or proper to be admired.*

## GERUNDS.

**NOM.** Mirandum, *Admiring.*

**GEN.** Mirandi, &c. *Of admiring.*

## SUPINES.

**FORMER.** Mirātum, *To admire.*

**LATTER.** Mirātu, *To be admired.*

**SYNOPSIS** of the moods and tenses, as in *Amor*, § 58.

## § 74. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Deponents of the second conjugation are few in number. Of these, *medēor*, "to heal," has no participle of its own. In their stead, *medicātus* is used. *Merēor* has *merui*, as well as *meritus sum* in the perfect indicative. *Rēor* has no imperfect subjunctive.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Polliceōr,	pollicēri,	pollicītus,	<i>To promise.</i>
[Inflected like <i>Monēor</i> , § 62.]			

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollic-ēor, -ēris, or -ēre, &c.	<i>I promise, &amp;c.</i>
<b>IMP.</b>	Pollic-ēbar, -ēbāris, or -ēbāre, &c.	<i>I promised, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Pollicītus sum, or fui, &c.	<i>I have promised, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PLUP.</b>	Pollicītus eram, or fuēram, &c.	<i>I had promised, &amp;c.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Pollic-ēbor -ēbēris or -ēbēre, &c.	<i>I shall or will promise,</i>
<b>F. P.</b>	Pollicītus ēro, or fuēro, &c.	<i>I shall, or will have promised.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollic-ear, -āris, or -āre, &c.	<i>I may, or can promise, &amp;c.</i>
<b>IMP.</b>	Pollic-ērer, -ērēris, or -ērēre, &c.	<i>I might, &amp;c. promise.</i>
<b>PER.</b>	Pollicītus sim, or fuērim, &c.	<i>I may have promised, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PLUP.</b>	Pollicītus essem, or fuissem, &c.	<i>I might, &amp;c. have promised.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollic-ēre, or -ētor, &c.	<i>Promise thou, &amp;c.</i>
--------------	---------------------------	------------------------------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollicēri,	<i>To promise. § 47.11.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Pollicītus esse or fuisse,	<i>To have promised.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Pollicītūrus esse,	<i>To be about to promise.</i>
<b>F. PERF.</b>	Pollicītūrus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to promise</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollicens,	<i>Promising.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Pollicītus,	<i>Having promised.</i>
<b>FUT. ACT.</b>	Pollicītūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to promise.</i>
<b>FUT. PASS.</b>	Pollicendus, -a, -um,	<i>To be promised.</i>

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

<b>Nom.</b>	Pollicendum, <i>Promising.</i>	1. Pollicītum, <i>To promise.</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	Pollicendi, <i>Of promising.</i>	2. Pollicītu, <i>To be promised.</i>

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in § 62.

## § 75. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Utor	uti,	ûsus,	<i>To use.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Ut-or -ëris, or -ëre, &c.	<i>I use, do use, am using, &amp;c.</i>
<b>IMP.</b>	Ut-ëbar, -ëbâris, or -ëbâre, &c.	<i>I used, did use, was using, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Usus sum, or fui, &c.	<i>I have used, used, did use, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PLUP.</b>	Usus eram, or fuëram, &c.	<i>I had used, &amp;c.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Ut-ar, -ëris, or -ëre, &c.	<i>I shall, or will use, &amp;c.</i>
<b>F. P.</b>	Usus ëro, or fuëro, &c.	<i>I shall, or will have used, &amp;c.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<b>PRE.</b>	Ut-ar, -âris, or -âre, &c.	<i>I may, or can use, &amp;c.</i>
<b>IMP.</b>	Ut-ërer, -ërris or ërëre, &c.	<i>I might, could, &amp;c. use, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PER.</b>	Usus sim, or fuërim, &c.	<i>I may have used, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PLU.</b>	Usus essem, or fuïssem, &c.	<i>I might, &amp;c. have used, &amp;c.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Ut-ëre, or -itor, &c.	<i>Use thou, &amp;c.</i>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------------------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Uti,	<i>To use. § 47. 11.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Usus esse, or fuisse,	<i>To have used.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Usûrus esse,	<i>To be about to use.</i>
<b>F. P.</b>	Usûrus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to use.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PRES.</b>	Utens,	<i>Using.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Usus,	<i>Having used.</i>
<b>F. ACT.</b>	Usûrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to use.</i>
<b>F. PASS.</b>	Utendus, -a, -um,	<i>To be used, &amp;c.</i>

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

<b>NOM.</b>	Utendum,	<i>Using,</i>	<b>1.</b>	Usum,	<i>To use.</i>
<b>GEN.</b>	Utendi,	<i>Of using, &amp;c.</i>	<b>2.</b>	Usu,	<i>To be used, to use.</i>

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in § 66.

## § 76. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Pres. Ind.*      *Pres. Inf.*      *Perf. Part.*

*Metior.*      *metiri,*      *ensus,*      *To measure.*

**PR.** *Met-ior, -īris, or -īre, &c.*      *I measure, am measuring.*  
**IMP.** *Meti-ēbar, -ēbāris, or -ēbāre,*      *I measured, was measuring.*  
**PER.** *Mensus sum, or fui, &c.*      *I have measured, measured.*  
**PLU.** *Mensus ēram, or fuēram, &c.*      *I had measured.*  
**FUT.** *Meti-ar, -ēris, or -ēre, &c.*      *I shall, or will measure,*  
**F. P.** *Mensus ēro, or fuēro, &c.*      *I shall, or will have measured.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** *Meti-ar, -āris, or -āre, &c.*      *I may, or can measure.*  
**IMP.** *Meti-rer, -rēris, or -rēre,*      *I might, &c. measure.*  
**PERF.** *Mensus sim, or fuērim,*      *I may have measured.*  
**PLUP.** *Mensus essem, or fuissem,*      *I might, &c. have measured.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** *Met-īre or -ītor, &c.*      *Measure thou, &c.*

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** *Metiri,*      *To measure, § 47. 11.*  
**PERF.** *Mensus esse, or fuisse,*      *To have measured.*  
**FUT.** *Mensūrus esse,*      *To be about to measure.*  
**F. PER.** *Mensūrus fuisse,*      *To have been about to measure.*

### PARTICIPLES.

**PRES.**      *Metiens,*      *Measuring,*  
**PERF.**      *Mensus,*      *Having measured,*  
**FUT. ACT.** *Mensūrus, -a, -um,*      *About to measure,*  
**FUT. PASS.** *Metiendus, -a, -um,*      *To be measured.*

### GERUNDS.

### SUPINES

**N.** *Metiendum, Measuring.*      **1.** *Mensum, To measure,*  
**G.** *Metiendi, Of measuring, &c.*      **2.** *Mensu, To be measured*

**SYNOPSIS** of the Moods and Tenses, as in § 70.

§ 77. EXERCISES ON DEPONENT VERBS.

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Miror, I admire.</i>      | 3. <i>Utor, I use.</i>       |
| 2. <i>Polliceor, I promise.</i> | 4. <i>Metior, I measure.</i> |

1. Give the designation\* of the verb,—conjugate it,—give the tense, mood, person, number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order, thus;—*Miror*, verb, trans., deponent, first, *Miror*, *mirāri*, *mirātus*. It is found in the present indicative, first person, singular; “*I admire, do admire, am admiring.*”

*Mirābatur*, *mirābatur*, *mirantur*, *mirābuntur*, *mirārentur*, *pollicitus sum*, *pollicitus erat*, *pollicitus fuērit*, *pollicērentur*, *utitur*, *usus est*, *uti*, *usūrus*, *utens*, *utendum*, *utērētur*, *utar*, *metiris*, *metiuntur*, *metiuntor*, *metimīni*, *mensus erat*, *mensus sit*, *mensi fuērunt*, *utēre*, *utēre*, *pollicēre*, *pollicitus*, *pollicens*.

2. Translate the following English words into Latin, naming the part of the verb used; thus, “*I have admired*,” *miratus sum*: In the perfect indicative, first person, singular.

They will use, we shall measure, let them measure, about to use, we have used, they may have used, he will have used, they will promise, they would have promised, we might admire, I would have used, use thou, let them use, promise ye, let us use, (§ 45. I. 1.) let us admire, they have promised, promising, having promised, to measure, let us measure.

3. Translate the following into English, according to the Rules and Examples, § 57. 3. 4.—*Dicit* (*he says*) *me mirāri*, *vos pollicēri*, *nos mirātos esse*, *eos pollicitūros esse*, *homines mensūros esse*, *feminas pollicitūras esse*, *te uti*, *se mirāri*, *eum mirāri*, *me mensūrum esse*, *vos usūros*, (§ 47. Note 1.) *dicitur* (*he is said*) *pollicitus esse*, (§ 47. 6.) *Dixit* (*he said*) *se mirāri*, *nos pollicitos esse*, *eos pollicitūros*, *vos mensos esse*, *feminas mensūras*, *eum pollicitum*.

4. Translate the following into Latin, according to direction, § 57. 5.—He says (*dicit*) that I am using, that thou admirest, that he has measured, that we will promise, that the men will measure, that the women will use, that you will measure, that I would have used, that they would have admired, that they admired. He said (*dixit*) that I was using,—had been using, that you were measuring, that he measured, that they had promised, that they would use.

\* In parsing deponent verbs, it is necessary in giving the designation to state whether the verb, as there used, is *transitive* or *intransitive*: But in stating the part of the verb used, it is unnecessary to mention the *voice*, because deponent verbs have only the passive form.

## § 78 NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

1. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS, are those which with an intransitive or neut. meaning throughout, have a passive form in the perfect, and tenses derived from it, but an active form in the other tenses. They are the following.

*Second Conjugation.*

Audĕo,	audĕre,	ausus,	<i>To dare.</i>
Gaudĕo,	gaudĕre,	gāvīsus,	<i>To rejoice.</i>
Soleo,	solĕre,	solītus,	<i>To be wont.</i>

*Third Conjugation.*

Fido,	fidĕre,	fīsus,	<i>To trust.</i>
-------	---------	--------	------------------

So also the compounds of *fido*, *confīdo*, "I trust," and *diffīdo*, "I distrust," which have also *confīdi*, and *diffīdi*, in the perfect. Neuter-passives are inflected thus,

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Audĕo,	audĕre,	ausus,	<i>To dare.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud-ĕo, -es, -et, &c.	<i>I dare, do dare, am daring.</i>
IMP. Aud-ĕbam, -ēbas, ēbat, &c.	<i>I dared, was daring, &amp;c.</i>
PERF. Ausus sum, or fui, &c.	<i>I have dared, dared, did dare</i>
PLUP. Ausus ēram, or fuēram,	<i>I had dared.</i>
FUT. Aud-ēbo, -ēbis, -ēbit, &c.	<i>I shall, or will dare.</i>
F.P. Ausūs fuĕro, &c.	<i>I shall have dared.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud-ĕam, -ĕas, -ĕat, &c.	<i>I may, or can dare.</i>
IMP. Aud-ĕrem, -ĕres, -ĕret, &c.	<i>I might, could &amp;c. dare.</i>
PERF. Ausus sim, or fuĕrim, &c.	<i>I may have dared.</i>
PLUP. Ausus essem, or fuīsssem, &c.	<i>I might, &amp;c. have dared.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud-ĕ, or -ĕto, &c.	<i>Dare thou, &amp;c.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Audĕre,	<i>To dare, § 47. 11.</i>
PERF. Ausus esse, or fuīsse,	<i>To have dared.</i>
FUT. Ausūrus esse,	<i>To be about to dare.</i>
F. PERF. Ausūrus fuīsse,	<i>To have been about to dare.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Audens,	<i>Daring,</i>
PERF.	Ausus, -a, -um,	<i>Having dared.</i>
FUT. ACT.	Ausurus, -a, -um,	<i>About to dare.</i>
FUT. PASS.	Audendus, a, -um,	<i>To be dared, &amp;c. (seldom used.)</i>

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

*Nom.* Audendum, *Daring.* 1. Ausum, *To dare.*  
*Gen.* Audendi, &c. *Of daring.* 2. Ausu, *To be dared, to dare.*

2. The following verbs are called *Neutral Passives*, namely *fio*, "I am made," or "I become;" *vapulo*, "I am beaten;" *venëo*, "I am sold." They have an active form, but a passive signification, and serve as passives to *facio*, *verbëro* and *vendo*. *Fio* has the passive form in the preterite tenses, § 83. 8.

## § 79. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

1. The perfect and pluperfect active, both in the indicative and subjunctive, are often shortened by a syncope as follows :

1st. In the first conjugation *avi* and *ave* often drop *vi* and *ve* before *s* or *r*, and circumflex the *a*, thus ; for *amāvisti*, *amavissem*, *amāvëram*, *amāvëro*, *amāvërim*, &c. we often have *amāsti*, *amāssem*, *amāram*, *amāro*, *amārim*, &c. Also in the second and third conjugation *-evi*, drops *vi* in the same situation ; as, *complësti*, for *complëvist*i ; *deltëram*, for *deltëvëram* ; *decrësssem*, for *decrevissem* ; &c. But *ovi* is syncopeated only in the preterite verb *novi*, and the compounds of *movëo* ; as, *nörrant*, for *novërant* ; *nösse*, for *novisse* ; *commössem*, for *commovissem*, &c.

2d. In the fourth conjugation *ivi*, frequently loses *vi* before *s* ; as, *audisti*, for *audivisti* ; *audissem*, for *audivissem*. Sometimes the *v* only is dropped between two vowels : as, *audii* for *audivi* ; *auditräm* for *audivëram*, &c. And so also with other preterites of the same form, with the tenses derived from them ; as, *petii* for *petivi* ; *iträm* for *ivëram*, &c.

2. The perfect indicative active, third person, plural, has two forms, *-erunt* and *-ëre*. Both forms have the same mean-



ing, the first is more common with the earlier, and the second with the later writers.

3. In the passive voice there are two forms of the second person, singular, namely, *-ris* and *-re*. The termination *-re* is rarely used in the present indicative; in the other tenses *-re* is more common than *-ris*, especially in Cicero.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *duco*, *facio* and *fero*, are usually written *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, *fer*; also in their compounds except in those of *facio* which change *a* into *i*; as *confice*, *perfice*, &c.

5. In the old forms of the language, the present infinitive passive was lengthened, especially among the poets, by adding *-er*; as, *amārier* for *amāri*;—*legier* for *legi*, &c.

6. The terminations *-rimus* and *-ritis* in the Future-perfect indicative, and Perfect subjunctive, have the *i* sometimes long and sometimes short. It is marked short in the preceding paradigms. The pupil may be accustomed to give it both ways.

7. In the passive voice, the perfect and pluperfect have two forms. Of these, the perfect participle with *fui* and *fuëram* expresses the completion of past action more emphatically than when joined with *sum* and *ëram*. Thus, *pransus sum* means, "I have dined," "I have just dined;" *pransus fui*, means, "I have dined some time ago." § 49. 14.

8. The verb *sum*, through all its tenses with the future participle in *-rus*, is used to express the intention, at the time referred to, of doing a thing presently, or that the action is, or was, or will be on the point of being done. When this idea is to be conveyed, this form of expression is used in preference to the Future, which simply denotes that an act will be effected in future time. This, which proceeds as follows, is sometimes called the,

#### FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. Amatûrus (-a -um) sum,	<i>I am about to love,</i>
IMP. Amatûrus ëram,	<i>I was about to love,</i>
PERF. Amatûrus fui,	<i>I have been about to love,</i>
PLUP. Amatûrus fuëram,	<i>I had been about to love,</i>
FUT. Amatûrus ëro,	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>

Amatûrus fuëro, is not used.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRE. Amatūrus sim, *I may be about to love,*  
 IMP. Amatūrus essem, *I might, &c. be about to love.*  
 PER. Amatūrus fuerim, *I may have been about to love,*  
 PLUP. Amatūrus fuisset, *I might, &c. have been about to love.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Amatūrus esse, *To be about to love.*  
 PERF. Amatūrus fuisse, *To have been about to love.*

9. In like manner, the future participle in *-dus*, expressing *propriety* or *necessity* of doing at the time referred to, is joined with all the tenses of the verb *sum*, and thus forms what is called the,

## SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

Thus, PR. Amandus sum, *I deserve, or ought to be loved,*  
 IMP. Amandus eram, *I deserved, or ought to be loved. &c.*

and so forth through all the other tenses, as with the participle in *-rus*, No. 8. In analyzing such expressions, however, it is better to parse each word of the compound separately, and combine them by the rules of syntax. A stronger necessity is expressed by the Gerund, with the verb *est*; thus, *scribendum est mihi epistolam*, is "I **MUST** write a letter, i. e. I am COMPELLED to do it, whereas, *scribenda est mihi epistola*, means simply, "I should write a letter," see syntax, § 147.

10. The future infinitive passive is a compound of *iri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*, "to go," used impersonally, and the supine in *-um*; so that *amatum iri*, literally is "to be going to love."

11. The verbal adjective in *-bundus*, is rendered like the present participle, but with increased strength; thus, *errans* wandering; *errabundus*, "wandering too and fro;" *moriens*, "dying;" *moribundus*, "in the agonies of death," &c.

12. The meaning and use of the Gerundive participle already mentioned, § 49. 7, will be more fully explained in Syntax, § 147. Rule LXII.

## § 80. COMPOUND VERBS.

Verbs are compounded chiefly with prepositions, which modify the simple verb according to their respective meanings; thus, *eo* "I go" in composition with different prepositions is modified by them; as, *adeo* "I go to;" *abeo*, "I go from;" *exeo*, "I go out;" *ineo*, "I go in," &c. In the formation of compounds due regard must be paid to the following

## GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound verbs form the perfect and supine in the same manner as simple verbs; as, *Amo*, *amāre*, *amāvi*, *amātum*; *red-amō*, *red-amāre*, *red-amāvi*, *red-amātum*.

2. Simple verbs which double the first syllable in the perfect, drop the reduplication in the compounds; as *pello*, *pe-puli*; *re-pello*, *re-puli*. Except *præcurro*, *re-pungo*, and the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*.

3. Compound verbs which change *a* of the present into *i*, have *e* in the Supine; as, *facio*, *per-ficio*. Sup. *perfectum*. Except verbs ending in *-do*, *-go*; with the compounds of *habeo*, *placeo*, *salio*, *sapio*, and *statuo*.

4. Verbs which are defective in the Perfect likewise want the Supine.

5. The following changes, which happen to the preposition, and to the simple verb, in a state of composition, merit attention.

*A* is used in composition before *m* and *r*. *Ab* before vowels, and *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *s*. Before *fero* and *fugio*, it becomes *au*; as, *aufero*, *aufugio*. *Abs* is used before *c* and *t*: as, *abscedo*, *abstuli*.

*Ad* changes *d* into the first letter of the simple beginning with *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*: as, *accurro*, *afficio*, *aggero*. In some writers it remains unaltered, as *adfacio*.

*Am*, (i. e. *ambi*, from *αμφί*, *circum*,) before *c*, *q*, *f*, *h*, is changed into *an*: as, *anquiro*, *anhelo*. Sometimes it assumes its own *b*: as, *ambio*.

*Circum* remains unaltered. The *m* is sometimes changed: as, *circundo* for *circumdo*; or omitted: as, *circueo* for *circumeo*.

*Con*, before a vowel or *h*, drops the *n*: as, *coaleo*, *cohibeo*; before *l*, its *n* becomes *l*; and before *b*, *p*, *m*, it becomes *m*; and before *r* it changes *n* into *r*; as, *colligo*, *comburo*, *comparo*, *commeo*, *corripio*. In *comburo* it assumes *b* after it.

*Di* is used before *d*, *g*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *v*: as, *diduco*, *digladiator*. *Dis* and *di* before *r*: as, *dirumpo*, *dirumpo*; likewise before *j*: as, *disjudico*, *dijudico*. *Dts* is used before *c*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*: as, *discumbo*, *dis-*

*pelio* Before *sp* and *st*, *s* is removed, and before *f* it is changed into *f*: as, *dispicio*, *disto*, *diffiteor*. Before a vowel, it assumes *r*; as, *dirimo*, from *emo*.

*E* is sound before *b*, *d*, *g*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and before *j* and *v*: as, *ebibo*, *educo*, *ejicio*, *eveho*. *Ex* is used before vowels, and *h*, *c*, *p*, *q* *t*, *s*: as, *exaro* *exhibeo* *excutio*; before *f*, *x* becomes *f*: as, *effica*.

*In* sometimes changes *n* into the first letter of the simple verb: as, *illudo*; but before *b*, *m*, *p*, it changes *n* into *m*: as, *imbibo*, *immineo*, *impleo*.

*Ob* generally remains unaltered. The *b* is sometimes omitted, as in *omitto*; or changed into the first letter of the simple verb: as, *offero*.

*Re* assumes *d* before *d*, a vowel, or *h*: as, *reddo*, *redamo*, *redeo*, *redhibeo*. *Pro* likewise sometimes takes a *d*, as in *prodeo*.

*Sub* changes *b* into the consonant of the simple, before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, *r*: as, *succedo*, *suffero*, *suggero*. *Submitto* and *summitto*; *submoveo*, and *summoveo*, are both used.

*Trans* is generally contracted into *tra*, before *d*, *j*, *n*: as, *trado*, *trajicio*, *trano*; and sometimes before *l* and *m*: as, *traluceo*, *trameo*. *Post* becomes *pos* in *postuli*. Few if any changes take place in the other prepositions. Other prefixes consist of verbs, as in *calefacio*, of *caleo*; of adverbs, as in *benefacio*, of *bene*; of participles and adjectives, as in *mansuefacio*, *magnifico*, of *mansuetus* and *magnus*; of substantives, as in *significo*, of *signum*; of a preposition and noun, as in *animadverto*, of *ad* and *animus*.

## § 81. LIST OF VERBS IRREGULAR IN THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

[Owing to the irregularity of many verbs in the Preterite and Supine in the third conjugation, and of not a few in the other conjugations also, no rules that could be given would be of much practical utility. The only effectual way to attain accuracy and readiness in the conjugation of verbs, is to commit the primary parts or the conjugation accurately from the Dictionary. To be able to do this as soon as possible, is of great importance to every scholar; and it is not a task of so great difficulty as might be supposed. The following list contains all the simple verbs that vary in the preterite and supine, from the general rule. By committing a portion of these to memory every day, to be recited with the ordinary lesson, and repeating this exercise in revisals till the whole is inwrought into the memory, much future labor will be saved; and this can be done in a few weeks, without at all interfering with the regular recitations. When the composition of a verb changes its form, it is noticed at the foot of the page, to which reference is made by numbers.]

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

**RULE.**—Verbs of the First Conjugation have *avi* in the Perfect, and *atum* in the Supine : as,

Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	To love.
Muto,	mutāre,	mutāvi,	mutātum,	To change.

## EXCEPTIONS.

The Tenses of some Verbs included in the lists of Exceptions are also found, especially in the earliest authors, conjugated according to the General Rules. The form here given is that which is in common use.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	
Do, <sup>1</sup>	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	To give.
Sto, <sup>2</sup>	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	To stand
Lāvo,	{ lavāre, lavēre.	lāvi,	{ lōtum, lautum, lavātum,	To wash.
Pōto	potāre,	potāvi.	{ pōtum, or potātum,	To drink.
Jūvo, <sup>3</sup>	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	To assist.
Cūbo.	cubāre,	cubui,	cubitum,	To lie.
Dōmo.	domāre,	domui,	domitum,	To subdue.
Sōno, <sup>6</sup>	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum,	To sound.

<sup>1</sup> *Circundo*, to surround; *pessundo*, to ruin; *satisdo*, to give surety; and *venundo*, to sell, are conjugated like *do*. The other Compounds belong to the Third Conjugation, and have *didi* in the Perfect, and *ditum* in the Supine : as, *abdo*, *abdidi*, *abditum*, *abdere*, to hide; *reddo*, *reddidi*, *redditum*, to give back.

<sup>2</sup> The Compounds of *sto* have *stiti* in the Perfect, and *stātum* in the Supine: as, *consto*, *constiti*, *constātum*, to stand together. Some of the Compounds have occasionally *stitum* in the Supine: as, *præsto*, *præstiti*, *præstitum*, or *præstātum*, to stand before, to excel. *Adsto*, to stand by, *insto*, to urge on, and *resto*, to remain over and above, have no Supine. *Antesto*, to stand before; *circumsto*, to stand round; *instersto*, to stand between; and *supersto*, to stand over, have *stiti* in the Perfect, and the first two, and probably the others also, want the Supine. *Disto* to be distant, and *substo* to stand under, have neither Perfect nor Supine.

<sup>3</sup> The Supine *jūtum* is doubtful, as the Future Participle is *juvaturus*. *Adjūvo* has *adjūtum* only, and *adjuturus*.

<sup>4</sup> In the same manner those Compounds are conjugated which do not assume an *m*: as, *accubo*, to lie next to; *excubo*, to watch; *incubo*, to lie upon; *recubo*, to lie down again; *secubo*, to lie apart. The Compounds which assume an *m* belong to the Third Conjugation, and have *ui* and *itum* in the Perfect and Supine: as, *incumbo*, *incubui*, *incubitum*, to lie upon.

<sup>6</sup> The Future Participle is *sonaturus*.

	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<sup>6</sup> <i>no</i> ,	<i>tonāre</i> ,	<i>tonui</i> ,	<i>tonitum</i> .	<i>To thunder.</i>
<i>vēto</i> ,	<i>vetāre</i> ,	<i>vetui</i> ,	<i>vetitum</i> ,	<i>To forbid.</i>
<i>Crēpo</i> ,	<i>crepāre</i> ,	<i>crepui</i> ,	<i>crepītum</i> ,	<i>To make a noise.</i>
<i>Mico</i> ,	<i>micāre</i> ,	<i>micui</i> ,	_____	<i>To glitter.</i>
<i>Frico</i> ,	<i>fricāre</i> ,	<i>fricui</i> ,	<i>frictum</i> ,	<i>To rub.</i>
<i>Sēco</i> ,	<i>secāre</i> ,	<i>secui</i> ,	<i>sectum</i> ,	<i>To cut.</i>
<i>Nēco</i> ,	<i>necāre</i> ,	{ <i>necāvi</i> , or <i>necui</i> ,	<i>necātum</i> ,	<i>To kill.</i>
<i>Lābo</i> ,	<i>labāre</i> ,	_____	_____	<i>To fall, or faint.</i>
<i>Nexo</i> ,	<i>nexāre</i> ,	_____	_____	<i>To bind.</i>
<i>Plico</i> ,	<i>plicāre</i> ,	_____	_____	<i>To fold.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

**RULE.**—Verbs of the Second Conjugation have *ui* in the Perfect, and *itum* in the Supine : as,

<i>Mōneo</i> ,	<i>monēre</i> ,	<i>monui</i> ,	<i>monītum</i> ,	<i>To advise.</i>
<i>Hābeo</i> ,	<i>habēre</i> ,	<i>habui</i> ,	<i>habītum</i> ,	<i>To have.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

Intransitives which have *ui* in the Perfect, want the Supine : as, *splendeo*, *splendui*, to shine ; *mādeo*, *madui*, to be wet.

The following Intransitives have *ui* and *itum*, according to the general rule :

*Cāleo*, to be hot.

*Coāleo*, to grow together.

*Cāreo*, to want.

*Dōleo*, to grieve.

<sup>6</sup> *Intōno* has *intonātus* in the Perfect Participle.

<sup>7</sup> *Vēto* has sometimes *vetāvi* in the Perfect.

<sup>8</sup> *Discrēpo*, to differ, and *incrēpo*, to chide, have sometimes *āvi* and *ātum*, as well as *ui* and *itum*. *Incrēpo* has seldom the latter form.

<sup>9</sup> *Emico*, to shine forth, has *emicui*, *emicātum* ; and *dimico*, to fight, has *dimicāvi* (rarely *dimicui*,) *dimicātum*.

<sup>10</sup> Some of the Compounds of *frico* have the Participles formed from the regular Supine in *ātum* : as, *confricātus*, *infricātus*.

<sup>11</sup> *Enēco*, to kill, and *internēco*, to destroy, have also *ui* and *ectum* : the Participle of *eneco* is usually *enectus*.

<sup>12</sup> *Duplico*, to double, *multiplico*, to multiply ; *replico*, to unfold, and *supplico*, to entreat humbly, have *āvi* and *ātum*. The other Compounds of *plico* have either *ui* and *itum*, or *āvi* and *ātum* : as, *applico*, to apply, *applicui*, *applicitum*, or *applicāvi*, *applicātum*. *Explico*, in the sense of *explain*, has *āvi* and *ātum* ; in the sense of *unfold*, it has *ui* and *itum*.

<sup>1</sup> The Compounds of *hābeo* change *a* into *i* : as, *adhībeo*, *adhībui*, *adhībītum*, to admit ; *prohibeo*, *prohibui*, *prohibītum*, to forbid.

*Jáceo* to lie.  
*Láteo* <sup>2</sup> to lie hid.  
*Liceo*, to be valued.  
*Méreo*, to deserve.

*Nóceo*, to hurt.  
*Páreo*, to appear.  
*Pláceo*, to please.  
*Váleo*, to be in health.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Dóceo</i> ,	<i>docēre</i> ,	<i>docui</i> ,	<i>doctum</i> ,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>Tēneo</i> , <sup>3</sup>	<i>tenēre</i> ,	<i>tenui</i> ,	<i>tentum</i> ,	<i>To hold.</i>
<i>Misceo</i> ,	<i>miscēre</i> ,	<i>miscui</i> ,	<i>mistum</i> , or	<i>To mix.</i>
			<i>mixtum</i> ,	
<i>Censeo</i> , <sup>4</sup>	<i>censēre</i> ,	<i>cenſui</i> ,	<i>censum</i> ,	<i>To think, to judge</i>
<i>Torreo</i> ,	<i>torrēre</i> ,	<i>torrui</i> ,	<i>tostum</i> ,	<i>To roast.</i>
<i>Sorbeo</i> , <sup>5</sup>	<i>sorbēre</i> ,	<i>sorbui</i> ,	<i>sorptum</i> ,	<i>To sup.</i>
<i>Tímeo</i> ,	<i>timēre</i> ,	<i>timui</i> ,	—————	<i>To fear.</i>
<i>Síleo</i> ,	<i>silēre</i> ,	<i>silui</i> ,	—————	<i>To be silent.</i>
<i>Arceo</i> , <sup>6</sup>	<i>arcēre</i> ,	<i>arcul</i> ,	—————	<i>To drive away.</i>
<i>Táceo</i> , <sup>7</sup>	<i>tacēre</i> ,	<i>tacui</i> ,	<i>tacitum</i> ,	<i>To be silent.</i>
<i>Prandeo</i> , <sup>8</sup>	<i>prandēre</i> ,	<i>prandi</i> ,	<i>pransum</i> ,	<i>To dine.</i>
<i>Vídeo</i> ,	<i>vidēre</i> ,	<i>vidi</i> ,	<i>visum</i> ,	<i>To see.</i>
<i>Sēdeo</i> , <sup>9</sup>	<i>sedēre</i> ,	<i>sēdi</i> ,	<i>sessum</i> ,	<i>To sit.</i>
<i>Strídeo</i> ,	<i>stridēre</i> ,	<i>strídi</i> ,	—————	<i>To make a noise.</i>
<i>Frendeo</i> ,	<i>frendēre</i> ,	<i>frendi</i> ,	<i>fressum</i> ,	<i>To gnash the teeth.</i>
<i>Mordeo</i> , <sup>10</sup>	<i>mordēre</i> ,	<i>momordi</i> ,	<i>morsum</i> ,	<i>To bite.</i>
<i>Pendeo</i> ,	<i>pendēre</i> ,	<i>pendi</i> ,	<i>pensum</i> ,	<i>To hang.</i>
<i>Spondeo</i> ,	<i>spondēre</i> ,	<i>spopondi</i> ,	<i>sponsum</i> ,	<i>To promise.</i>
<i>Tondeo</i> ,	<i>tondēre</i> ,	<i>totondi</i> ,	<i>tonsum</i> ,	<i>To clip.</i>

<sup>2</sup> The Compounds of *láteo* want the Supine: as, *delíteo*, *delítui*, to lurk; *perláteo*, *perlatui*, to lie hid.

<sup>3</sup> The Compounds of *tēneo* change *e* into *i*: as *contíneo*, *continui*, *contentum*, to hold together. *Attíneo*, to hold; and *pertíneo*, to belong to, have no Supine; and *abstíneo*, to abstain from, seldom.

<sup>4</sup> *Censeo* has also *census sum* in the Perfect, and *censitum* in the Supine, *Accenseo*, to reckon with, and *percenseo*, to recount, want the Supine; and *recenseo*, to review, has *recensum*, and *recensitum*.

<sup>5</sup> *Absorbeo*, to sup up, and *exsorbeo*, to sup out, have sometimes *absorpsi*, and *exsorpsi* in the Perfect. The latter, with *resorbeo*, to draw back, has no Supine.

<sup>6</sup> The Compounds of *arceo* have *itum* in the Supine: as, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercitum*, to exercise.

<sup>7</sup> The Compounds of *táceo* want the Supine: as, *contíceo*, *conticeo*, to keep silence; *retíceo*, *reticui*, to remain silent, to conceal.

<sup>8</sup> The Participle *pransus* is used in the Active sense of *having dined*.

<sup>9</sup> *Desideo*, to sit idle, *disideo*, to disagree, *perideo*, to continue, *præideo*, to sit before, *resideo*, to sit down, to rest, and *subsideo*, to subside, want the Supine.

<sup>10</sup> The Compounds of *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*, do not double the first syllable of the Perfect. See Rule 2, § 80. *Impendeo* to overhang, has no Perfect or Supine.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Mōveo, <sup>11</sup>	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	To move
Fōveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	To cherish.
Vōveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	votum,	To vow.
Fāveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	To favour.
Cāveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	To beware of
Pāveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	—	To be afraid.
Ferveo, <sup>12</sup>	servēre,	servui,	—	To boil.
Conniveo,	connivēre,	connīvi or -ixi,	—	To wink.
Dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	To destroy.
Compleo, <sup>13</sup>	complēre,	complēvi,	complētum,	To fill.
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	To weep.
Neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	To spin. [sel.
Vieo,	viēre,	viēvi,	viētum,	To hoop a ves-
Cieo, <sup>14</sup>	ciēre,	(civi,)	citum,	To stir up.
Oleo, <sup>15</sup>	olēre,	olui,	(olitum,)	To smell.
Suādeo,	suadēre,	suāsi,	suāsum,	To advise.
Rideo,	ridēre,	risi,	risum,	To laugh.
Māneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	To stay.
Hæreo,	hærēre,	hæsi,	hæsum,	To stick.
Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	To burn.
Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	To wipe.
Mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	To stroke.
Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	{ mulsum, or muletum,	To milk.
Jūbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	To order.
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	To indulge.
Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	To twist.
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	To increase.
Urgeo,	urgēre,	ursi,	—	To press.
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	—	To shine.
Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi,	—	To swell.

<sup>11</sup> Verbs in *veo* undergo a contraction in the Supine. Neuter Verbs in *veo* want the Supine: as, *pāveo pāvi*, to be afraid.

<sup>12</sup> *Fervo*, *servi*, another form of this Verb belonging to the Third Conjugation, is used in a few persons, and in the Present Infinitive.

<sup>13</sup> The other Compounds of the obsolete Verb *pleo* are conjugated in the same way: as, *expleo*, *impleo*, *repleo*, *suppleo*.

<sup>14</sup> *Civi* is the Perfect of *cio* of the Fourth Conjugation, having *ctum* in the Supine. The Compounds, in the sense of *calling*, are generally conjugated according to this form: as *excio*, *excitum*.

<sup>15</sup> The Compounds of *oleo* which retain the sense of the Simple Verb have *ui* and *itum*: as, *oboleo obolui*, *obolitum*, to smell strongly. The Compounds which adopt a different signification have *ēvi* and *etum*: as, *exoleo*, *exolēvi*, *exolētum*, to fade; *obsoleo*, *obsolēvi*, *obsoletum*, to grow out of use; *inoleo*, *inolēvi*, *inolētum*, or *inolitum*, to come into use. *Aboleo*, to abolish, has *abolēvi*, *abolitum*; and *adoleo*, to grow up, to burn, has *adolēvi*, *adultum*.



Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	—	To be cold.
Lūgeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	—	To mourn.
Luceo,	lucēre,	luxi,	—	To shine.
Frigeo,	frigere,	frixi,	—	To be cold.

The following Verbs want both Perfect and Supine :

Aveo, to desire.	Liveo, to be black and blue.
Denseo, to grow thick.	Mæreo, to be sorrowful.
Flaveo, to be yellow.	Renideo, to shine.
Glabreo, to be smooth.	Polleo, to be powerful.
Hæbeo, to be blunt.	Scæteo, to flow out.
Lacteo, to grow milky.	

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Perfect and Supine variously.

#### IO.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	
Facio, <sup>1</sup>	facēre,	fēci,	factum,	To do, to make
Jacio, <sup>2</sup>	jacēre,	jēci,	jactum,	To throw.
Aspicio, <sup>3</sup>	aspicēre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	To behold.
Allicio,	allicēre,	allexi,	allectum,	To allure.
Fodio,	fodēre,	fōdi,	fossam,	To dig.
Fugio,	fugēre,	fūgi,	fugitum,	To fly.
Cāpio, <sup>4</sup>	capēre,	cēpi,	captum,	To take.
Rāpio,	rapēre,	rapui,	raptum,	To seize
Sāpio,	sapēre,	sapui,	—	To taste, to be wise.
Cūpio,	cupēre,	cupivi,	cupitum,	To desire.
Pāpio, <sup>5</sup>	parēre,	pēpēri,	{ partum, or paritum.	To bring forth.

<sup>1</sup> *Facio*, when compounded with a Preposition, changes *a* into *i*: as, *afficio*, *affeci*, *affectum*, to affect. In the other Compounds the *a* is retained. A few Compounds end in *f-co*, and *fico*, and belong to the First Conjugation: as, *amplif-co*, to enlarge; *sacrifico*, to sacrifice: *gratificor*, to gratify; and *ludificor*, to mock.

<sup>2</sup> The Compounds of *jacio*, change *a* into *i*: as *abjicio*, *abjēci*, *abjectum*.

<sup>3</sup> The Compounds of the obsolete Verbs *spicio*, and *lacio*, have *exi*, and *ectum*; except *elicio*, to draw out, which has *elicui*, and *elictum*.

<sup>4</sup> The Compounds of *cāpio*, *rāpio*, and *sāpio*, change *a* into *i*: as, *acc-pio*, *acc-pi*, *acceptum*, to receive; *abripio*, *abripui*, *abreptum*, to carry off; *conspicio*, *conspui*, to be in one's senses.

<sup>5</sup> The Compounds of *pāpio* have *perui* and *pertum*, and belong to the Fourth Conjugation: as, *apērio*, *aperire*, *aperui*, *apertum*, to open. So *opērio*, to shut, to cover. But *compērio*, (which also has a

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Quatio, <sup>6</sup>	quatōre,	(quassi,)	quassum,	To shake.
UO.				
Acuo,	acuēre,	acui,	acūtum,	To sharpen.
Arguo,	arguēre,	argui,	argūtum,	To show, to prove
Batuo,	batuēre,	batui,	batūtum,	To beat.
Exuo,	exuēre,	exui,	exūtum,	To put off clothes.
Imbuo,	imbuēre,	imbui,	imbūtum,	To moisten, to wet
Induo,	indūēre,	indui,	indūtum,	To put on clothes.
Minuo,	minuēre,	minui,	minūtum,	To lessen.
Spuo, <sup>7</sup>	spuēre,	spui,	spūtum,	To spit.
Statuo,	statuēre,	statui,	statūtum,	To set, to place.
Sternuo,	sternuēre,	sternui,	sternūtum,	To sneeze.
Suo,	suēre,	sui,	sūtum,	To sew, to stitch.
Tribuo,	tribuēre,	tribui,	tribūtum,	To give, to divide.
Fluo,	fluēre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	To flow.
Struo,	struēre,	struxi,	structum,	To build.
Luo, <sup>8</sup>	luēre,	lui,	lultum,	To pay, to wash.
Ruo, <sup>9</sup>	ruēre,	rui,	ruitum,	To rush, to fall.
Metuo,	metuēre,	metui,	_____	To fear.
Pluo,	pluēre,	plui,	_____	To rain.
Congruo,	congruēre,	congrui,	_____	To agree.
Ingruo,	ingruēre,	ingrui,	_____	To assail.
Annuo, <sup>10</sup>	annuēre,	annui,	_____	To assent.

## BO.

Bibo,	bibēre,	bibi,	bibitum,	To drink.
Scabo,	scabēre,	scabi,	_____	To scratch.
Lambo,	lambēre,	lambi,	_____	To lick.
Scribo,	scribēre,	scripsi.	scriptum,	To write. [ried.
Nūbo, <sup>11</sup>	nubēre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	To veil, to be-mar-
Glūbo,	glubēre,	_____	_____	To strip, to flay.

Deponent form in the Present Indicative and Infinitive, *comperior*, *comperiri*,) to know a thing for certain, has *compēri*, *compertum*; and *repērio*, to find, has *repēri*, *repertum*.

<sup>6</sup> The Compounds of *quatio* take the form *catio*, and have *cussi* and *cussum*: as, *concatio*, to shake violently, *concussi*, *concussum*.

<sup>7</sup> *Respuo*, to spit out, to reject, has no Supine.

<sup>8</sup> The Compounds of *luo* have *atum* in the Supine: as, *abluo*, *ablui*, *ablūtum*, to wash away, to purify.

<sup>9</sup> The Compounds of *ruo* have *atum* in the Supine: as, *diruo*, *dirui*, *diratum*, to overthrow. *Corruo*, to fall together, and *irruo*, to rush in furiously, have no Supine.

<sup>10</sup> The other Compounds of the obsolete *nuo*, as *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod with the head; and *renuo*, to deny, likewise want the Supine. *Abnuiturus*, Fut. Participle from *abnuo*, is found.

<sup>11</sup> *Nupta sum*, another form of the Perfect, is sometimes used in stead of *nupsi*.

## CO.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	
Dico,	dicēre,	dixi,	dictum,	To say.
Dūco,	ducēre,	duxī,	ductum,	To lead.
Vinco,	vincēre,	vici,	victum,	To overcome.
Parco, <sup>12</sup>	parcēre,	{ pepercī, or { parsi.	{ parsum, or { parcitum,	To spare.
Ico,	icēre,	ici,	ictum,	To strike.
Cresco,	crescēre,	crēvi,	crētum,	To grow.

## SCO.

Nosco, <sup>13</sup>	noscēre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	To know.
Quiesco,	quiescēre,	quīēvi,	quīētum,	To rest.
Scisco,	sciscēre,	scīvi,	scitum,	To ordain.
Suesco,	suescēre,	suēvi,	suētum,	To be accustomed.
Pasco, <sup>14</sup>	pascēre,	pāvi,	pastum,	To feed.
Disco,	discēre,	didici,	—	To learn.
Posco,	poscēre,	poposci,	—	To demand.
Glisco, <sup>15</sup>	gliscēre,	—	—	To glitter, to grow.

## DO.

Accendo,	accendēre,	accendi,	accensum,	To kindle.
Cūdo,	cudēre,	cūdi,	cūsum,	To forge.
Defendo,	defendēre,	defendi,	defensum,	To defend.
Edo, <sup>16</sup>	edēre,	ēdi,	ēsūm,	To eat.
Mando,	mandēre,	mandi,	mansum,	To chew.
Prehendo,	prehendēre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	To take hold of.
Scando,	scandēre,	scandi,	scansum,	To climb.
Divido,	dividēre,	divisi,	divisum,	To divide.
Rādo,	radēre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	To shave.
Clau <sup>17</sup> do,	claudēre,	clausi,	clausum,	To close.
Plau <sup>18</sup> do,	plaudēre,	plausi,	plausum,	To applaud.
Lūdo,	ludēre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	To play.

<sup>12</sup> The form *parsi* and *parcitum* is seldom used.

<sup>13</sup> The Fut. Part. is *nosciturus* from *noscitum*, the old form of the Supine. *Agnosco*, to own, has *agnōvi*, *agnitum*; and *cognosco*, to know, has *cognōvi*, *cognitum*.

<sup>14</sup> *Compesco*, to feed together, to restrain; and *dispesco*, to separate, have *compescui*, and *dispescui*, without the Supine.

<sup>15</sup> *Fatisco*, to be weary, likewise wants both Perfect and Supine: and also all Inceptive Verbs, unless when they adopt the Tenses of their Primitives: as, *ardesco*; to grow hot, *arsi*, *arsum*. § 88. Obs. 4.

<sup>16</sup> All the Compounds of *ēdo* are conjugated in the same manner except *comedo*, to eat up, which has *comēsum*, or *comestum* in the Supine. See 83. 9.

<sup>17</sup> The Compounds of *clau<sup>17</sup>do* change *au* into *u*: as, *conclūdo*, *conclūsi*, *conclūsum*, to conclude. *Circumclau<sup>17</sup>do* is found in Cæsar.

<sup>18</sup> The Compounds of *plau<sup>18</sup>do*, except *ap-* and *circum-plau<sup>18</sup>do* change *au* into *o*: as, *explōdo*, *explōsi*, *explōsum*, to reject.

<i>Pres</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Trudo,	trudere,	trūsi,	trūsum,	To thrust.
Lædo, <sup>19</sup>	lædere,	læsi,	læsum,	To hurt.
Rôdo,	rodere,	rôsi,	rôsum,	To gnaw.
Vâdo, <sup>20</sup>	vadere,	—	—	To go.
Cêdo,	cedere,	cessi,	cessum,	To yield.
Pando,	pandere,	pandi,	{ passum, or pansum,	To open.
Fundo,	fundere,	fūdi,	fūsum,	To pour forth.
Scindo,	scindere,	scidi,	scissum,	To cut.
Findo,	findere,	fidi,	fissum,	To cleave.
Tundo, <sup>21</sup>	tundere,	tutūdi,	{ tunsum, or tūsum,	To beat.
Cădo, <sup>22</sup>	cadere,	cecidi,	căsum,	To fall.
Cædo, <sup>23</sup>	cædere,	cecidi,	cæsum,	To cut, to kill.
Tendo, <sup>24</sup>	tendere,	tetendi,	{ tensum, or tentum,	To stretch
Pendo,	pendere,	pependi,	pensum,	To hang.
Crêdo, <sup>25</sup>	credere,	credidi,	creditum,	To believe.
Vendo,	vendere,	vendidi,	venditum,	To sell.
Abscondo,	abscondere,	abscondi,	absconditum,	To hide.
Strido,	stridere,	stridi,	—	To creak.
Rudo,	rudere,	rūdi,	—	To bray as an ass.
Sîdo, <sup>26</sup>	sidere,	sidi,	—	To sink down.

## GO.

Cingo,	cingere,	cinxi,	cinctum,	To surround.
--------	----------	--------	----------	--------------

<sup>19</sup> The Compounds of *lædo* change *æ* into *i*: as, *allido*, *allisi*, *allisum*, to dash against.

<sup>20</sup> The Compounds of *vâdo* have the Perfect and Supine: as, *evâdo*, *evâsi*, *evâsum*, to escape.

<sup>21</sup> The Compounds of *tundo* have *tūdi*, and *tūsum*: as, *contundo*, to bruise, *contūdi*, *contūsum*. See § 80, Rule 2. Some of the Compounds have also, a Perfect Participle formed from *tunsum*: as, *obtusius*, and *retunsus*, from *obtundo*, and *retundo*.

<sup>22</sup> The Compounds of *cădo*, want the Supine: as, *accido*, *accidi*, to happen; except *incido*, *incti*, *incăsum*, to fall in; *occido*, *occidi*, *occăsum*, to fall down; and *recido*, *recidi*, *recăsum*, to fall back.

<sup>23</sup> The Compounds of *cædo*, change *æ* into *i*: as, *accido*, *accidi*, *accisum*, to cut about; *decido*, *decidi*, *decisum*, to cut off.

<sup>24</sup> The Compounds of *tendo* have generally *tentum* in the Supine, except *extendo*, to stretch out, and *ostendo*, to show, which have also *tensum*; the latter, almost always.

<sup>25</sup> The other Compounds of *do* which belong to the Third Conjugation have also *didi*, and *ditum*: as, *condo*, *condidi*, *conditum*, to build. *Abscondo* has sometimes *abscondidi*. See page 156, Note 1.

<sup>26</sup> The Compounds of *sîdo*, adopt the Perfect and Supine of *seddo* as, *consido*, *consedi*, *consessum*, to sit down.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Fligo</i> , <sup>26</sup>	<i>fligēre</i> ,	<i>flixī</i> ,	<i>flictum</i> ,	<i>To dash.</i>
<i>Jungo</i> ,	<i>jungēre</i> ,	<i>junxi</i> ,	<i>junctum</i> ,	<i>To join.</i>
<i>Lingo</i> ,	<i>lingēre</i> ,	<i>linxi</i> ,	<i>linctum</i> ,	<i>To lick.</i>
<i>Mungo</i> ,	<i>mungēre</i> ,	<i>munxi</i> ,	<i>munctum</i> ,	<i>To wipe the nose.</i>
<i>Plango</i> ,	<i>plangēre</i> ,	<i>planxi</i> ,	<i>plancum</i> ,	<i>To beat.</i>
<i>Rēgo</i> , <sup>27</sup>	<i>regēre</i> ,	<i>rexī</i> ,	<i>rectum</i> ,	<i>To rule.</i>
<i>Stinguo</i> , <sup>28</sup>	<i>stinguēre</i> ,	<i>stinxi</i> ,	<i>stinctum</i> ,	<i>To dash out.</i>
<i>Sūgo</i> ,	<i>sugēre</i> ,	<i>suxī</i> ,	<i>suctum</i> ,	<i>To suck.</i>
<i>Tēgo</i> ,	<i>tegēre</i> ,	<i>texī</i> ,	<i>tectum</i> ,	<i>To cover.</i>
<i>Tinguo</i> ,	<i>tinguēre</i> ,	<i>tinxi</i> ,	<i>tinctum</i> ,	<i>To dip.</i>
<i>Unguo</i> ,	<i>unguēre</i> ,	<i>unxi</i> ,	<i>unctum</i> ,	<i>To anoint.</i>
<i>Surgo</i> ,	<i>surgēre</i> ,	<i>surrexi</i> ,	<i>surrectum</i> ,	<i>To rise.</i>
<i>Pergo</i> ,	<i>pergēre</i> ,	<i>perrexi</i> ,	<i>perrectum</i> ,	<i>To go forward.</i>
<i>Stringo</i> ,	<i>stringēre</i> ,	<i>strinxi</i> ,	<i>strictum</i> ,	<i>To bind.</i>
<i>Fingo</i> ,	<i>figēre</i> ,	<i>finxi</i> ,	<i>fictum</i> ,	<i>To feign.</i>
<i>Pingo</i> ,	<i>pingēre</i> ,	<i>pinxi</i> ,	<i>pictum</i> ,	<i>To paint.</i>
<i>Frango</i> , <sup>29</sup>	<i>frangēre</i> ,	<i>frēgi</i> ,	<i>fractum</i> ,	<i>To break.</i>
<i>Agō</i> , <sup>30</sup>	<i>agēre</i> ,	<i>ēgi</i> ,	<i>actum</i> ,	<i>To do, to drive.</i>
<i>Tango</i> ,	<i>tangēre</i> ,	<i>tetigi</i> ,	<i>tactum</i> ,	<i>To touch.</i>
<i>Lēgo</i> , <sup>31</sup>	<i>legēre</i> ,	<i>lēgi</i> ,	<i>lectum</i> ,	<i>To gather, to read.</i>
<i>Pungo</i> , <sup>32</sup>	<i>pungēre</i> ,	<i>pupūgi</i> ,	<i>punctum</i> ,	<i>To prick.</i>
<i>Pango</i> , <sup>33</sup>	<i>pangēre</i> ,	<i>panxi</i> ,	<i>pactum</i> ,	<i>To drive in.</i>

<sup>26</sup> The Compounds of *fligo* are conjugated in the same way, except *profligo*, to dash down, which is a regular Verb of the First Conjugation.

<sup>27</sup> The Compounds of *rēgo* change *e* into *i*: as, *dirigo*, *direxi*, *directum*, to direct; *corrigo*, *correxi*, *correctum*, to correct.

<sup>28</sup> *Stinguo*, *tinguo*, and *unguo*, are also written *stingo*, *tingo*, *ungo*.

<sup>29</sup> The Compounds of *frango* and *tango* change *a* into *i*: as, *confringo*, *confrēgi*, *confractum*, to break to pieces; *attingo*, *attigi*, *attactum*, to touch gently.

<sup>30</sup> *Circumdāgo*, to drive round; *perāgo*, to finish; and *coāgo*, (contracted *cōgo*), to collect, retain the *u*; the other Compounds change *a* into *i*: as, *abigo*, *abēgi*, *abactum*, to drive away. *Dāgo* (for *deāgo*), to live, to dwell; *prodāgo*, to lavish or squander; and *satāgo*, to be busy, want the Supine. *Amāgo*, to doubt, has neither Perfect nor Supine.

<sup>31</sup> *Lēgo*, when compounded with *ad*, *per*, *præ*, *re*, and *sub*, retains the *e*: as, *allēgo*, to choose. The other Compounds change *e* into *i*: as, *colligo*, to collect. *Diligō*, to love; *intelligō*, to understand, and *negligō*, to neglect, have, *exi* and *ectum*. *Neglīgo* has sometimes *neglēgi* in the Perfect.

<sup>32</sup> The Compounds of *pungo* have *punxi* in the Perfect: as *compungo*, to sting, *compunxi*, *compunctum*. *Repungo*, to prick again, has *repupūgi*, and *repunxi*.

<sup>33</sup> *Pango*, in the sense of *to bargain* has *peptgi*; the Present is rarely used in this meaning; but instead of it *paciācor* is commonly employed. The Compounds which change *a* into *i* have *pēgi*, and *pactum*: as, *compingo*, to fasten together, *compēgi*, *compactum*. *Op*

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	
Spargo, <sup>34</sup>	spargere.	sparsi,	sparsum,	To spread.
Mergo,	mergere,	mersi,	mersum,	To dip, to plunge
Tergo,	tergere,	tersi,	tersum,	To wipe.
Figo,	figere,	fixi,	fixum,	To fix.
Frigo,	frigere,	frixi,	{ frixum, or frictum,	To fry.
Vergo,	vergere,	—	—	To lie toward.
Clango,	clangere,	clanxi,	—	To sound a drum.
Ningo,	ningere,	ninxi,	—	To snow. [pet.]
Ango,	angere,	anxi,	—	To vex.

## HO.

Träho,	trahere,	traxi,	tractum,	To draw.
Vého,	vehere,	vexi,	vectum,	To carry.
Mejo, <sup>35</sup>	mejere,	minxi,	mictum,	To make water.

## LO.

Cölo, <sup>36</sup>	colere,	colui,	cultum,	To till. to inhabit
Consölo,	consulere,	consului,	consultum,	To consult.
Alo,	alere,	alui,	{ alitum, or altum,	To nourish.
Mölo,	molere,	molui,	mollitum,	To grind.
Antecello, <sup>37</sup>	antecellere,	antecellui,	—	To excel.
Pello,	pellere,	pepuli,	pulsum,	To drive away.
Fallo, <sup>38</sup>	fallere,	fefelli,	falsum,	To deceive.
Vello, <sup>39</sup>	vellere,	velli, or vulsi,	vulsum,	To pull.
Sallo,	sallere,	salli,	salsum,	To salt. [strument.]
Psallo,	psallere,	psalli,	—	To play on an in-
Tollo, <sup>40</sup>	tollere,	sustäli,	sublätum,	To lift up.

*pango*, to fasten to, has also *pēgi* and *pactum*. Of the other Compounds which retain *a*, the Perfect and Supine are not found.

<sup>34</sup> The Compounds of *spargo* change *a* into *e*: as, *aspergo*, *asper-si*, *aspersum*, to besprinkle.

<sup>35</sup> *Mingo* is also used as the Present of *minxi*.

<sup>36</sup> *Cölo*, when compounded with *ob*, changes *o*, into *u*: *occulo*, to hide. *Accölo*, to dwell near, and *circumcölo*, to dwell round, have no Supine.

<sup>37</sup> The other Compounds of the obsolete *cello* likewise want the Supine; except *percellö*, *perculi*, *perculsum*, to strike, to astonish. *Recello* likewise wants the Perfect.

<sup>38</sup> *Refello*, *refelli*, to confute, wants the Supine.

<sup>39</sup> *Vello*, when compounded with *de*, *di*, or *per*, has usually *velli* in the Perfect. The other Compounds take either form indifferently.

<sup>40</sup> *Attollo* and *entollo*, to raise up, have no Perfect or Supine of their own; but those of *aff-ro* and *eff-ro*, which agree with them in meaning, are sometimes assigned to them

## MO.

<i>Præ.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Frēmo,</i>	<i>fremēre,</i>	<i>fremui,</i>	<i>fremitum,</i>	<i>To rage, to roar</i>
<i>Gēmo,</i>	<i>gemēre,</i>	<i>gemui,</i>	<i>gemitum,</i>	<i>To groan.</i>
<i>Vōmo,</i>	<i>vomēre,</i>	<i>vomui,</i>	<i>vomitum,</i>	<i>To vomit.</i>
<i>Trēmo,</i>	<i>tremēre,</i>	<i>tremui,</i>	—	<i>To tremble.</i>
<i>Dēmo,</i>	<i>demēre,</i>	<i>dempsi,</i>	<i>demptum,</i>	<i>To take away.</i>
<i>Prōmo,</i>	<i>promēre,</i>	<i>prompsi,</i>	<i>promptum,</i>	<i>To bring out.</i>
<i>Sūmo,</i>	<i>sumēre,</i>	<i>sumpsi,</i>	<i>sumptum,</i>	<i>To take.</i>
<i>Cōmo,</i>	<i>comēre,</i>	<i>compsi,</i>	<i>comptum,</i>	<i>To deck, to dress</i>
<i>Emo,</i> <sup>41</sup>	<i>emēre,</i>	<i>ēmi,</i>	<i>emptum,</i>	<i>To buy.</i>
<i>Prēmo,</i> <sup>42</sup>	<i>premēre,</i>	<i>pressi,</i>	<i>pressum,</i>	<i>To press.</i>

## NO.

<i>Pōno,</i>	<i>ponēre,</i>	<i>pōsui,</i>	<i>positum,</i>	<i>To place.</i>
<i>Gigno,</i>	<i>gignēre,</i>	<i>genui,</i>	<i>genitum,</i>	<i>To beget.</i>
<i>Cāno,</i> <sup>43</sup>	<i>canēre,</i>	<i>cecini,</i>	<i>cantum,</i>	<i>To sing.</i>
<i>Temno,</i> <sup>44</sup>	<i>temnēre,</i>	—	—	<i>To despise.</i>
<i>Sperno,</i>	<i>spernēre,</i>	<i>sprēvi,</i>	<i>sprētum,</i>	<i>To disdain</i>
<i>Sterno,</i> <sup>45</sup>	<i>sternēre,</i>	<i>strāvi,</i>	<i>strātum,</i>	<i>To lay flat</i>
<i>Sino,</i>	<i>sinēre,</i>	<i>sivi, or sii,</i>	<i>situm,</i>	<i>To permit.</i>
<i>Lino,</i>	<i>linēre,</i>	<i>livi, or lēvi,</i>	<i>litum,</i>	<i>To anoint.</i>
<i>Cerno,</i> <sup>46</sup>	<i>cernēre,</i>	<i>crēvi,</i>	<i>crētum,</i>	<i>To see. to decreas</i>

## PO, QUO.

<i>Carpo,</i> <sup>47</sup>	<i>carpēre,</i>	<i>carpsi,</i>	<i>carptum,</i>	<i>To pluck.</i>
<i>Clēpo,</i>	<i>clepēre,</i>	<i>clepsi,</i>	<i>cleptum,</i>	<i>To steal.</i>
<i>Rēpo,</i>	<i>repēre,</i>	<i>repsi,</i>	<i>reptum,</i>	<i>To creep.</i>
<i>Scalpo,</i>	<i>scalpēre,</i>	<i>scalpsi,</i>	<i>scalptum,</i>	<i>To engrave.</i>
<i>Sculpo,</i>	<i>sculpēre,</i>	<i>sculpsi,</i>	<i>sculptum,</i>	<i>To carve.</i>
<i>Serpo,</i>	<i>serpēre,</i>	<i>serpsi,</i>	<i>serptum,</i>	<i>To creep.</i>

<sup>41</sup> *Dēmo*, *prōmo*, and *sūmo*, are Compounds of *emo*. The other Compounds change *e* into *i*, and are conjugated like the Simple Verb: *as*, *adīmo*, *adēmi*, *ademptum*, to take away.

<sup>42</sup> The Compounds of *prēmo* change *e* into *i*: *as*, *comprīmo*, *compressi*, *compressum*, to press together.

<sup>43</sup> The Compounds of *cāno* have *cinui*, and *centum*; *as*, *concinno*, *concinui*, *concentum*, to sing in concert. Of *acīno*, to sing to, and *intercīno*, to sing between, or during, no Perfect or Supine is found.

<sup>44</sup> *Contemno*, to despise, has *contempsi*, *contemptum*.

<sup>45</sup> *Consterno* and *externo*, when they signify to alarm, are regular Verbs of the First Conjugation. The other Compounds are conjugated like *sterno*: *as*, *insterno*, *instrāvi*, *instrātum*, to spread upon.

<sup>46</sup> The Perfect *crēvi* is used in the sense of to declare one's self heir, or enter on an inheritance. In the sense of seeing, *cerno* has properly neither Perfect nor Supine.

<sup>47</sup> The Compounds of *carpo* change *a* into *e*: *as*, *discerpo* *discerpsi*, *discerptum*, to tear in pieces.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Strēpo,	strepēre,	strepui,	strepitum,	To make a noise.
Rumpo,	rumpēre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	To break
Coquo,	coquēre,	coxi,	coctum,	To boil.
Linquo, <sup>48</sup>	linquēre,	liqui,	—	To leave.

## RO

Quæro, <sup>49</sup>	quærēre,	quæsi,	quæsitum,	To seek.
Tëro,	terēre,	trivi,	tritum,	To wear.
Verro,	verrēre,	verri,	versum,	To sweep.
Uro,	urēre,	ussi,	ustum,	To burn.
Curro, <sup>50</sup>	currēre,	cucurri,	cursum,	To run.
Gëro,	gerēre,	gessi,	gestum,	To carry.
Füro, <sup>51</sup>	furēre,	—	—	To be mad.
Sëro, <sup>52</sup>	serēre,	sëvi,	sätum,	To sow.

## SO.

Arcesso,	arcessēre,	arcessi,	arcessitum,	To call, or send
Capesso,	capessēre,	capessi,	capessitum,	To take. [for.
Facesso,	facessēre,	facessi,	facessitum,	To do, go away.
Lacesso,	lacessēre,	lacessi,	lacessitum,	To provoke.
Viso,	visēre,	visi,	—	To go to visit.
Incesso,	incessēre,	incessi,	—	To attack.
Depsō,	depsēre,	depsui,	depstum,	To knead.
Pinso,	pinsēre,	{ pinsui, or pinsi,	{ pinsum, pistum, or pinsitum,	To bake.

## TO.

Flecto,	flectēre,	flexi,	flexum,	To bend.
Plecto,	plectēre,	plexi & plexui,	plexum,	To plait.
Necto,	nectēre,	nexi & nexui,	nexum,	To tie or knit.
Pecto,	pectēre,	pexi & pexui,	pexum,	To dress, or
Mëto,	metēre,	messui,	messum,	To reap. [comb.
Pëto,	petēre,	petiui,	petitum,	To seek.

<sup>48</sup> The Compounds of *linquo* have *lictum* in the Supine: as, *relinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*, to forsake; so *delinquo*, to fail,

<sup>49</sup> The Compounds of *quæro* change *æ* into *i*: as, *acquiro*, *acqui* *stvi*, *acquisitum*, to acquire.

<sup>50</sup> *Curro*, when compounded with *circum*, *re*, *sub*, and *trans*, *sel* dom takes the reduplication. The other Compounds sometimes take the reduplication, and sometimes not.

<sup>51</sup> See § 84. A.

<sup>52</sup> The Compounds of *sëro* which retain the sense of *planting* and *sowing*, have *sëvi* and *situm*: as, *consëro*, *consëvi*, *consitum*, to plant together. Those which adopt a different signification have *serui* and *sertum*: as, *assëro*, *asserui*, *assertum*, to claim. The latter class of Compounds properly belongs to the old verb *sëro*, to knit, to plait



Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	
Mitto	mittere,	misi,	missum,	To send.
Verto, <sup>63</sup>	vertere,	verti,	versum,	To turn.
Sterto,	stertere,	stertui,	—	To snore.
Sisto, <sup>64</sup>	sistere,	steti,	statum,	To stop.

## VO, XO.

Vivo,	vivere,	vixi,	victum,	To live.
Solvo,	solvere,	solvi,	solutum,	To lose.
Volvo,	volvere,	volvi,	volutum,	To roll.
Texo,	texere,	texui,	textum,	To weave.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

RULE.—Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation have *ivi* in the Perfect, and *itum* in the Supine: as,

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	
Audio,	audire,	audivi,	auditum,	To hear.
Munio,	munire,	munivi,	munitum,	To fortify

## EXCEPTIONS.

Singultio,	singultire,	singultivi,	singultum,	To sob.
Sepelio,	sepelire,	sepelivi,	sepultum,	To bury.
Venio,	venire,	veni,	ventum,	To come.
Veneo, <sup>1</sup>	venire,	venii,	—	To be sold.
Salio, <sup>2</sup>	salire,	salui, or salii,	saltum,	To leap.
Amicio,	amicire,	{ amicui, or	amicum,	To clothe.
		{ amixi,		
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vincium,	To tie.
Sancio,	sancire,	{ sanxi, or	{ sanctum, or	To ratify.
		{ sancivi,	{ sancitum,	
Cambio,	cambire,	campsi,	campsum,	To change me
Sepio,	sepire,	sepsi,	septum,	To enclose. [ney
Haurio,	haurire,	hausi,	{ haustum, or	To draw out.
			{ hausum,	
Sentio,	sentire,	sensi,	sensum,	To feel.
Raucio,	raucire,	rausi,	rausum,	To be hoarse.
Sarcio,	sarcire,	sarsi,	sartum,	To mend, or re-
				[pair.

<sup>63</sup> The Compounds of *verto* are conjugated in the same manner, except *revertor*, to return, which is often used as a Deponent Verb; and *divertor* to turn aside, and *prævertor*, to outrun, which are likewise Deponent, but want the Perfect Participle.

<sup>64</sup> *Sisto*, to stand still (a neuter verb.) has neither Perfect nor Supine. The Compounds have *steti* and *statum*: as, *assisto*, *astiti*, *astitum*, to stand by. But these are seldom found in the Supine.

<sup>1</sup> For the Conjugation of *veneo*, see page 173.

<sup>2</sup> The Compounds of *salto* have generally *silui*, sometimes *silii*, or *siltui*, in the Perfect, and *sultum* in the Supine: as, *transilio*, *transiui*, *transiui*, or *transiui*, *transultum*, to leap over. *Abultum*, *circumsultum*, and *procultum*, are scarcely used.

<b>Farcio,</b>	<b>farcire,</b>	<b>farsi,</b>	<b>fartum,</b>	<i>To cram.</i>
<b>Fulcio,</b>	<b>fulcire,</b>	<b>fulsi,</b>	<b>fultum,</b>	<i>To prop.</i>
<b>Ferio,</b>	<b>ferire</b>	_____	_____	<i>To strike.</i>

The following Verbs have the Perfect formed regularly, but want the Supine :

**Cæcütio,** *to be dim-sighted.*

**Dementio,** *to be mad.*

**Ferocio,** *to be fierce.*

**Glöcio,** *to cluck as a hen.*

**Gestio.** *to show one's joy by the gestures of the body.*

**Ineptio,** *to play the fool.*

For Desiderative Verbs which belong to this Conjugation, see § 88. 3.

## § 82. LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS IRREGULAR IN THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

**RULE.**—Deponent and common verbs form the perfect participle in the same manner as if the active voice existed, § 72. *Obs.* 3.

To this rule there are no exceptions in the First conjugation.

### EXCEPTIONS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION

<b>Reor,</b>	<b>rëri,</b>	<b>rätus,</b>	<i>To think.</i>
<b>Misereor,</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>miserëri,</b>	<b>misertus,</b>	<i>To pity.</i>
<b>Fäteor,</b> <sup>2</sup>	<b>fatëri,</b>	<b>fassus,</b>	<i>To confess.</i>
<b>Medeor,</b>	<b>medëri,</b>	_____	<i>To heal.</i>

### EXCEPTIONS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

<b>Läbor,</b>	<b>labi,</b>	<b>lapsus.</b>	<i>To slide.</i>
<b>Ulciscor,</b>	<b>ulcisci,</b>	<b>ultus,</b>	<i>To revenge.</i>
<b>Utor,</b>	<b>ütü,</b>	<b>üsus,</b>	<i>To use.</i>
<b>Löquor,</b> <sup>3</sup>	<b>loqui,</b>	<b>loquütus,</b>	<i>To speak.</i>
<b>Sëquor,</b>	<b>sequi,</b>	<b>sequütus,</b>	<i>To follow.</i>
<b>Quëror,</b>	<b>queri,</b>	<b>questus,</b>	<i>To complain.</i>

<sup>3</sup> The Compounds of *farcio* change *a* into *e*: as, *refercio*, *referat*, *referatum*, to fill up.

<sup>1</sup> *Misereor* has also *miseritus* in the Perfect Participle.

<sup>2</sup> The Compounds of *fäteor* change *a* into *i*, and have *fessus*: as, *confiteor*, *confessus*, to confess. *Diffiteor*, to deny, wants the Perfect Participle.

<sup>3</sup> *Löquor* and *sëquor* have likewise *locütus* and *secütus* in the Perfect Participle

Nitor, <sup>4</sup>	niti,	nîsus, or nîxus,	To strive.
Paciscor.	pacisci,	pactus,	To bargain.
Grādior,	gradi,	gressus,	To go.
Proficiscor,	proficisci,	profectus,	To go a journey
Nanciscor,	nancisci,	nactus,	To obtain.
Pâtior,	pati,	passus,	To suffer.
Apiscor, <sup>5</sup>	apisci,	aptus,	To get.
Comminiscor,	comminisci,	commentus,	To devise.
Fruor,	frui,	fructus, or fructus,	To enjoy.
Obliviscor,	oblivisci,	oblitus,	To forget.
Expergiscor,	expergisci,	experrectus,	To awake.
Môrior, <sup>6</sup>	mori,	mortuus,	To die.
Nascor, <sup>7</sup>	nasci,	nâtus,	To be born.
Orior, <sup>8</sup>	oriri,	ortus,	To rise.

The following Verbs want the Perfect Participle :

Defetiscor, -i, to be weary.

Irascor, -i, to be angry.

Liquor, -i, to melt.

Reminiscor, -i, to remember.

Ringor, -i, to grin like a dog.

Vescor, -i, to feed.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

Mêtior,	metiri,	mensus,	To measure.
Ordior,	ordiri,	orsus,	To begin.
Experior,	experiri,	expertus,	To try.
Opperior,	opperiri.	opertus,	To wait

### § 83. IRREGULAR VERBS.

IRREGULAR VERBS are those in which some of the secondary parts are not formed from the primary, according to the rules for regular verbs.

<sup>4</sup> *Nitor*, when compounded with *con*, *in*, *ob*, *re*, *sub*, has *nîxus* oftener than *nîsus*. *Adnitor*, to lean to, has either indifferently. *Enitor*, in the sense of *to bring forth*, generally takes *enixa* in the Participle.

<sup>5</sup> *Adipiscor* and *indiptscor*, to obtain, have *adeptus* and *indeptus*.

<sup>6</sup> *Morior* seems to have originally belonged to the Fourth Conjugation. The Infinitive *mortiri* occurs in Plautus and Ovid; and *mortimur*, with the penult long, is also found. The Imperative is *môrêre*. This verb, with *nascor* and *orior*, has *itûrus* in the Fut. Part.: as *moritûrus*, *nascitûrus*, *oritûrus*.

<sup>7</sup> *Nascor* is Passive in signification, but has no active voice

<sup>8</sup> *Orior* has *orire*, and always *orirêtur* in the Imperfect Subjunctive, according to the Fourth Conjugation. Likewise in the Compounds *adorirêtur*, *exorirêtur*; and not *adorerêtur*, *exorerêtur*. The Present follows the Third, though *oriris* and *ortur*, with the penult long, are also found.



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Possum,	potes,	potest;	possūmus,	potestis,	possunt.
IMP.	Pot-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat,	-ērāmus,	-ērātis,	-ērant.
PERF.	Potu-i,	-isti,	-it,	-īmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
PLUP.	Potu-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat,	-ērāmus,	-ērātis	-ērant.
FUT.	Pot-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit,	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērunt.
F. P.	Potu-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit,	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit,	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
IMP.	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set,	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
PERF.	Potu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit,	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.
PLUP.	Potu-issem,	-isses,	-isset,	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Posse.	PERF. Potuisse,	<i>the rest wanting.</i>				
--------------	-----------------	--------------------------	--	--	--	--

3. Eo,	īre,	īvi,	ītum,	<i>To go.</i>
--------	------	------	-------	---------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
IMP.	Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
PER.	Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	ivērunt or ivēre.
PLU.	Ivēram,	ivēras,	ivērat;	ivērāmus,	ivērātis,	ivērant.
FUT.	Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibīmus,	ibītis,	ibunt.
F. P.	Ivēro,	ivēris,	ivērit;	ivērīmus,	ivērītis,	ivērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
IMP.	Irem,	ires,	iret;	irēmus,	irētis,	irent.
PER.	Ivērim,	ivēris,	ivērit;	iverīmus,	iverītis,	ivērint.
PLU.	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR.	{ I,	ito;	{ ite,	eunto.	PR.	Ire.
	{ Ito,	itōte,	{ itōte,		PER.	Ivisse.
					FUT.	Esse itūrus, -a, -um.
					F. P.	Fuisse itūrus, -a, -um.

## PARTICIPLES.

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

PR.	Iens,	Gen.	euntis.	Eundum.	1. Itum.
FUT.	Itūrus,	-a, -um.		Eundi, &c.	2. Itu.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-*, *ab-*, *ex-*, *cō-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *rēd-*, *sūb-*, *pēr-*, *præ-*, *ante-*, *prōd-eo*; only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo*, *adīre*, *adii*, seldom *adīvi*, *aditum*, to go to; perf. *Adii*, *adiisti*, or *adisti*, &c. *adiēram*, *adiērim*, &c. So likewise *VENEO*, *venii*, —, to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO*, *-īre*, *-īvi*, *-itum*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

*Eo*, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, he is going; *īvit*, he is gone; *ivērat*, he was gone; *ivērit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So, *vēnit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he is come; *vēnērat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are used only impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericūla adeuntur*, —are undergone. Cic. *Libri sibyllini aditi sunt*, —were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*. Cæs. *Inimicitiae subeantur*. Cic.

*Queo*, I can, and *Nequeo*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

#### 4. Volo, velle, vōlui, *To will, to be willing, to wish.*

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Vōl-o,	vis,	vult;	volūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
IMP.	Vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Volu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt. or -ēre.
PLU.	Volu-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	
FUT.	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F. P.	Volu-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

##### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velimus,	velītis,	velint.
IMP.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
PER.	Volu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
PLU.	Volu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PARTICIPLES.

PR. Velle. PERF. Voluisse. PRÆS. Volens.

5. Nolo, nolle, nolui. *To be unwilling.* [From *non volo.*]

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR. Nōlo, non-vis, non-vult; nolūmus, non-vultis, nolunt.

IMP. Nol-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat, -ēbāmus, -ēbātis, -ēbant.

PER. Nolu-i, -isti, -it; -imus, -istis, } -ērunt.  
or -ēre.

PLU. Nolu-ēram, -ēras, -ērat; -erāmus, -erātis, -ērant.

FUT. Nol-am, -es, -et; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.

F. P. Nolu-ēro, -ēris, -ērit; -erimus, -eritis, -ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR. Nolim, nolis, nolit; nolīmus, nolītis, nolint.

IMP. Nollem, nolles, nollet; nollēmus, nollētis, nollent.

PER. Nolu-ērim, -ēris, -ērit; -erīmus, -erītis, -ērint.

PLU. Nolu-issem, -isses, -isset; -issēmus, -issētis, -issent.

## IMPERATIVE.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PR. { Noli or { nolite or PR. Nolle. PR. Nolens.  
{ Nolito. { nolitote. PER. Voluisse. *The rest wanting.*

6. Malo, malle, malui. *To be more willing.* [*Magis volo.*]

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR. Māl-o, mavis, mavult; malūmus, mavultis, malunt.

IMP. Mal-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat; -ēbāmus, -ēbātis, -ēbant.

PER. Malu-i, -isti, -it; -imus, -istis, } -ērunt.  
or -ēre.

PLU. Malu-ēram, -ēras, -ērat; -erāmus, -erātis, -ērant.

FUT. Mal-am, -es, -et; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.

F. P. Malu-ēro, -ēris, -ērit; -erimus, -eritis, -ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR. Malim, malis, malit; malīmus, malītis, malint.

IMP. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallēmus, mallētis, mallent.

PER. Malu-ērim, -ēris, -ērit; -erīmus, -erītis, -ērint.

PLU. Malu-issem, -isses, -isset; -issēmus, -issētis, -issent.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR. Malle. PER. Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

7. Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum. *To carry, to bring, or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PR.	Fēro,	fers,	fert;	ferīmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
IMP.	Fer-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Tūl-i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
PLU.	Tul-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērant.
FUT.	Fer-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F. P.	Tul-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fer-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
IMP.	Fer-rem,	-res,	-ret;	-rēmus	-rētis,	-rent.
PER.	Tul-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.
PLU.	Tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR. Fer, *or* ferto, ferto; ferte, *or* fertōte, ferunto,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR.	Ferre.	FUT.	Esse latūrus, -a, -um.
PER.	Tulisse.	F. P.	Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS.

SUPINES.

PR.	Fērens.	N.	Ferendum,	1.	Lātum.
FUT.	Latūrus, -a, -um.	G.	Ferendi, &c.	2.	Lātu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, ferri, lātus. *To be brought.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR	Fēror,	{ ferris or ferre,	{ fertur; ferīmur, ferimīni, feruntur
IMP	Fer-ēbar,	{ -ēbāris or -ēbāre,	{ -ēhātur; -ēbāmur, -ēbāminī, -ēbantur.
PER.	Latus sum, <i>or</i> fui,	latus es, <i>or</i> fuisti, &c.	
PLU.	Latus ēram, <i>or</i> fuēram,	latus ēras, <i>or</i> fuēras, &c.	
FUT.	Ferar,	{ ferēris or ferēre,	{ ferētur; ferēmur, ferēmīni, ferentur.
F. P.	Latus fuēro	latus fuēris, &c.	



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR. Ferar,	{ ferāris, or ferāre,	{ ferātur; ferāmur, ferāmini, ferantur.
IMP. Ferrer,	{ ferrēris or ferrēre,	{ ferrētur; ferrēmur, ferrēmini, ferrentur
PER. Latus sim, or fuērim, latus sis, or fuēris, &c.		
PLU. Latus essem, or fuissem, latus esses, or fuisses, &c.		

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR. Ferre, or fertor, fertor; ferimīni, feruntor.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PARTICIPLES.

PR. Ferri.	PER. Latus, -a, -um.
PER. Esse, or fuisse latus, -a, -um.	FUT. Ferendus, -a, -um.
FUT. Latum iri.	

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fĕro*; as, *affĕro, attŭli, allātum; aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum; diffĕro, distŭli, dilātum; confĕro, contŭli, collātum; infĕro, intŭli, illātum; offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum; effĕro, extŭli, elātum*. So, *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, prae-, re-fĕro*. In some writers we find *adfĕro, adtŭli, adlātum; conlātum; inlātum; obfĕro, &c.* for *offĕro, &c.*

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo* for *magis volo*; *fero, fers, fert, &c.* for *feris, ferit, &c.* *Feror, ferris* or *ferre, fertur*, for *ferrēris, &c.*

8. Fio, fiĕri, factus. *To be made, or done. to become.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR. Fio,	fi,	fit;	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
IMP. Fiĕbam,	fiĕbas,	fiĕbat;	fiĕbāmus,	fiĕbātis,	fiĕbant.
PER. Factus sum, or fui, factus es, or fuisti, &c.					
PLU. Factus ĕram, or fuĕram, factus ĕras, or fuĕras, &c.					
FUT. Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiĕmus,	fiĕtis,	fient.
F. P. Factus fuĕro, factus fuĕris, &c.					

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR. Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiāmus,	fiātis,	fiant.
IMP. Fiĕrem,	fiĕres,	fiĕret;	fiĕrēmus,	fiĕrētis,	fiĕrent.
PER. Factus sim, or fuĕrim, factus sis, or fuĕris, &c.					
PLU. Factus essem, or fuissem, factus esses, or fuisses, &c.					

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR.	{ Fi, Fito,	fito :	{ fite, fitōte,	fiunto.
-----	----------------	--------	--------------------	---------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fiēri,
PER.	Esse, <i>or</i> fuisse factus, -a, -um.
FUT.	Factum iri.

## PARTICIPLES

## SUPINE.

PER.	Factus, -a, -um.	2. Factu.
FUT.	Faciendus, -a, -um.	

*Obs. 2.* The third person singular of *fiō* is often used impersonally; as, *fit*, "it happens" *fiēbat*, "it happened".

*Obs. 3.* *Fio* is used as the passive of *facio*, from which it takes the participles. The compounds of *facio* which retain *a* have *fiō* in the passive; as, *calefacio*, "I warm," *calefio* "I become warm," "I am warmed," &c. But those compounds which change *facio* into *ficio* have the regular passive in *ficior*, as, *conficio*, *conficior*, &c.

9. To irregular verbs may be added *Edo*, "to eat." Though this is a regular verb of the third conjugation, it has an irregular form resembling *sum* in the Pres. Indicative, Imperfect Subjunctive, the Imperative, and the Present Infinitive, thus;

Edo,	edēre <i>or</i> esse,	ēdi,	ēsum,	<i>To eat.</i>
------	-----------------------	------	-------	----------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Edo,	{ edis, edit, <i>or</i> es, <i>or</i> est,	edimus,	{ editis, <i>or</i> estis,	edunt.
-----	------	---	---------	-------------------------------	--------

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IMP.	{ Edērem, edēres, edēret, edērēmus, edērētis, edērent; <i>or</i> essem, esses, esset, essēmus, essētis essent.
------	---

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR.	{ Edē, <i>or</i> edito, edito; edīte, <i>or</i> editote, Es, <i>or</i> esto. esto; este, <i>or</i> estote,	{ edunto.
-----	---	-----------

## § 84. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

DEFECTIVE VERBS are those which are not used in some of their parts.

1. These three, *ōdi*, *coepi*, and *memīni*, are used only in the preterite tenses, that is, in the perfect, and the tenses derived from it, and for this reason are called PRETERITE VERBS.

*Obs.* 1. *Cæpi* has a present as well as a perfect signification; and hence *cæpëram*, has the sense of the imperfect, as well as of the pluperfect; and *cæpëro*, of the future as well as of the future perfect; thus, *cæpi*, "I begin" or "I have begun;" *cæpëram*, "I began" or "I had begun;" *cæpëro*, "I shall begin" "I shall have begun;" and so of the subjunctive.

*Obs.* 2. *Odi* and *memīni* have only the present, imperfect, and future sense; as, *odi*, "I hate;" *odëram*, "I hated;" *odëro*, "I will hate."

2. The parts of these verbs in use are as follows; viz:

*Odi*, *odëram*, *odëro*, *odërim*, *odissem*, *odisse*.

Participles, *ōsus*, *ostūrus*.

*Coepi*, *coepëram*, *coepëro*, *coepërim*, *coepissem*, *coepisse*.

Participles, *coeptus*, *coeptūrus*.

*Memīni*, *meminëram*, *meminëro*, *meminërim*, *meminissem*, *meminisse*. Imperative, *memento*, *mementōte*.

3. The verb *novi* is also used as a preterite, having like *odi* and *memīni* only the sense of the present, the imperfect, and future. It differs from the others, however, in having a present, *nosco*, which properly has an inceptive sense, meaning "I begin to know," "I learn;" hence *novi*, "I have learned," that is "I know."

The parts of *novi* in use, are as follows; viz,

*Novi*, *novëram*, *novëro*, *novërim*, *novissem*, *novisse*;  
Contracted, *nōram*, ——— *nōrim*, *nāssem*, *nōsse*.

4. There are many verbs not usually considered among defectives which want certain tenses or numbers or persons; thus, *do* "I give," has neither *dor* nor *der*. *Fāri* to speak, with its compounds, is used only by the poets, and by them chiefly in the third person; *fatūr*, the imperative *fāre*, and the participle *fātus*. The ablative gerund, *fando*, occurs in a passive sense.

*Furere*, to be mad, wants the first pers. sing. and the second pers. pl. of the pres. and probably all the future of the indicative; and the imperative, also the Perfect and Supine.

5. The following defective verbs are those which most frequently occur. *Aio* "I say;"—*inquam*, "I say," used only between words quoted, and never stands at the beginning;—*forem*, "I should be;" the same as *essem*;—*ave*, and *salve* "hail;" *Cēdo*, "tell thou," or "give me;" *quæso*, "I beseech," originally the same as *quæro*. It is used commonly as an interjection.

The parts of these verbs remaining are the following.

1. *AIO*, I say, I affirm.

Ind. PRES.	Aio,	āis,	ait,	_____	_____	aiunt.
IMP.	Alēbam,	alēbas,	alēbat,	alēbāmus,	alēbātis,	alēbant.
PERF.	_____	aisti,	ait,	_____	_____	_____
Sub. PRES.	_____	aias,	aiat,	_____	_____	aiant.
Imp. PRES.	_____	ai,	_____	_____	_____	_____
Part. PRES.	aiens,					

2. *INQUAM*, "I say."

Ind. PRES.	Inquam,	inquis,	inquit;	inquimus,	inquitis,	inquiunt.
IMP.	_____	_____	inquēbat;	_____	_____	inquēbant.
PER.	_____	inquisti,	inquit;	_____	_____	_____
FUT.	_____	inquies,	inquiet;	_____	_____	_____
Imp. PRES.	_____	inque,	inquīto;	_____	inquite.	_____
Part. PRES.	inquiens.					

3. *FOREM*, I should be.

Sub. IMP.	Fōrem,	fōres,	fōret,	_____	_____	fōrent.
Inf. FUT.	Fōre,	to be about to be,	same as	futurum esse.		

4. *Ave*, "hail."

Imp. PRES.	Ave, or avēto;	avēte, or avēlote.
Inf. PRES.	Avēre.	

5. *SALVE*, hail.

Ind. FUT.	Salvēbis.	
Imp. PRES.	Salve, or salvēto,	salvēte, or salvētōte.
Inf. PRES.	Salvēre.	

6. *CEDO*, tell, give.

Imp. PRES.	Cedo,	cedo, or cedite, contracted cete
------------	-------	----------------------------------

7. *QUÆSO*, I beseech.

Ind. PRES.	Quæso,	_____, _____,	quæstimus,	_____, _____
------------	--------	---------------	------------	--------------

6. *Ausim*, *faxim*, and *faxo*, sometimes called defective verbs are properly old forms of tenses; *Ausim* being put for *ausārim*, from *audio*, to dare; and *faxim*, and *faxo*, *sectrim* and *sectro* from *facio*. So also *age* and *agite*, "come," are imperatives from *ago* in a somewhat different sense, just as *ave*, "hail," is an imperative from *aveo* "to be well."

## § 85. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. IMPERSONAL VERBS are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a personal *subject* or nominative before them.

2. Impersonal verbs when translated literally into English. have before them the neuter pronoun *it* ; as, *delectat*, "it delights," *decet*, "it becomes," *contingit*, "it happens" *evēnit*, "it comes to pass;" &c. They are inflected thus,

	1st. Conj.	2d Conj.	3d. Conj.	4th Conj.
<i>Ind.</i> <b>PRÆ.</b> Delectat,	Decet,	Contingit,	Evēnit.	
<b>IMP.</b> Delectābat,	Decēbat,	Contingēbat,	Eveniēbat,	
<b>PER.</b> Delectāvit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evēnit,	
<b>PLU.</b> Delectāvērāt,	Decuērāt,	Contigērāt,	Evēnērāt.	
<b>FUT.</b> Delectābit,	Decēbit,	Continget,	Eveniet,	
<b>F. P.</b> Delectāverit.	Decuerit.	Contigērit.	Evenērit.	
<i>Sub</i> <b>PRÆ.</b> Delectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat	
<b>IMP.</b> Delectāret,	Decōret,	Contingēret,	Even ret	
<b>PER.</b> Delectāverit,	Decuērīt,	Contigērīt,	Evenērīt,	
<b>PLU.</b> Delectavisset.	Decuisset.	Contigisset.	Evenisset.	
<i>Inf.</i> <b>PRÆ.</b> Delectāre	Decēre.	Contingēre,	Evēnīre,	
<b>PER.</b> Delectāvisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evēnisse.	

3. Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice especially Intransitive, or Neuter verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnatur*, "it is fought;" *favētur*, "it is favored;" *currītur*, "it is run;" *vēnītur*, "it is come;" from *pugno*, *faveo*, *curro*, and *venio*. Thus,

<i>Ind. PRÆ.</i> Pugnātur	Favētur,	Currītur,	Venītur,
<i>IMP.</i> Pugnābātur,	Favēbātur,	Currēbātur,	Venībatur,
<i>PER.</i> Pugnātum est, <sup>1</sup>	Fautum est, <sup>1</sup>	Cursum est, <sup>1</sup>	Venitum est, <sup>1</sup>
<i>PLU.</i> Pugnātum ērāt <sup>2</sup>	Fautum ērāt <sup>2</sup>	Cursum ērāt <sup>2</sup>	Ventum ērāt <sup>2</sup>
<i>FUT.</i> Pugnābitur,	Favēbitur,	Currētur,	Veniētur,
<i>F. P.</i> Pugnātum ērit. <sup>3</sup>	Fautum ērit. <sup>3</sup>	Cursum ērit. <sup>3</sup>	Ventum ērit. <sup>3</sup>
<i>Sub. PRÆ.</i> Pugnōtur,	Faveatur,	Currātur,	Venlatur,
<i>IMP.</i> Pugnārētur,	Favērētur,	Currērētur,	Venirētur,
<i>PER.</i> Pugnatum sit, <sup>3</sup>	Fautum sit, <sup>3</sup>	Cursum sit, <sup>3</sup>	Ventum sit, <sup>3</sup>
<i>PLU.</i> Pugnātum esset <sup>4</sup>	Fautum esset <sup>4</sup>	Cursum esset <sup>4</sup>	Ventum esset <sup>4</sup>
<i>Inf. PRÆ.</i> Pugnāri,	Favēri,	Curri,	Veniri,
<i>PER.</i> Pugnātum esse <sup>5</sup>	Fautum esse <sup>5</sup>	Cursum esse <sup>5</sup>	Ventum esse, <sup>5</sup>
<i>FUT.</i> Pugnātum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

<sup>1</sup> or fuit. <sup>2</sup> or fuērat. <sup>3</sup> or fuērīt. <sup>4</sup> or fuisset. <sup>5</sup> or fuissē.

4. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; namely,

*Decet, decuit, &c.* it becomes, it became, &c.

*Libet, libuit, or libitum est, &c.* it pleases, it pleased, &c.

*Licet, licuit, or licitum est, &c.* it is lawful, it was lawful, &c.

*Misèret, misèruit, or miseritum est, &c.* it pities, it pitied, &c.

*Oportet, oportuit, &c.* it behooves, it was incumbent on, &c.

*Piget, piguit, or pigitum est, &c.* it grieves, it grieved, &c.

*Poenitet, poenituit, &c.* it repents, it repented, &c.

*Pudet, puduit, puditum est, &c.* it shames, it shamed, &c.

*Tædet, tæduit, or tæsum est, &c.* it wearies, it wearied, &c.

*Liquet, it appears.* This verb has no perfect.

But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

5. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *fulgurat*, it lightens; *fulminat, tonat*, it thunders; *grandinat*, it hails; so *gêlat, pluit, ningit, lucescit, advesperascit, &c.*

6. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs as their nominative, after the impersonals in the case which they govern; as,

<i>Placet mihi,</i>	it pleases me, or I please.
<i>Placet tibi,</i>	it pleases thee, or thou pleasest.
<i>Placet illi,</i>	it pleases him, or he pleases.
<i>Placet nobis,</i>	it pleases us, or we please.
<i>Placet vobis,</i>	it pleases you, or you please.
<i>Placet illis,</i>	it pleases them, or they please.

So *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo, &c.* It is fought by me, by thee, by him; that is, I fight, thou fightest, he fights; &c. Hence, as the meaning of a transitive verb may be expressed, either by the active or passive voice, so when an intransitive verb is translated by a verb considered transitive in English, (§ 38. *Obs.* 5.) the English passive form of that verb is expressed in Latin, by the passive used impersonally; thus, Active, *faveo tibi*, "I favour you;" Passively, *favetur tibi a me*, "you are favoured by me," and so of others.

7. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, "let it delight." In the passive voice their participles are used only in the neuter gender. The gerunds and supines are but seldom used

## § 86. EXERCISES ON IMPERSONALS.

[For the meaning of the impersonals used in the following exercises, see No. 2. 3. 4. of the preceding section.]

1. Give the designation, the place found, the translation; thus, *delectat*. A verb impersonal 1st conjugation; found in the present Indicative active; "it delights."

*Delectābit, decēbat, decēbit, decēret, contingit, continget, contigit, contigērit, evēnit, evēnit, eveniet, eveniat, pugnābātur, pugnātum est, pugnētur, pugnārētur, favētur, fautum sit, fautum fuērit, ventum est, ventum ērit;—libet, libuit, licitum est, misēret, miseritum est, piget, pudet, fulgurat, tōnat, &c.*

2. Give the designation, &c. as in No. 1, and translate as the word following the impersonal requires according to § 85. 6. Thus, *delectat me*. *Delectat*, a verb impersonal, 1st conj. Pres. Ind. Act. "it delights me," or "I delight."

*Delectābit me, te, illum, nos, vos, illos,—decet vos, decēret vos, placet tibi, favētur vobis, favēbitur nobis, (a te, by you,) pugnābītur ab illis, venītur a te, ventum est ab illis, a vobis, a nobis, ab illo, a te, a me; piget me, licet mihi, licēbit vobis, licitum est illis, misēret me, misēruit te, &c.*

3. Render the following English into Latin, by the impersonals; thus, I delight, *delectat me*, literally, "it delights me." N. B. The noun or pronoun, after *misēret, poenitet, pūdet, tædet, piget, decet, delectat, and oportet*, must be put in the accusative, § 113. Exc. II. & III. Other impersonals are followed by the dative of the object when they have one; and when they express any thing done by another, the agent or doer when expressed is put in the ablative preceded by *a* or *ab*, as in § 85. 6.

EXERCISES.—It becomes, it has repented, it is fought, it pleases, it is favoured; it becomes me, I repent, (it repents me,) I fight, (it is fought by me,) you are favoured, (it is favoured to you,) you are favoured by me, I repented, they have repented, you will repent, they are favored by us, by you, by me, &c. We are favored by them, by you; they come, (it is come by them,) they have come, we will come, we run, we will run, if (*si*,) you please, if they please, it was allowed to us, we were allowed, it delights us, or we are delighted, they are delighted, it thunders, it lightens, it hailed, &c.

## § 87. REDUNDANT VERBS.

REDUNDANT VERBS are those which have more than one form of the same part, or which have different forms to express the same sense; as, *assentio* and *assentior*, to assent; *fabřico* or *fabřicor*, to frame; *merĕo* and *merĕor*, to deserve; *Edis*, and *es*, "thou eatest;" *edit* and *est*, "he eats;" from *edo*, &c.

Redundant verbs in Latin are chiefly those which are used in different conjugations; for example,

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and sometimes of the third; as, *lavo*, *lavāre*, and *lavo*, *lavĕre*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second conjugation, and sometimes of the third; as,

*Ferveo*, *fervĕre*, and *fervo*, *fervĕre*, to boil.  
*Fulgeo*, *fulgĕre*, and *fulgo*, *fulgĕre*, to shine.  
*Strideo*, *stridĕre*, and *strido*, *stridĕre*, to creak, &c.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and sometimes of the fourth; as,

*Fodio*, *fodĕre*, and *fodio*, *fodĭre*, to dig.  
*Sallo*, *sallĕre*, and *sallio*, *sallĭre*, to salt, &c.

4. *Ciĕo*, *ciĕre* is commonly of the second conjugation, but sometimes it is *cio*, *cĭre* in the fourth, "to stir up."

## § 88. DERIVATIVE VERBS.

Verbs are derived either from *nouns* or from other *verbs*.

I. Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *coeno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *operor*, to work, &c. from *coena*, *laus*, *fraus*, *lapis*, &c.

But when they express imitation or resemblance they are called *Imitatives*; as, *patrisco*, *Græcor*, *băbŭlo*, *cornĭcor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, an owl, a crow; from *pater*, *Græcus*, *bubo*, *cornix*.

II. Verbs derived from other verbs are chiefly the following; viz.



1. **FREQUENTATIVES.** These express frequency of action and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *īto*, in the verbs of the first conjugation, and *u* into *o* in verbs of the other three conjugations; thus,

	<i>Last. Sup.</i>	<i>Freq.</i>
1st, Clamo, to cry;	clamātu, hence	clamīto, to cry frequently,
2d, Terreo, to frighten; terrīto,	"	terrīto, to frighten often.
3d, Verto, to turn; versu,	"	verso, to turn frequently.
4th, Dormio, to sleep; dormītu,	"	dormīto, to sleep often.

In like manner deponent verbs form frequentatives in *or*, as *minor*, to threaten; of which in the active voice, the latter supine would be *minātu*, and hence *minītor*, to threaten frequently, ever and anon.

*Obs. 1.* Some frequentatives are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato*, from *no*; *noscīto* from *nosco*; *scītor* or rather *sciscītor* from *scio*; *pavīto*, from *paveo*; *sector*, from *sequor*; *loquītor*, from *loquor*. So *quērīto*, *fundīto*, *agīto*, *fluīto*, &c. which formed regularly would be *quēsīto*, *fuso*, *acto*, *fluxo*, &c.

*Obs. 2.* From frequentative verbs are also formed other frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursīto*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsīto*, or by contraction *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *captīto*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantīto*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensīto*; *dīco*, *dicto*, *dicīto*, &c.

*Obs. 3.* Frequentatives do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning with greater force.

2. **INCEPTIVE VERBS.** These mark the beginning or continued increase of an action or state. They are formed by adding *-co* to the second person singular, of the present indicative; thus,

1st Conj. Labo,	labas,	Inceptive, labasco.
2d " Caleo,	cales,	" calesco.
3d " Tremo,	tremis,	" tremisco.
4th " Obdormio,	obdormis,	" obdormisco.

*Note.*—But all verbs in *-sco* are not inceptives. Inceptives are also formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvenis*.

*Obs. 4.* All inceptives are intransitives, and of the third conjugation. They properly want both the preterite and

supine, unless very rarely when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. **DESIDERATIVE VERBS**, are those which signify a *desire* or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine by adding *-rio*, and shortening *u*; as, *coend-  
tūrio*, "I desire to sup," from *coeno*, last supine, *coenātu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation, and want both preterite and supine, except these three; viz. *esūrio*, *esūrīre*, *esurīvi*, *esurītum*, to desire to eat; *partūrio*, *partūrīre*, *partūrīvi*,—to be in travail, and *nuptūrio*, *nuptūrīre*, *nuptūrīvi*,—to desire to be married.

4. **DIMINUTIVES**, which represent an action as little or insignificant. They are formed from the present by changing *o*, *eo*, and *io*, into *-illo*, and they are all of the first conjugation; as, *canto*, *cantillo*, *conscribo*, *conscribillo*, *sorbeo*, *sorbillo*.

5. Some verbs in *-SSO* are called **INTENSIVE**; as, *capesso*, *facesso*, *petesso*, or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

## § 89. OF ADVERBS.

**AN ADVERB** is a word joined to a *verb*, an *adjective*, or another *adverb*, to modify it, or denote some circumstance respecting it.

Adverbs may be considered in respect of *Signification*, *Derivation*, and *Comparison*.

### I. THE SIGNIFICATION OF ADVERBS

In respect of signification, adverbs may be arranged in Latin under the following heads:

1. **ADVERBS OF PLACE**, comprehending those which signify,

1st. *Motion or Rest in a place*; as, *ubi*, where; *hic*, here; *illic*, there; *intus*, within; *foris*, without; *ubique*, every where, &c.

2d. *Motion to a place*; as, *quo?* whither; *huc*, hither; *illuc*, *isthuc*, thither; *eò*, to that place; *aliò*, to another place, &c.

3d. *Motion from a place*; as, *unde*, whence; *hinc*, hence; *illinc*, *inde*, thence; *superne*, from above, &c.

4th. *Motion through or by a place*; as, *quà?* which way? *hàc*, this way; *alià*, another way, &c.

2. ADVERBS OF TIME ; as, *nunc*, now ; *hodie*, to-day ; *tum*, then ; *nuper*, lately ; *mox*, by and by ; *semper*, always, &c.

3. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY ; as, *parum*, little ; *multum*, much ; *pene*, almost ; *quanto*, how much, &c.

4. ADVERBS OF QUALITY ; as, *bene*, well ; *male*, ill ; *fortiter*, bravely, and many others derived from adjectives and participles.

5. ADVERBS OF MANNER, (viz. of action or condition,) including those which express *exhortation*, *affirmation*, *negation*, *granting*, *forbidding*, *interrogation*, *doubt*, *contingency*, &c. as, *profectò*, truly ; *non*, *haud*, not ; *cur* ? why ? *quare*, wherefore, &c.

6. ADVERBS OF RELATION, or such as express circumstances of *comparison*, *resemblance*, *order*, *assemblage*, *separation*, &c. as, *potius*, rather ; *ita*, *sic*, so ; *simul*, together ; *seorsum*, apart, &c.

## II. DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

The *Simple* and *Primitive* adverbs are but few in number ; as, *non*, not ; *ibi*, there ; *mox*, presently ; *tunc*, then, &c.

The *Derivative* Adverbs are numerous, and are formed in the following manner :

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declension generally end in *e* ; as, *alte*, highly ; from *altus* ; *libère*, freely, from *liber*. Sometimes they end in *o*, *um*, or *ter* ; as *tuto*, safely, from *tutus* ; *tantum*, so much, from *tantus* ; *dure* and *duriter*, hardly, from *durus*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the Third Declension generally end in *-ter* ; as, *feliciter*, happily, from *felix*. Sometimes *e* ; as, *facile*, easily, from *facilis* ; and one ends in *o*, namely, *omnino*, altogether, from *omnis*.

The Neuter gender of adjectives is often used adverbially ; as *recens*, recently, for *recenter* ; *torva*, sternly, for *torve* ; as, *dulce ridens*, sweetly smiling, &c.

3. Adverbs derived from nouns, generally end in *-im* or *-tus* ; as, *viritim*, man by man, from *vir* ; *funditus*, from the ground, from *fundus*.

Many adverbs in *-im*, however are derived from participles ; as, *sensim*, by degrees, from *sensus*, (*sentio*, I perceive.) A few in *-tus* are derived from adjectives ; as, *antiquitus*, from *antiquus*, &c.

4. Adverbs are formed by composition in various ways; two or more words forming a phrase or part of a sentence, and syntactically combined, being formed into one word; as, *hodie*, to-day, from *hoc die*; *scilicet*, truly, from *scire licet*; *quomodo*, how, from *quo modo*; *quamobrem*, wherefore, from *quam ob rem*, &c.

*Obs.* 1. The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express in one word what would otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely; for *cum sapientia*; *semper*, always, for *in omni tempore*, &c. Indeed similar phrases used to express circumstances of time, place, manner, order, and the like, constitute what may be called adverbial phrases, or clauses, though the words of which they consist, are to be parsed separately, and combined according to the rules of syntax.

*Obs.* 2. Some adverbs of time, place and order, are frequently used, the one for the other; as, *ubi*, where or when: *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, applied indifferently to place, time, or order.

*Obs.* 3. Some adverbs of time apply indifferently to the past, the present, or the future; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, sometime hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various in their use; as, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad, *redire peregre*, to return from abroad.

### III. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. The positive commonly ends in *-e*, *-o*, or *-ter*; the comparative in *-ius*; and the superlative in *-ime*; as,

Positive.	Comp.	Super.
Alte, <i>highly</i> ;	altius,	altissime.
Fortiter, <i>bravely</i> ;	fortius,	fortissime.
Acrius, <i>sharply</i> ;	acrius,	acerrime.
Libere, <i>freely</i> ;	liberius,	liberrime.
Tuto, <i>safely</i> ;	tutius,	tutissime.

The following adverbs are compared irregularly, like the adjectives from which they are derived; viz.

Bene, <i>well</i> ;	melius,	optime.
Facile, <i>easily</i> ;	facilius	facillime.
Male, <i>badly</i> ;	pejus,	pessime.
Multum, <i>much</i> ;	plus,	plurimum.
Parum, <i>little</i> ;	minus	{ minime.
		{ minimum.
Prope, <i>near</i> ;	propius.	proxime.

*Positive wanting.*

*Magis, more, maxime; ocius, more swiftly, occissime; prius, sooner, primo, or primum; potius, rather, potissimum.*

*Comparative wanting.*

*Pene, almost, penissime; nuper, lately, nuperrime; nove, or noviter, newly, novissime; merito, deservedly, meritissime.*

*Superlative wanting.*

*Satis, enough, satius; secus, otherwise, secius.*

Two Adverbs not derived from adjectives are also compared; namely, *diu, long, diutius, diutissime; and sæpe, often, sæpius, sæpissime.*

## § 90. OF PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun following it, and some other word in the sentence.

The preposition, as its name imports, stands before the noun or pronoun which it governs, and shews the relation between it and some preceding word.—In Latin;

*Twenty-eight Prepositions govern the Accusative; viz.*

Ad, to, at, towards.	Inter, between, among, during.
Apud, at, near, with.	Intra, within.
Ante, before, (of time, place or rank.)	Juxta, near, beside.
Adversus, } against, towards.	Ob, for, on account of, before.
Adversum, }	Penes, in the power of.
Circa, } around, about.	Per, through, during, by.
Circum, }	Pone, behind.
Circiter, about, (of time indefinitely.)	Post, behind, after, since.
Cis, } on this side, without.	Præter, besides, (passing by,) beyond, besides, except.
Citra, }	Propter, near, on account of.
Contra, against, opposite.	Secundum, along, according to
Erga, towards.	Supra, above.
Extra, beyond, out of.	Trans, across, over, beyond.
Infra, beneath.	Ultra, beyond.

*Fifteen Prepositions govern the Ablative, viz.*

A, {	E, {
Ab, { <i>from, by, after, &amp;c.</i>	Ex, { <i>out of, from, after, by.</i>
Abs, {	Palam, <i>before, with the know-</i>
Absque, <i>without.</i>	ledge of.
Clam, <i>without the knowledge of.</i>	Præ, <i>before, in comparison</i>
Coram, <i>before, in presence of.</i>	<i>with, on account of.</i>
Cum, <i>with.</i>	Pro, <i>before, for, according to.</i>
De, <i>concerning, of, over.</i>	Sine, <i>without.</i>
	Tenus, <i>as far as, up to.</i>

*Four Prepositions govern the Accusative or Ablative; viz.*

<i>With the Accusative.</i>	<i>With the Ablative.</i>
In, <i>into, towards, against.</i>	In, <i>upon, in, among.</i>
Sub, <i>under, (motion to,) about.</i>	Sub, <i>under, (motion or rest,)</i>
Super, <i>above, over, beyond.</i>	<i>at, near.</i>
Subter, <i>under.</i>	Super, <i>upon, concerning.</i>
	Subter, <i>under.</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *A* is used before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and *h, j, r, s,* and sometimes *l*; *abs* before *t* and *qu*. *E* is used before consonants.

2. *Tenus* is placed after its case; and also *cum*, when joined to *me, te, se, quo, qui,* and *quibus*; as, *mecum, &c.* *Clam* sometimes governs the Accusative as *clam patre, or patrem.*

3. The adverbs *prope, nigh, usque, as far as; versus, towards*; are often followed by an accusative governed by *ad* understood, and sometimes expressed. So also *procul, far*, is followed by the Ablative governed by *a*, understood.

4. Prepositions not followed by their case are to be regarded as Adverbs.

5. Prepositions are sometimes combined; as, *ex adversus eum locum.* Cic. *In ante diem*, "till the day." Cic. *Ex ante diem*, "from the day." But prepositions compounded together, commonly be come adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propälam, protinus, insuper, &c.*

6. A Preposition with its case is often used as an adverbial phrase; as, *ex animo*, "earnestly;" *ex adverso*, "opposite;" *ex improviso*, "suddenly;" *extempore*, "off-hand." *Quamobrem, (quam ob rem,)* "wherefore;" *quapropter (quæ propter,)* *quocirca (quod circa, &c.*

7. Prepositions are either primitive; as, *ad, apud, ante, &c.* or derivative; as, *adversum* from the adjective *adversus*; *secundum*, from *secundus*. They are either simple; as, *ad, ante, abs*; or compound as, *ex adversum, absque.*—Or inseparable as, *am, di* or *dis, &c*  
§ 91. 2

## § 91. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

1. Prepositions are often prefixed to other words especially to Verbs, the meaning of which they generally modify by their own; thus,

1. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, from; as *duco*, "I lead," *abduco*, "I lead away," or "from;" sometimes it denotes privation; as, *amens*, "mad."

2. *Ad*, to; as, *adduco*, "I lead to." It is sometimes intensive; as, *adamo*, "I love greatly."

3. *De*, in composition, generally signifies "downward;" as, *descendo*, "I go down;" *decido*, "I fall down;" sometimes it is intensive; as, *deamo*, "I love greatly;" sometimes it denotes privation; as, *despero*, "I despair;" *demens*, "mad."

4. *E* or *ex*, out of; from; as, *exeo*, "I go out;" it is sometimes intensive; as, *exoro*, "I beg earnestly." Sometimes privative; as *exanguis*, "pale;" *exspes*, "hopeless."

5. *In*, into, in, against; as, *infero*, "I bring in;" *irruo*, "I rush against or upon." With adjectives it generally reverses the signification; as, *infidus*, "unfaithful;" *indignus*, "unworthy." In some compounds it has contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives: as, *invocatus*, "called upon," "not called upon;" *immutatus*, "changed," "unchanged;" *impotens*, means "weak," sometimes "powerful."

6. *Per*, through, is commonly intensive, especially with adjectives; as, *perfacilis*, "very easy;" with *quam*, it is strongly intensive; as, *per quam facilis*, "exceedingly easy." In *perfidus*, "perfidious," it is negative.

7. *Præ*, before, with adjectives is intensive; as, *præclarus*, "very clear," "very renowned."

8. *Pro*, denotes "forth," as *produco*, "I lead forth."

9. *Sub*, often diminishes the signification; as, *rideo*, "I laugh;" *subrideo*, "I smile;" *albus*, "white;" *subalbus*, "whitish." Sometimes it denotes motion upwards; as, *subrigo*, "I raise up;" sometimes concealment; as, *rapio*, "I take;" *subripio*, "I take secretly," "I steal."

*Note*.—Prepositions frequently seem to add nothing to the words, with which they are compounded.

*Obs.* 1. In combining with the simple word, some prepositions frequently undergo a change of form, chiefly for the sake of euphony for which see § 80. R. 5.

## INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.

2. The following syllables, *am*, *di*, or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, are called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are never found except in compound words. Their general signification is as follows:

Am,	<i>about, around;</i>	as	Ambio,	<i>to surround.</i>
Di, or dis,	<i>asunder;</i>		Divello,	<i>to pull asunder.</i>
Re,	<i>back, again;</i>		Relëgo,	<i>to read again.</i>
Se,	<i>apart or aside;</i>		Sëpono,	<i>to lay aside.</i>
Con,	<i>together;</i>		Concresco,	<i>to grow together.</i>

*Obs.* 1. Some of these syllables in combining with the simple word sometimes vary their form, § 80. 5. and also further modify its signification; as,

1st. *Am* adds to the verb the general idea of round, round about.

2d. *Dis*, or *di*, sometimes reverses the meaning of the simple word; as, *facilis*, "easy;" *difficilis*, "difficult;" *fido*, "I trust," *diffido*, "I distrust;" sometimes it increases it; as, *cupio*, "I desire;" *discupio*, "I desire much."

3d. *Re* sometimes reverses the meaning of the simple word; as, *claudio*, "I shut;" *recludo*, "I open."

4th. *Se* has little variation of meaning. With adjectives it denotes privation; as, *securus*, "free from care."

5th. *Con*, (for *cum*,) conveys the idea of joint or combined action. and sometimes increases the meaning of the word with which it is compounded.

*Obs.* 2. The syllables *ne* and *ve* are also prefixed to words and have a negative signification; as, *fas*, "justice," *nefas*, "injustice;" "impiety;" *scio*, "I know," *nescio*, "I know not;" *sanus*, "healthy," *vesanus*, "sickly."

## § 92. OF INTERJECTIONS.

AN INTERJECTION is a word which expresses some emotion of the speaker; as, *Oh*, *hei*, *heu*, *ah*, *alas*!

Nouns and adjectives in the neuter gender are sometimes used as interjections; as, *pax*! "be still;" *malum*, "with a mischief!" *infandum*, "O shame!" *miserum*, "O wretched!" *nefas*, "O the villany!"

*Note.*—The same interjection is often used to express different emotions according to its connection; thus, *vah*, is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.



## § 93. OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a word which connects words or sentences; as *et*, *ac*, *atque*, "and;" *sed* "but;" *etiam*, "also &c.

Conjunctions according to their different significations may be divided into the following classes,

1. COPULATIVES or such as connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, *que*, and; *etiam*, *quoque*, also; and sometimes the negative *nec*, *neque*, nor, and not.

2. DISJUNCTIVES, or such as connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *seu*, *sive*, *ve*, *vel*, either, or; and the negative *neve*, *neu*, neither, nor.

3. CONCESSIVES, or such as express a concession; as, *est*, *estiamsi*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quanquam*, *quamvis*, though, although.

4. ADVERSATIVES, or such as express a condition; as, *at*, *atqui*, *autem*, *ceterum*, *verum*, but; *tamen*, *attamen*, *veruntamen*, yet, although; *vero*, truly.

5. CASUALS, or such as express a cause or reason; as, *enim*, *etnim*, *nam*, *namque*, for; *quando*, *quandoquidem*, whereas, since; *quia*, *quippe*, *quod*, because; *quoniam*, *quum*, (or *cum*), since, *siquidem*, if, indeed.

6. ILLATIVES, or such as express an inference; as, *ergo*, *idcirco*, *proinde*, *quapropter*, *quare*, *quamobrem*, *quocirca*, therefore.

7. FINALS, or such as denote a purpose, object or result; as, *ne*, lest; *quin*, but that; *quominus*, that not; *ut*, *uti*, that.

8. CONDITIONALS, or such as express a condition; as, *si*, *sin* if; *nisi* or *ni*, unless; *dummodo*, or *dum modo*, provided that.

9. SUSPENSIVES, or such as express doubt; as, *an*, *anne*, *annon*, *ne*, *neque*, *num*, *utrum*, whether, whether or not.

*Obs.* 1. Some words, as, *deinde*, "thereafter;" *denique*, "finally," *ceterum*, "but, moreover;" *videlicet*, "to wit;" &c. may be considered either as adverbs or conjunctions, according as their modifying or connecting power prevails.

*Obs.* 2. *Autem*, *enim*, *vero*, *quoque*, *quidem*, are never put first in a clause or sentence. *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, are always annexed to another word. They are called *Enclitics*, because when placed after a long syllable, they make the accent incline to that syllable; as, *disce*, *tróchi*; *discíve* *tróchive*.

*Obs.* 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, *idcirco*, *ideo*, *namque*, *nec* or *neque*, &c.

## PART THIRD.

---

### § 94. SYNTAX.

**SYNTAX** is that part of Grammar, which treats of the proper arrangement and connection of words in a sentence.

1. A *sentence* is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense ; as, *Man is mortal*.

2. A *phrase* is two or more words rightly put together, but not making complete sense ; as, *In truth, in a word*.

3. *Sentences* are of two kinds. *simple* and *compound*.

4. A *simple* sentence contains but one subject and one verb ; as, *Life is short*.

5. A *compound* sentence contains two or more simple sentences combined ; as, *Life which is short, should be well employed*.

6. Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the *subject* and the *predicate*.

7. The *subject* is the thing chiefly spoken of. It is either in the nominative case before a finite verb, or in the accusative before the infinitive.

8. The *predicate* is the thing affirmed or denied of the subject. It is either contained in the verb itself ; as, *John reads* ; or it consists of an intr. verb, with an adjective or noun following it ; as, *Time is short ; they became poor ; he is a scholar*

9. Both the subject and predicate may be attended by other words called *adjuncts*, which serve to restrict or modify the meaning of the word with which they may stand connected ; as, An inordinate *desire* of admiration often *produces* a contemptible *levity* of deportment.

10. When a compound sentence is so framed that the meaning is suspended till the whole be finished, it is called a *period*.

---

### § 95. GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood, and a *subject* expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle must have a substantive expressed or understood with which it agrees. § 98 and 146

3. Every relative must have an antecedent or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees. § 99.

4. Every nominative has its own verb expressed or understood, of which it is the subject. § 100, 101, 102. Or is placed after the substantive verb in the predicate. § 103.

5 Every finite verb; i. e. every verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood. § 101, 102. and when the infinitive has a subject it is in the accusative. § 145. The infinitive without a subject does not form a sentence or proposition. § 143.

6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood in the sentence of which it forms a part; or without government, to express certain circumstances, § 127.

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE GOVERNMENT OF CASES.

7. The GENITIVE CASE is governed,

1st. By substantives. § 106. Rules, VI. VII. and VIII.

2d. By adjectives. § 107. Namely, verbals, &c. R. IX.—Partitives, R. X.—Of plenty or want, R. XI.

3d. By verbs. § 108. Namely, *Sum*, R. XII.—*Miserēor*, &c. R. XIII.—*Recordor*, *memini*, &c. R. XIV.—Of accusing, &c. § 122. R. XXVII.—Of valuing, R. XXVIII.—Passive verbs. § 126. R. I. and II.—Impersonals. § 113. Exc. I. and II.

4th. By adverbs. § 135, and,

5th. It is used to express circumstances of place. § 130. R. XXXVI. and XXXIX.

8. The DATIVE is governed,

1st. By substantives. § 110.

2d. By adjectives of profit or disprofit, &c. § 111. R. XVI

3d. By verbs. § 112. Namely, *Sum*, and its compound. R. I.—*Est*. R. II. Certain compound verbs. R. III. and IV.—Verbs signifying to profit or hurt, &c. R. V. Impersonals. § 113.—Verbs with two datives. § 114.—Verbs of comparing, &c. § 123.—Passive verbs. § 126. R. XXXII. and XXXIII.—Gerunds. § 147.

4th. By adverbs. § 135.—Interjections, § 117.

9. The ACCUSATIVE is governed,

1st. By verbs signifying actively. § 116. R. XX.—To which belong *Recordor*, *memini*, &c. § 108. Verbs governing two cases. § 122, namely of accusing, R. XXVII.—Valuing, R. XXVIII.—Comparing, &c. § 123.—Asking and teaching, § 124.—Loading, binding, &c. § 125.—By impersonal verbs, § 113. *Ex*. II. and III.—By passive verbs. § 126 R. IV

2d. By prepositions, § 136. R. XLVIII. L. LI. LII.

3d. It is used to express circumstances of limitation, § 128.—of place, § 130.—Of time, § 131.—Of measure, § 132.

4th. It is put before the infinitive as its subject. § 145.

10. The VOCATIVE is governed by the interjections O, *heu*, *pro*, &c. § 117.—Or is used without government to denote the person addressed.

11. The ABLATIVE is governed,

1st. By nouns, § 118.

2d. By adjectives, viz. of plenty or want, § 107. R. XI.—*Dignus*, *indignus*, &c. § 119.—The comparative degree, § 120.

3d. By verbs, § 121. viz. of plenty and scarceness, R. XXV.—*Utor* *abutor*, &c. R. XXVI.—Loading, binding, &c. § 125.—Passive verbs § 126. R. V.

4th. By prepositions, § 136. R. XLIX. LI. LII.

5th. It is used without a governing word to express circumstances, viz.—Of limitation, § 128.—Of cause, manner, &c. § 129.—Of place, § 130. Namely, the place in which, R. XXXVI.—from which, R. XXXVIII. and XXXIX.—Of time, § 131. R. XL. and XLI.—Of measure, § 132. R. XLII. XLIII.—Of price. § 123.

6th. It is used as the case absolute. § 146. R. LX.

### CONSTRUCTION OF MOODS

12. The *Indicative* and *Imperative* moods are independent and without government,

13. The *Subjunctive Mood* is always dependent, and is used,

1st. After certain conjunctions, § 140.

2d. After the relative in certain connections, § 141, R. LV

3d. In oblique discourse, § 141. RULE VI.

14. The *Infinitive Mood* is used,

1st. Without a subject, or as a verbal noun, § 144. and R. LVI LVII.

2d. With a subject in dependent and subordinate clauses, § 145.

15. *Participles* are construed as adjectives, *Gerunds* and *Supines* as nouns, § 146. 147. 148.

16. For the construction of adverbs and conjunctions, see § 134. 149.

## § 96. PARTS OF SYNTAX.

The Parts of Syntax are commonly reckoned two, *Concord* or agreement, and *Government*.

CONCORD is the agreement of one word with another, in *gender*, *number*, *case*, or *person*.

GOVERNMENT is that power which one word has in determining the *mood*, *tense*, or *case* of another word.

## I. OF CONCORD.

CONCORD or agreement is fourfold; viz.

1. Of a substantive with a substantive.
2. Of an adjective with a substantive.
3. Of a relative with its antecedent.
4. Of a verb with its nominative or subject.

## § 97. A SUBSTANTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

RULE I. Substantives denoting the same person or thing agree in *case*; as,

*Cicero orator,*  
*Ciceronis oratoris,*  
*Urbs Athenæ,*  
*Urbi Athenis,*

Cicero the orator.  
Of Cicero the orator, &c.  
The city Athens.  
To the city Athens.

EXPLANATION.—Substantives thus used are said to be in *APPOSITION*. The second substantive is added to express some *attribute*, *description*, or *appellative* belonging to the first, and must always be in the same member of the sentence; i. e. they must be both in the subject or both in the predicate. A substantive predicated of another, though denoting the same thing, is not in apposition with it, and does not come under this rule, § 103.

This rule applies to all substantive words, such as personal and relative pronouns, adjectives used substantively, &c.

Nouns in apposition are often connected in English, by such particles as *as*, *being*, *for*, *like*, &c. as, *Pater misit me comitem*, "My father sent me as a companion," "for a companion," &c.

## OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs. 1.* It is not necessary that nouns in apposition agree in *gender*, *number*, or *person*. In these respects they are often different; as, *Magnum pauperies opprobrium*. Hor. *Alexin delicias domini*. Virg.

*Obs. 2.* Two or more nouns in the singular have a noun in apposition in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribuni plebis*, "Marcus Antonius, Caius Cassius, tribunes of the people." Also if the

singular nouns be of different genders, the plural in apposition will have the masculine rather than the feminine, if both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum et Cleopatram reges*, (not *reginas*) *legati missi*. Liv.

Obs. 3. The substantive pronoun having a word in apposition is frequently omitted; as, *Consul dixi*, (scil. *ego*), “(I) the consul said.”

Obs. 4. The possessive pronoun being equivalent to the genitive of the personal, has a noun in apposition with it in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum, hominis simplicis*.

Obs. 5. Sometimes the former noun denotes a *whole*, of which the noun in apposition expresses the *parts*; as, *Onerariæ, pars ad Ægimurum*,—*aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delatæ sunt*, “The ships of burden were carried, *part* to Ægimurus,—*others* against the city itself.” So *Quisque pro se quæruntur*, “*They* complain *each* for himself.”

Obs. 6. A sentence or clause may supply the place of one of the substantives; as, *Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam*; “Let him consider that an orator is training, a difficult matter.”

### Exceptions.

Exc. 1. Sometimes the latter substantive is put in the genitive; as, *Fons Timavi*, “The fountain of Timavus;” *Amnis Eridani*, “The river Eridanus;” *Arbor fici* “the fig tree;” *Nomen Mercurii est mihi*. Words thus construed may be referred to § 112.

Exc. 2. A proper name after the generic term *nomen*, or *cognomen*, sometimes elegantly takes the case of the person in the Dative; as, *Nomen Arcturo est mihi*, “I have the name Arcturus.” Plaut. So. *Cui nunc cognomen Iulo additur*. Virg. *Cui Egerio inditum nomen*. Liv. *Mansit Silviis postea omnibus cognomen*. Liv. § 114. Obs. 5.

Exc. 3. The name of a Town in the genitive, denoting *at a place*, may have a noun of the third declension or plural number, in apposition with it in the Ablative, and vice versa; as, *Corinthis Achaia urbe*, “*At Corinth a city* of Achaia.” This construction depends on the rules, § 130.

## § 98. AN ADJECTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

RULE II. An adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

<i>Bonus vir</i> , a good man.	<i>Bonos viros</i> , good men.
<i>Bona puella</i> , a good girl.	<i>Bonarum legum</i> , of good laws.
<i>Dulce pomum</i> , a sweet apple.	<i>Tuis donis</i> , with thy gifts.

EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to all adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles; and requires that they be in the same gender, number, and case with their substantives.—The word “substantive,” in this rule, includes personal and relative pronouns, and all words or phrases used as substantives

## OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs. 1.* Two or more substantives singular, unless taken separately, have an adjective plural; as,

*Vir et puer territi lupo*, "A man and boy terrified by a wolf."

*Obs. 2.* If all the substantives be of the same gender, the adjectives will be of that gender, as in the above example. But if the substantives are of different genders, the adjective takes the masculine rather than the feminine, and the feminine rather than the neuter; as,

*Pater mihi, et mater mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter.

*Obs. 3.* But if they denote things without life, the adjective is commonly neuter. And if some of the substantives refer to things with life, and others to things without life, the adjective is either neuter, or takes the gender of the thing or things with life; as,

*Labor voluptasque sunt dissimilia naturâ*, "Toil and pleasure are unlike in nature."

*Naves et captivi quæ ad Chium captae sunt*, "The ships and captives which were taken at Chios."

*Numidæ atque militaria signa obscurati sunt*, "The Numidians and their military standards were partially concealed."

*Obs. 4.* Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood to the rest; as, *sociis et rege recepto*. Virg. "Our companions and king being recovered."

*Note 1.* These observations may, and sometimes do hold good, even when one or more of the substantives are in the ablative, connected with the others by *cum*; as, *Filiam cum filio accitos*.

*Obs. 5.* When the substantive to which the adjective or adjective pronoun belongs, may be easily supplied, it is frequently omitted, and the adjective assuming its gender, number, and case, is often used as a substantive, and may have an adjective agreeing with it; as,

<i>Mortalis</i> , a mortal, (sc. <i>homo</i> .)	<i>Ille</i> , he, (sc. <i>homo</i> .)
<i>Superi</i> , the gods above, (sc. <i>dii</i> .)	<i>Illi</i> , they, (sc. <i>homines</i> )
<i>Dextra</i> , the right hand, (sc. <i>manus</i> .)	<i>Hic</i> , he, (sc. <i>homo</i> .)
<i>Sinistra</i> , the left hand, (sc. <i>manus</i> )	<i>Hæc</i> , she, (sc. <i>femina</i> .)
<i>Omnia alia</i> , all other. (things,)	<i>Familiaris meus</i> , "my intimate friend." (sc. <i>amicus</i> .)

*Obs. 6.* The adjective, especially when used as a predicate, without a substantive or definite object, is used in the neuter gender; as,

<i>Triste lupo stabulis</i> ,	The wolf is grievous to the folds.
<i>Vacare culpa est suave</i> ,	To be free from blame is pleasant
<i>Labor vincit omnia</i> ,	Labor overcomes all obstacles

*Obs. 7.* Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, when used substantively, take an adjective in the neuter gender ; as,

<i>Supræmum vale dixit,</i>	He pronounced a last farewell.
<i>Cras istud quando venit,</i>	When does that to-morrow come ?
<i>Excepto quod non simul esses,</i>	That you were not present, being ex- cepted.

*Obs. 8.* A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective ; as, *populum late regem* (for *regnantem*), "a people of extensive sway." *Nemo miles Romanus*, "No Roman Soldier." Sometimes an adverb ; as, *Heri semper lenitas*, probably for *lenitas semper existens*, or the like.

*Obs. 9.* These adjectives, *primus, medius, ultimus, extræmus, infimus, imus, summus, supræmus, reliquus, cætera*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing, and are placed before the substantive ; as, *media nox*, "the middle of the night ;" *summus mons*, "the top of the mountain."

*Obs. 10.* Some adjectives denoting the time or circumstances of an action are used in the sense of adverbs ; as, *prior venit*, "he came first of the two ;" *pronus cecidit*, "he fell forward ;" *abiit sublimis*, "he went on high."

*Obs. 11.* *Alius* though an adjective is often used as a pronoun, and has this peculiarity of construction, that when repeated with a different word in the same clause, it renders the one simple proposition to which it belongs equivalent to two, and it is to be so rendered ; thus, *Aliud aliis videtur optimum*, "One thing seems best to some, another seems best to others." So, *Duo reges, alius aliâ via, ille bello, hic pace, civitatem auxerunt*, "Two kings, one in one way and another in another, &c. Or the two simple sentences may be combined in a plural form, thus: "Different things seemed best to different persons."—"Two kings, each in a different way ;" &c. The same is true when a word derived from *alius*, such as *aliunde, alter, aliò*, is put with it in the same clause ; as, *Aliis aliunde periculum est*, "There is danger to one person from one source, and to another from another,"—or combined, "There is danger to different persons from different sources."

*Obs. 12.* When *alius* is repeated in a different clause, but in the same construction, the first is to be rendered "one," the second "another." If plural "some"—"others," as, *aliud est maledicere, aliud accusare*, "It is one thing to rail at, another to accuse." Cic. *Proferébant alii purpuram, thus alii*, "Some brought forth purple, others incense."

This remark is applicable to *alter*, remembering only, that *alius* signifies ONE OF MANY, *alter*, ONE OF TWO ; as, *Quorum alter exercitum perdidit alter vendidit*.

### Exceptions

*Exc. 1.* An adjective is often put in a different gender or number from the substantive with which it is connected



tacitly referring to its meaning rather than to its form, or to some other word synonymous with it, or implied in it; as,

*Latium Capuaque agro multatī*, "Latium and Capua were deprived of their land," i. e. the people of Latium, &c. *Capita conjurationis virgis cæri*,—"the heads (i. e. the leading men) of the conspiracy." &c.

*Exc. 2.* A collective noun in the singular, if its verb be plural, has an adjective in the plural, and in the gender of the individuals which form the collection; as,

*Pars in flumen acti sunt*, "*A part were forced into the river.*" Sometimes it takes the gender of the individual in the singular; as, *pars arduus furit*, &c.

*Exc. 3.* A plural noun or pronoun used to denote one person, in comic writers, sometimes has an adjective or participle in the singular, as *Nobis presente*, "I being present."

*Exc. 4.* The adjective pronouns, *uterque*, *quisque*, &c. in the singular, are often put with nouns in the plural, to intimate that the objects are spoken of individually and distributively; as, *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt*, "Each of them leads his army from the camp." *Quisque pro se queruntur*, "They complain each one for himself." *Alius* and *alter* are sometimes used in the same way; as, *Multa conjecta sunt aliud alio tempore*. *Obs. 11.* In this construction there is a kind of apposition. § 97. *Obs. 5.*

## § 99. THE RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

**RULE III.** The relative *Qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

*Ego qui scribo,*  
*Tu qui legis,*  
*Vir qui loquitur,*  
*Viri qui loquuntur,*

I who write.  
Thou who readest.  
The man who speaks.  
The men who speak.

**EXPLANATION.**—The antecedent is the noun or pronoun going before the relative to which it refers. Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause is placed before the antecedent and its clause.

The infinitive mood or a part of a sentence is sometimes the antecedent, in which case the relative must be in the neuter gender. The case of the relative depends on the construction of the clause to which it belongs, (See *Obs. 9.*) and in this respect is to be considered as a noun.

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs. 1.* Strictly speaking, the relative does not agree with the antecedent, but with the same word expressed or understood after the relative, and with which, like the adjective,

it agrees in *gender, number and case*, as well as *person*; thus, *Diem dicunt, quâ (diē,) &c.* They appoint a day on which (day,) &c. Hence in connecting the antecedent and relative clause, the following variety of usage occurs, viz :

- 1st. The word to which the relative refers is commonly expressed in the antecedent clause, and not with the relative; as, *vir sapit qui pauca loquitur*, "he is a wise man who speaks little."
- 2d. It is often not expressed in the antecedent clause, and expressed with the relative; as, *In quem primum egressi sunt locum Troja vocatur*, i. e. *locus in quem, &c.*
- 3d. Sometimes when greater precision is required, it is expressed in both; as, *Erant omnino itinēra duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.*
- 4th. When the reference is of a general nature, and there is no danger of obscurity, the word to which the relative refers is understood in both clauses; as, *Sunt quos juvat collegisse*, i. e. *sunt homines quos (homines) juvat, &c.* *Non habeo quod te accusem*, i. e. *non habeo id propter quod te accusem.*

*Obs. 2.* The antecedent is sometimes implied in a preceding word; as, *omnes laudare fortunas meas qui habērem, &c.* "all were praising my fortune who had," &c. i. e. *fortunas mei qui*, the possessive *meas*, being equivalent to the genitive of *ego*. § 30. *Obs. 1.*

*Obs. 3.* When a relative refers to one or two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it may agree with either; as, *Flumen est Arar quod, &c.* Here *quod* agrees with *flumen*. *Ad flumen Ossum perventum est, qui, &c.* Here *qui* agrees with *Ossum*.

*Obs. 4.* So also when the relative stands between two nouns meaning the same thing, the one in the antecedent and the other in the relative clause, it may agree with either: as, *Genus hominum, quod vocatur Helotes; Animal quem vocamus hominem.* In the first sentence *quod* agrees with *genus* in the antecedent clause, in the second, *quem* agrees with *hominem* in the relative clause.

*Obs. 5.* An adjective which properly belongs to the antecedent is sometimes placed in the relative clause, agreeing with the relative. This is the case, especially if the adjective be a numeral, a comparative, or superlative; as, *Inter jocos, quos inconditos jaciunt, for jocos inconditos, quos, &c.* "Amidst the rude jests which they utter." *Nocte, quam in terris ultimam egit, for Nocte ultimā, quam, &c.* "The last night which he spent upon earth."

*Obs. 6.* When a relative refers to two or more antecedents taken together, it agrees with them in gender and number, in all respects as the adjective does with different substantives, as stated, § 98 *Obs. 1. 2. 3. 4.* But,

If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative plural takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third.

*Exc. 1.* The relative sometimes takes the gender and number, not of the antecedent noun, but of some one synonymous with it or implied in it; as, *Eārum rerum quæ mortāles prima putant,* "Of those things

which men deem most important." Here *quæ* seems to agree with *negotia*, considered synonymous with *rerum*.—*Dāret ut catēnis fatāle monstrum quæ*. The antecedent is *monstrum*, but *quæ* agrees with *Cleopatra*, the monster intended. *Conjuravēre pauci contra rempublicam, de quā* (scil. *conjuratiōe*, implied in *conjuravēre*.) *quam brevissime potēro dīcam*. "A few entered into a conspiracy against the republic, concerning which," &c.

*Obs. 7.* The relative *quicunque* and *quivis*, are sometimes used instead of *qui*, when a general or indefinite term is expressed or understood with the antecedent; as, *quæ sanāri potērunt quācunque ratione sanābo*; equivalent to *omni ratione quācunque* (*possum*.) "What can be cured, I will cure by every means I can."

This construction corresponds to that of the Greek ὅστις. Gr. Gram. § 135. 7.

*Obs. 8.* When the relative clause is connected with the antecedent, not by the relative itself but by some such connective as *cum* or *quum*, *ubi*, *si*, &c. signifying "when," "if," &c. the relative assumes the character of a *personal* or *demonstrative*, with or without *et* prefixed; as, *et ille, et hic, et is, et illi*, &c. and may generally be rendered by these pronouns; as, *qui quum legātos non admittēret*, "and when he would not admit the ambassadors;" *quæ ubi convenit*, "when it (sc. *classis* the fleet,) assembled." *Ad quārum initium silvārum quum Cæsar pervenisset*, "When Cæsar had come to the beginning of these woods." *Quam quum Romanōrum dux dāre nōlet*, "And when the Roman general would not grant this, (sc. *pacem*, peace.) &c.

### CASE OF THE RELATIVE.

*Obs. 9.* The relative in respect of case, is always to be considered as a noun, and if no nominative come between it and the verb, the relative shall be the nominative to the verb; as, *Ego, qui scribo*, I who write. But,

If a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be of that case which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually governs; as,

<i>Deus quem colimus,</i>	God whom we worship.
<i>Cujus munere vivimus,</i>	By whose gift we live.
<i>A quo facta sunt omnia,</i>	By whom all things were made.

*Exc. 2.* The relative after the manner of the Greek, is sometimes attracted into the case of its antecedent; as, *cum agas aliquid eorum quōrum consuesti* &c. for *eōrum quæ consuesti*, "When you do any of those things which you have been accustomed to do." *Raptim quibus quisque potērat elātis*, for (*iis*) *quæ quisque*, &c. Those things which each one could being hastily snatched up.

*Exc. 3.* The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; as, *Urbem quam statuo vestra est*, for *URBS quam statuo*, &c. "The city which I am building is yours."

These are Greek constructions seldom used by Latin writers. See Greek Gr. § 135. *Exc. 9. 10.*

*Obs.* 10. The relative adjectives *quot*, *quotus*, *quantus*, *qualis*, are often construed in a manner similar to the relative, having their *red-ditives*, or corresponding adjectives *tot*, *totus*, *tantus*, *talis*, expressed in the antecedent clause ; as, *Facies qualem decet esse sororūm*, i. e. *talis facies*, "The features, such as usually belong to sisters." *Tantæ multitudinis quantam capit urbs*, "Of as great a multitude as the city contains."

When the relative adjective and its redditive refer to different substantives, each agrees with its own. But among the poets, the relative sometimes agrees with the substantive in the antecedent clause. and not with that in its own.

Sometimes the redditive is understood, and sometimes the relative.

## § 100. CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

The Nominative case is used,

1. To express the subject of a proposition.
2. In apposition with another substantive in the nominative (§ 97.) or predicated of it. § 103.
3. In exclamations ; as, *O vir fortis atque Amicus!*

## § 101. THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE.

RULE IV. A Verb agrees with its nominative in number and person ; as,

<i>Ego</i> lego,	I read.	<i>Nos</i> legimus,	We read.
<i>Tu</i> scribis,	Thou writest,	<i>Vos</i> scribitis,	Ye write.
<i>Ille</i> loquitur,	He speaks.	<i>Illi</i> loquuntur,	They speak.

**EXPLANATION**—The nominative to a verb is the subject or thing spoken of in the sentence. It may be a noun, a pronoun, an adjective used as a noun, the infinitive, a gerund, or a part of a sentence. To all these this rule applies and requires that the verb should be in the same number and in the same person as the nominative. For person, see § 28. *Obs.* 1. 2.

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs.* 1. The nominatives *Ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, of the first and second person are generally omitted, being obvious from the termination of the verb ; also, of the third person when it is an indefinite word, or may be easily supplied from the context ; as *ferunt*, they say, &c.

*Obs.* 2 The subject is also omitted when the verb expresses the

state of the weather, or an operation of nature; as, *Fulgurat*, it lightens; *pluit*, it rains; *ningit*, it snows.

*Obs.* 3. Impersonal verbs are usually considered as without a nominative. Still they will generally be found to bear a relation to some circumstance, sentence, clause of a sentence, or infinitive mood, similar to that between a verb and its nominative; as, *delectat me studere*; "it delights me to study," i. e. "to study delights me;" *misereat me tui*, "I pity you;" i. e. *conditio*, or *fortuna tui misereat me*, "your condition excites my pity. § 144. *Obs.* 1.

*Obs.* 4. The verb is sometimes omitted when the nominative is expressed, and sometimes when it is understood; as, *Nam ego Polydorus*, (sc. *sum*.) "For I am Polydorus." *Omnia præclara rara*, (sc. *sunt*.) "All excellent things are rare." *Tum ille*, (sc. *respondit*.) "Then he replied." *Verum hæc tunc hæc*, (sc. *diximus*.)

*Obs.* 5. When the subject is an infinitive, or a clause of a sentence the verb is in the third person singular; and, if a compound tense. the participle is put in the neuter gender; as, *incertum est quam longa nostrum cujusque vita futura sit*, "How long any of us shall live is uncertain."

*Obs.* 6. The nominative is sometimes found with the infinitive, in which case *cæpit* or *cæperunt*, or some other verb according to the sense is understood; as, *Omnes invidere mihi*, "Every one envied me." The infinitive with the nominative before it is so common in historical narrative that it is called the *historical infinitive*. Thus used, it is translated as the imperfect, for which tense it seems to be used. § 144. *Obs.* 6.

## § 102. SPECIAL RULES AND OBSERVATIONS.

### I. *Of agreement in number and person.*

**RULE I.** Two or more substantives singular, taken together, have a verb in the plural: Taken separately, the verb is usually singular; as,

Together,

*Furor iræque mentem præcipitant*, Fury and rage hurry on my mind.

Separately,

*Si Socrates aut Antisthènes diceret*, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say.

*Obs.* 1. To both parts of this rule however, and especially to the first there are many exceptions. If one of the nominatives be plural, the verb is commonly plural. But sometimes the verb agrees with the nominative nearest it, and is understood to the rest, especially when each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, or they denote things without life; as, *Mens enim, et ratio, et consilium in sentibus est*.

When the nominatives are disjunctively connected by *aut*, *neque*, &c. the verb is sometimes plural; and it is always so when the substantives are of different persons; as, *neque ego, neque Cæsar habiti essemus*

*Obs.* 2. A substantive in the nominative singular, coupled with another in the ablative by *cum*, may have a plural verb; as, *Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt*.

*Obs.* 3. When the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is commonly plural, and takes the first person rather than the second and the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valēmus*, "If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well."

But sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest nominative, and is understood to the rest, and always so when the verb has different modifications with each nominative; as, *ego misere, tu feliciter vivis*.

**RULE II.** A collective noun expressing many as one whole has a verb in the singular; as,

<i>Populus me sibilat,</i>	The people hiss at me.
<i>Senatus in curiam venit,</i>	The Senate came into the Senate-house.

But when it expresses many as individuals, the verb must be plural; as,

<i>Pars epulis onerant mensas,</i>	Part load the tables with food.
<i>Turba ruunt,</i>	The crowd rush.
<i>Veniunt leve vulgus euntque,</i>	The fickle populace come and go.

*Obs.* 4. To both parts of this rule there are also exceptions, and in some cases it seems indifferent whether the verb be in the singular or plural, sometimes both are joined with the same word; as, *Turba ex eo loco dilabebatur, refracturosque carcerem minabantur*.

*Obs.* 5. *Uterque, quisque, pars....pars, alius,....alius*, and *alter....alter*, on account of the idea of plurality involved, frequently have the verb in the plural. This construction may be explained on the principle mentioned, § 98. *Exc.* 4. where see examples.

## § 103. OF THE NOMINATIVE AFTER THE VERB.

**RULE V.** Any verb may have the same case after it as before it, when both words refer to the same thing; as,

<i>Ego sum discipulus,</i>	I am a scholar.
<i>Tu vocāris Joannes,</i>	Thou art called John.
<i>Illa incēdit reginā,</i>	She walks (as) a queen.

**EXPLANATION:**—Under this rule the nominative before the verb is the *subject* or thing spoken of, the nominative after it is the *predicate* or the thing asserted of the subject. The verb is the *copula* connecting the one with the other and is usually a substantive or neuter verb, a passive verb of naming, judging appointing, &c.

This rule applies to the accusative and dative before and after the infinitive of the above verbs. See *Obs.* 5. 6. 7. 8.

## OBSERVATIONS

*Obs. 1.* Any of the above verbs between two nominatives of different numbers, commonly agrees in number with the former or subject; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, "Her dowry is ten talents." Ter. *Omnia pontus erant*, "All was sea." Ovid. But sometimes with the latter or predicate; as, *Amantium iræ, amoris integratio est*, "The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love."

So also when the nouns are of different genders, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or a participle in the predicate, commonly agrees with the subject of the verb; as, *oppidum appellatum est Possidonia*:—But sometimes with the predicate; as *Non omnis error stultitia dicenda est*. Cic.

*Obs. 2.* When the predicate is an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle without a substantive, it agrees with the subject before the verb according to Rule II. § 98. Except as noticed in the same section, *Obs. 6.*

*Obs. 3.* When the subject is of the second person, and the vocative stands before the verb, the adjective or participle will usually be in the nominative, according to the rule; as, *esto, tu, Cæsar amicus*; but sometimes it is put in the vocative; as, *Quibus Hector ab oris expectate venis*.—Virg. for *expectatus*. Hence the phrase, *Macte virtute esto*, for *mactus*.

*Obs. 4.* The noun *opus* commonly rendered "needful," is often used as a predicate after *sum*; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, "A leader is wanted by us."

*Note.*—Such expressions as *Audivi hoc puer*, —*Rempublicam defendi adolescens*, —*Sapiens nil facit invitus*, belong more properly to Rule I. and II. than to this.

*Obs. 5.* The accusative or dative before the infinitive under this Rule, requires the same case after it in the predicate; as,

*Novimus te esse fortem,* We know that thou art brave.  
*Mihi negligenti non esse licet,* I am not allowed to be negligent.

*Obs. 6.* When the subject of the infinitive is the same with the subject of the preceding verb, it is often omitted, in which case the predicate after the infinitive is in the nominative agreeing with the preceding subject, or in the Accusative agreeing with the subject of the infinitive understood; as, *Cupio dici doctus*, or *cupio dici doctum*, i. e. *me dici doctum*, "I desire to be called learned." The first of these is a Greek construction, and seldom used by prose writers. See Gr. Gram. § 175. 3.

*Obs. 7.* When the infinitive of such verbs has a dative before it, it may be followed either by a dative or an accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, "I may be happy." In the first case *beato* agrees with *mihi*; in the second, *beatum* agrees with *me*, to be supplied as the subject of *esse*. Sometimes when the sentence is indefinite, the dative also is understood; as, *licet esse beatum*, (sc. *alicui*), "One may be happy." The first of these forms also is a Greek construction. See Gr. Gram. § 175. *Obs. 5.*

*Obs. 8.* This variety of case after the infinitive is admissible only with the *nominative*, *dative*, and *accusative*. The other cases before the infinitive have the accusative after it, agreeing with the subject of the infinitive understood; as, *interest omnium (se) esse bonos*

## § 104. OF GOVERNMENT

1. GOVERNMENT is the power which one word has over another depending upon it, requiring it to be put in a certain *case, mood, or tense*.
  2. The words subject to government are *nouns* and *verbs*.
  3. The words governing or affecting these in their case, mood or tense, are *nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and words indeclinable*.
  4. To the Syntax of nouns belongs all that part of Syntax relating to the government of *Case*. Every thing else in government belongs to the Syntax of the verb, § 137, et seq.
- 

## SYNTAX OF THE NOUN.

In this part of Grammar under the term *noun* or *substantive*, is comprehended every thing used in Latin Grammar as such, namely, nouns, personal pronouns, adjective pronouns used personally, adjectives without substantives, gerunds, together with infinitives, and substantive clauses used as nouns.

The construction of the oblique cases depends in general upon the particular ideas expressed by the cases themselves as they are stated, § 7. 3. or hereafter mentioned under each case.

---

## § 105. CONSTRUCTION OF THE GENITIVE.

The *Genitive*, as its name imports, with the meaning of the word connects the idea of origin, and hence that of property or possession. It is used in general to limit the signification of another word, with which it is joined, by representing it as something originating with, possessed by, or relating to, that which the genitive or limiting word expresses; and it is said to be *governed* by the word so limited, i. e.; the word limited requires the word limiting it to be put in the Genitive case.

The Genitive is governed by *Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs*; and also is used to express circumstances of *place, quantity or degrees*.

---

## § 106. THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY NOUNS.

RULE VI. One substantive governs another in the genitive, when the latter substantive limits the signification of the former; as,

*Amor gloriæ,  
Lex naturæ,*

The love of glory.  
The law of nature.



**EXPLANATION.**—Under this rule the two substantives must be of *different signification*, and the one used to restrict the meaning of the other. Thus in the first example *Amor*, alone, means “love” in general; but the term *gloriæ* joined with it, restricts its meaning here to a particular object “glory,” and so of other examples.

N. B. When a noun is limited by another of the *same signification*, it is put in the same case by Rule I.

### OBSERVATIONS.

**Obs. 1.** When the governing noun expresses a feeling or act, &c. *inherent in*, or *exercised* by the noun governed in the genitive, the genitive is said to be *subjective* or *active*. But when the governing noun denotes something of which the noun governed is the object, the genitive is then said to be *objective* or *passive*. Thus in the phrase *Providentia Dei*, the genitive is necessarily *subjective* or *active* because *providentia* expresses an act or operation of which God is the *subject*, and of which he cannot be the *object*. On the other hand, in the phrase *timor Dei*, “the fear of God;” the genitive *Dei* is necessarily *objective* or *passive*, because *timor* denotes a feeling in some other subject, of which God is the *object*, and cannot be the *subject*. Sometimes the meaning of both substantives is such, that the genitive may be either active or passive; thus, when the expression *Amor Dei* means the love which God has to us, *Dei* is *active* or *subjective*; but when it means the love which we have to God, *Dei* is *passive* or *objective*. In such cases the sense in which the genitive is used must be determined by the author’s meaning.

**Obs. 2.** Hence it often happens that a noun governs two substantives, one of which limits it *subjectively*, and the other *objectively*; as, *Agamemnonis belli gloria*, “Agamemnon’s glory in war,” *Nep.* Here *Agamemnonis* limits *gloria* *subjectively*, and *belli* limits it *objectively*. So, *Illius administratio provinciae*, *Cic.*

**Obs. 3.** The governing noun is often omitted, but only, however, when the expression itself readily suggests the noun to be supplied; as, *Ad Dianæ*, sc. *ædem*; or when it can be readily supplied from the preceding or following words.

**Obs. 4.** Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun governed by the noun, it is more common to use the possessive adjective pronoun agreeing with it; as, *meus pater*, rather than *pater mei*. So also instead of the genitive of a noun, a possessive adjective is sometimes used; as, *Causa regia*, for *regis causa*; *Herilis filius*, for *filius heri*.

**Obs. 5.** The dative is often used instead of the genitive, to limit a noun as to its object; as, *Fratri ædes*, for *fratris*, the house of my brother; *præsidium reis*, a defence to the accused. For this construction see § 110.

**RULE VII.** A substantive added to another to express a property or quality belonging to it, is put in the genitive or ablative; as,

*Vir summæ prudentiæ*, or *summâ prudentiâ*. A man of great wisdom.  
*Puer probæ indolis*, or *probâ indôle* A boy of a good disposition.

**EXPLANATION.**—Under this rule the latter substantive in the genitive or ablative must denote a *part* or *property* of the former, otherwise it does not belong to this rule. The latter substantive, also, has commonly an adjective joined with it, as in the above examples, though this is not essential to the rule and sometimes it is found without it; as, *Homo nihili*.

**Obs. 6.** There is no certain rule by which to determine when the genitive is to be used, or when the ablative, though in some phrases we find the genitive only is used; as, *vir imi subsellii*, "a person of the lowest rank;" *homo nullius stipendii*, "a man of no experience in war," Sallust, *Magni formica laboris*, &c. In others the ablative only; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximia spe, summæ virtutis*. In prose the ablative is more common than the genitive.

**Obs. 7.** Sometimes, instead of the construction under this rule, the adjective is put with the former substantive; as, *Vir gravitate et prudentiâ præstans*, Cic. So, *Vir præstantis ingenii, præstanti ingenio, præstans ingenio*, and (poetically) *præstans ingenii*, are all used. And sometimes, when the adjective takes the case of the former substantive, the latter substantive, especially by the poets, is by a Greek construction put in the accusative, instead of the genitive or ablative; as, *Miles fractus membra*, instead of *membris*. *Os humerosque similis deo*, instead of *Ore humerisque similis deo*. The accusative, in this construction, may be regarded as governed by *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad*, meaning "according to," or "in respect of," &c. (§ 128. *Exc.* and *Note.*) and corresponding to the Greek *κατά*. See Gr. Gram. § 142, *Obs.* 11.

### *Adjectives taken as Substantives.*

**RULE VIII.** An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

*Multum pecuniæ,  
Id negotii,*

Much money.  
That business.

**EXPLANATION.**—Under this rule, the adjective, without a substantive expressed, is regarded as a substantive, and so capable of being limited by the genitive, as under Rule VI.

**Obs. 8.** The adjectives thus used are generally such as signify quantity; *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum*. The pronouns, *hoc, id, illud, istud, quod, quid*, with its compounds. Also *summum, ultimum, extremum, dimidium, medium, aliud*, &c. To these may be added several neuter adjectives in the plural, used in a partitive sense; as, *angusta viarum*, the narrow parts of the road, *opata locorum*; *antiqua foedærum*; *cuncta camporum*, &c.

**Notes.**—Such adjectives followed by a genitive are almost always either in the nominative or accusative

**Obs. 9.** Most of these adjectives may have their substantives with which they agree; but the more common construction is with the genitive; as, *tantum spei*, so much hope; *quid mulieris?* what-kind of a woman? *aliquid formæ*; *quid hoc rei est?*

*Obs.* 10. *Quod* and *quicquid* followed by a genitive, include the idea of universality ; as, *quod agri*, " what of land," i. e. " all the land ;" *quicquid civium*, " whatever of citizens," i. e. " all the citizens ;" *quicquid deorum*, " all the gods,"

*Obs.* 11. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying " need," sometimes govern the genitive ; as, *Argentī opus fuit*, " there was need of money."—*Liv. Proœmii non semper usus est*, " There is not always need of an introduction." Quinct. In general, these words govern the ablative. § 118. R. XXII.

## § 107. GENITIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

**RULE IX.** Verbal adjectives, or such as imply an operation of mind, govern the genitive ; as,

<i>Avidus gloriæ,</i>	Desirous of glory.
<i>Ignārus fraudis,</i>	Ignorant of fraud.
<i>Memor beneficiōrum,</i>	Mindful of favors.

**EXPLANATION.**—The genitive in this construction as in § 106. is used to limit the application of the general term or adjective by which it is governed, and may be rendered by *of*, or, *in respect of* prefixed; thus, in the first example, *Avidus* expresses the possession of *desire* generally; the genitive *gloriæ* limits it to a certain object, "glory," and so of the other examples.

### OBSERVATIONS

*Obs.* 1. Adjectives governing the genitive under this rule are,

1st. **VERBALS** in **AX** ; as, *capax, edax, ferox, fugax, pervicax, tenax*, &c.

2d. **PARTICIPIALS** in **NS** and **TUS** ; as, *amans, appetens, cupiens, patiens, impatiens, sitiens ; consultus, doctus, expertus, inexpertus. insuetus, insolitus*. &c.

3d. Adjectives denoting various affections of the mind ; such as,  
 1. **DESIRE** and **DISGUST**, as, *avārus, avidus, cupidus, studiosus ; fastidiosus*, &c. with many other verbals in *-idus*, and *-osus*.  
 2. **KNOWLEDGE** and **IGNORANCE** : as, *callidus, certus, conscius, gnārus, peritus, prudens*, &c.;—*Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, rudis*, &c. 3. **MEMORY** or **FORGETFULNESS** ; as, *memor, immemor*, &c. 4. **CARE** and **NEGLIGENCE** ; as, *anxius, curiosus, sollicitus, providus, diligens ;—incuriosus, securus, negligens*, &c. 5. **FEAR** and **CONFIDENCE** ; as, *pavidus, timidus, trepidus ;—impavidus, interritus*, &c. 6. **GUILT** and **INNOCENCE** ; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus ;—innoxius, innocens, insons*, &c.

4th. To these may be added many other adjectives of similar signification, which are limited by, or govern such genitives; as *antmi*, *ingenti*, *mentis*, *iræ*, *militiæ*, *belli*, *labōris*, *rerum*, *ævimōrum*, and *fidei*.

*Obs. 2.* Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles, but usually with some difference of meaning; as, *patiens algōris*, "capable of bearing cold;" *patiens algōrem*, "actually bearing cold;" *amans virtutis*, "loving virtue,"—spoken of the disposition; *amans virtutem*, "loving virtue,"—spoken of the act. So also, *doctus grammaticæ*, "skilled in grammar;" *doctus grammaticam*, "one who has studied grammar."

*Obs. 3.* Many of these adjectives vary their construction so that instead of the genitive they sometimes take after them,

1st. An infinitive clause; as, *certus ire*, "determined to go." Ovid. *Cantāre periti*. Virg. *Anxius quid opus facto sit*. Sall.

2d. An accusative with a preposition; as, *avidior ad rem*; *animus capax ad præcepta*; *ad fraudem callidus*; *potens in res bellicōsas*, &c.

3d. An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avidus in pecuniis*, "Eager in regard to money." *Anxius de famâ*; *super scelēre suspectus*; &c.

4th. An ablative without a preposition; as, *Arte rudis*, "Rude in art;" *regni crimine insons*; *præstans ingenio*.

*Obs. 4.* Some adjectives usually governing the dative, sometimes govern the genitive, such as *similis*, *dissimilis*, &c. See § 111. *Obs. 2*

**RULE X.** Partitives and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

<i>Aliquis philosophōrum,</i>	Some one of the philosophers
<i>Senior fratrum,</i>	The elder of the brothers.
<i>Doctissimus Romanōrum,</i>	The most learned of the Romans.
<i>Quis nostrūm?</i>	Which of us?
<i>Una musārum,</i>	One of the muses.
<i>Octāvus sapientium,</i>	The eighth of the wise men.

**EXPLANATION.**—A *Partitive* is a word which signifies a part of any number of persons or things, in contradistinction to the whole. A word placed *partitively*, is one which though it does not signify a *part*, yet is sometimes used to *distinguish* a part from the whole; as, *expediti militum*, the light armed (of the) soldiers. The partitive, when an adjective, takes the gender of the whole and governs it in the genitive plural; or, if a collective noun, in the genitive singular; and in this case the partitive takes the gender of the noun understood: as, *doctissimus suæ ætatis*

**Obs. 5.** Partitives are such words ; as, *ullus, nullus, solus, alius, uter, uterque, neuter, alter, aliquis, quidam, quisquis, quicumque, quis ? qui ? quot ? tot, aliquot, nonnulli, plerique, multi, pauci, medius, &c.*

Words are used partitively in such expressions as the following ; *superi deorum, sancte deorum, degeneres canum, piscium feminae*. To which add, *omnis, cunctus, nemo* ; as, *Omnes Macedonum ; nemo nostrum*.

**Obs. 6.** The comparative with the genitive denotes one of two, the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two ; as, *Major fratrum*, the elder of two brothers ; *maximus fratrum*, the eldest of three or more. So also *uter, alter* and *neuter* generally refer to two, *qui, alius*, and *nullus*, to more than two ; as, *uter nostrum*, which of us (two ?) *quis nostrum*, which of us (three or more ?) *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used after partitives, seldom *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

**Obs. 7.** The partitive is sometimes understood ; as, *Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium*, (sc. *unus*.) Hor.

**Obs. 8.** Instead of the genitive after the partitive, the ablative is often found governed by *de, e, ex, or in* ; or the accusative with *inter* or *ante* ; as, *unus e stoicis ; ante omnes pulcherrimus ; inter reges opulentissimus*.

**RULE XI.** Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative ; as,

<i>Plenus iræ</i> or <i>iræ,</i>	Full of anger.
<i>Inops rationis, or ratione,</i>	Void of reason.

**EXPLANATION.**—As in Rule IX. the adjective here is a general term, but limited in its application by the genitive or ablative following it.

**Obs. 9.** Among adjectives denoting plenty or want, a considerable variety of construction is found.

Some govern the genitive only ; as, *benignus, exors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, &c.*

Some govern the ablative only ; as, *beatus, mutilus, tumidus, turgidus*.

Some govern the genitive more frequently ; as, *compos, consors, egenus, exhaeres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis, prosper, insatiatus, insatiabilis*.

Some govern the ablative more frequently ; as, *abundans, alienus, cassus, extorris, firmus, foetus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunis, infirmus, liber, locuples, lætus, mactus, nudus, onustus, orbis, polens, satiatus, tenuis, truncus, viduus*.

Some govern the genitive or ablative indifferently ; as, *copiosus, dives, fecundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, purus, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber*.

**Obs. 10.** Many of these adjectives are sometimes limited by a preposition and its case ; as, *Locus copiosus a frumento*. Cic. *Ab omni re paratus*. Id. *Parvus in victu*. Plin. *In affectibus potentissimus* Quint. *Potens in res bellicas*. Liv. &c.

## § 108. THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

RULE XII. *Sum* governs the genitive of a person or thing to which its subject belongs as a possession, property, or duty; as,

*Est regis,*

It belongs to the king.

*Hominis est errāre,*

It is characteristic of man to err.

EXPLANATION.—The genitive in this construction is supposed to be governed by the substantive, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* understood. (When it is expressed, the genitive is governed by it according to Rule VI.) The verb is in the third person,—often has an infinitive or clause for its nominative, and may be rendered in any way by which the sense is expressed; as *has*, *it belongs to*,—*is the property—the part—the duty—the peculiarity—the character of, &c.* The following are examples,

*Insapientis est dicere non putāram,* It is the part of a fool, &c.

*Militum est suo duci parēre,* It is the duty of soldiers, &c.

*Laudāre se vani est,* It is the mark of a vain man, &c.

So the following—*Arrogantis est negligēre quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Melibœi*. Virg. *Hæc sunt hominis*, Ter. *Pauperis est numerāre pecus*, Ov. *Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Cic. *Antiqui mōris fuit*, Plin.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the genitive may be governed by the preceding word repeated after *est*; as, *Hoc pecus est (pecus) Melibœi; Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. Sometimes the genitive depends on some other substantive understood; as, *Quæ res evertendæ reipublicæ solent esse (instrumenta.) Regium imperium quod initio conservandæ libertatis (causâ,) et augendæ reipublicæ (institutum) fuerat.*

Obs. 2. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the nominative neuter of the possessive is commonly used, agreeing with *officium, munus &c.* understood; as, *Tuum est*, it is your duty; instead of *tui*; *meum est*, it is my part; instead of *mei*.

Obs. 3. If the verb be in the infinitive, the possessive pronoun must be in the accusative; as, *Scio tuum esse*, "I know it is your duty;" and if a substantive be expressed, the possessive must agree with it in gender, number, and case; as, *Hæ partes fuerunt tuæ*, (equivalent to *tuum fuit*, or *tuarum partium fuit.*) It was your part.

RULE XIII. *Miserëor, miseresco*, and *satāgo*, govern the genitive; as,

*Miserëre civium tuorum,*

Pity your countrymen.

*Satāgit rerum suarum,*

He is busy with his own affairs.

EXPLANATION.—The genitive, in this construction, has been supposed to be governed by such a noun as *negotio, causa, re, &c.* understood; governed by the prepositions *de, a, in*, or the like; as, *Miserere de causa civium, &c.* We consider it better, however, to regard these genitives as governed directly by the verb, and expressing, as in Greek, the cause or origin of the feeling which the verb expresses. See Gr. Gram. § 144. Rule XIV

**Obs. 4.** Many other verbs denoting some affection of the mind are sometimes followed by a genitive, denoting that, with regard to which, or on account of which, the affection exists. These are *ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, fallo, fallor, fastidio, inrideo, lator, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor*, &c. Thus, *Absurde facis qui angas te animi*. Plaut. *Discrucior animi*. Ter. *Fallebar sermonis*. Plaut. *Lator malorum*. Virg. These verbs have commonly a different construction. *Note 2.*

*Note 1.*—The first and second of these examples resemble the peculiar Greek construction, explained Gr. Gram. § 148. *Obs. 2.*

**Obs. 5.** Several verbs especially among the poets, are found with the genitive in imitation of the Greek construction, Gr. Gram. § 144. Rule XVI. and XVII. These are *abstineo, destino, desisto, quiesco, regno*; also, *adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo*; thus, *abstineto irarum*. Hor. *Destine querelarum*. Hor. *Regnavit populorum*. Hor. *Levas me laborum*. Plaut

*Note 2.*—All these verbs, however, in *Obs. 4* and *5*, have for the most part a different construction, being followed sometimes by the accusative as an active verb, and more frequently by the accusative or ablative with a preposition.

**RULE XIV.** *Recordor, meminī, reminiscor, and obliviscor*, govern the genitive or accusative; as,

<i>Recordor lectionis, or lectionem,</i>	I remember the lesson.
<i>Obliviscor injuriæ, or injuriam,</i>	I forget an injury.

**EXPLANATION.**—When these verbs are followed by an accusative, they are considered active, and fall under **RULE XX**. But when a genitive follows them they are regarded as neuter, and the genitive denotes that in regard to which the memory, &c. is exercised.

**Obs. 6.** These verbs are often construed with an infinitive or some part of a sentence, instead of the genitive or accusative; as, *Memini videre virginem*. Ter.

**Obs. 7.** *Recordor* and *memini*, signifying to *remember*, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*. And *memini* signifying to *make mention of*, has a genitive or an ablative with *de*. *Ei venit in mentem*, being equivalent to *recordatur*, has a genitive after it; as, *Ei venit in mentem potestatis tuæ*.

**N. B.** For the genitive with verbs of *accusing*, See § 122, with verbs of *valuing*, § 122. R. XXVIII; with Passive verbs, § 126; with Impersonal verbs, § 113; with Adverbs, § 135; denoting place, § 130, R. XXXVI and XXXIX.

## § 109. CONSTRUCTION OF THE DATIVE.

1. The *Dative* is used to express the *remote object to which* any quality or action, or any state or condition of things tends, or, to which they refer. This tendency is usually expressed in English by the words **TO** or **FOR**. Hence,

2. The Dative in Latin is governed by, or denotes the object referred to, by *Nouns*, *Adjectives* and *Verbs*.

3. A use of the Dative common in Greek usually called the *Dative Redundant*, has also been imitated in Latin. See Gr Gram. § 145. 2. The following are examples. *Quo tantum MIHI dexter abis.* Virg. *Fur MIHI es.* Plaut. *Tongilium MIHI eduxit.* Cic. *Ubi nunc NOBIS deus ille magister?* Virg. *Ecce TIBI Sebosus.* Cic. *Suo SIBI gladio hunc jugulo.*

## § 110. DATIVE GOVERNED BY SUBSTANTIVES.

**RULE XV.** Substantives frequently govern the dative of their object; as,

*Hostis virtutibus,  
Exitium pecōri,  
Obtemperantia legibus,*

An enemy to virtue.  
Destruction to the flock.  
Obedience to the laws.

**EXPLANATION.**—Under this rule, the governing substantive generally denotes an affection, or some advantage, or disadvantage, or act, which is limited as to its object by the dative following it, as in the above examples.

**Obs. 1. Rule.** The dative of the possessor is governed by substantives denoting the thing possessed; as,

*Ei venit in mentem,  
Cui corpus porrigitur,*

It came into his mind.  
Whose body is extended.

**Obs. 2.** The dative in this construction is said to be used for, or instead of the genitive, as in Rule VI. There are but few instances, however, in which the genitive, under that rule could with propriety be changed for the dative. On the other hand, when the dative is used, the genitive would fail to express so precisely the idea intended. In this construction, the noun governing the dative is connected with a verb in such a way as clearly to show, that the dative is rather the object of that which is expressed by the verb and noun together, than under the government of the noun alone. Thus in the first example, *ei*, denotes the person to whom that which is expressed by *venit in mentem*, occurred. So, *corpus porrigitur*, states what was done to the person represented by *cui*. The principle of this construction will be more manifest from what is stated, § 123. *Exp.*

## § 111. THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

**RULE XVI.** Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness govern the dative; as,

*Utilis bello,  
Similis patri,*

Useful for war.  
Like his father.



**EXPLANATION.**—The dative under this rule, like the genitive under Rule IX, is used to limit the meaning of the adjective to a particular object or end, to which the quality expressed by it is directed. Thus in the first example *utilis* means "useful" in a general sense, *bello* limits the usefulness intended to a particular object, "war." The dative thus used is rendered by its ordinary signs *to* or *for*, but sometimes by other prepositions or without a preposition, as in the last example.

## OBSERVATIONS.

**Obs. 1.** To this rule belong adjectives signifying,

1st. Profit, or disprofit; as, *benignus, bonus, commodus, felix; damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, &c.*

2d. Pleasure, or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, jucundus latus, suavis;—Acerbus, amarus, ingratus, molestus, &c.*

3d. Friendship, or hatred; as, *Æquus, amicus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus;—adversus. asper, crudelis, infestus, &c.*

4th. Perspicuity, or obscurity; as, *apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, notus;—ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, obscurus, &c.*

5th. Propinquity; as, *finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus, affinis, &c.*

6th. Fitness, or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus;—ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, &c.*

7th. Ease, or difficulty; as, *facilis, levis, obvius, pervius;—difficilis, arduus, gravis.* Also those denoting propensity or readiness; as, *pronus, proclivis, propensus, &c.*

8th. Equality, or inequality; likeness, or unlikeness; as, *Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar;—inæqualis, impar, dispar, discors;—similis, æmulus;—dissimilis, alienus, &c.*

9th. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *cognatus, congruus, consōnus, conveniens, continens, &c.*

10th. Verbal adjectives in -BILIS; as, *Amabilis, terribilis, optabilis, and the like.*

**Obs. 2. Exc.** The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive, viz: *Affinis similis, communis, par, proprius; finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius, and adversus; as, similis tibi, or tui.*

**Obs. 3.** Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, take after them the accusative with *ad*, rather than the dative; as, *proclivus, pronus, propensus, velox, celer, tardus, piger, &c.* thus; *piger ad poenas.* Ov.

**Obs. 4.** Adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness, and the contrary, often take the accusative with *ad*; as, *utilis ad nullam rem, good for nothing.*

**Obs. 5.** *Propior* and *proximus* take after them the dative, or the accusative governed by *ad* understood; as, *Propius vero; proximus Pompeium, (sc. ad.)*

*Consci*us and some other adjectives, govern the dative according to this rule, and at the same time a genitive by rule IX; as, *Mens sibi consciâ recti, "a mind conscious to itself of rectitude."* Varg.

Obs. 6. Some adjectives that govern the dative, sometimes, instead of the dative, have an ablative with a preposition expressed or understood; as, *discors secum*; *aliènum nostrâ amicitia*.

Obs. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Jupiter idem omnibus*. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. In prose *idem* is followed commonly by *qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, or *quam*.

## § 112. THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

RULE XVII. All verbs govern the dative of the object or end, to which the action, or state expressed by them, is directed; as,

<i>Finis venit imperio,</i>	An end has come to the empire.	
<i>Animus redit hostibus,</i>	Courage returns to the enemy.	[self.
<i>Tibi seris, tibi metis,</i>	You sow for yourself, you reap for your-	

EXPLANATION.—This rule may be considered as general, applying to all cases in which a verb is followed by a dative. When the verb is active, it governs its remote object in the dative, not as that upon which the action is exerted, but as that to which it is directed, while at the same time, it governs also its immediate object in the accusative, (§ 123.) If neuter, it will be followed by a dative only.

This rule being applicable to all cases in which a dative follows a verb, is too general to be useful, as it could be applied correctly without much discrimination. It will therefore be of more advantage, when it can be done, to apply the special rules comprehended under it as follows:

### SPECIAL RULES.

RULE I. *Sum* and its compounds govern the dative, (except *possum*;) as,

<i>Præfuit exercitui,</i>	He commanded the army.
<i>Adfuit precibus,</i>	He was present at prayers.

RULE II. The verb *Est*, signifying *to be*, or *to belong to*, governs the dative of the possessor; as,

<i>Est mihi liber,</i>	A book is to me, i. e. I have a book.
<i>Sunt mihi libri,</i>	Books are to me, i. e. I have books. [&c.
<i>Scio libros esse mihi,</i>	I know that books are to me, i. e. that I have,

But, with the gerund for its subject (R. LXI), *Est* governs the dative of the *doer*; as,

<i>Legendum est mihi,</i>	Reading is to me, i. e. I must read.
---------------------------	--------------------------------------

EXPLANATION.—In this construction, the dative expresses the person or thing, to or for which the subject spoken of, is, or exists. The verb will always be in the third person singular, or plural, in any tense, or in the infinitive.—This very common Latin construction will be rendered correctly into English,

by the active verb, "*have*," instead of "*is*," &c. of which the Latin dative becomes the subject or nominative, and the Latin nominative the object, as is shewn in the above examples.

*Obs. 1.* The dative is used in a similar manner after *forem*, *suppëto*, *desum* *deficio*; &c. as, *pauper non est cui rerum suppëtit usus*. He is not poor to whom the use of property is supplied, i. e. who has the use of property. Hor. So, *Si mihi cauda foret*.—*Defuit ars vobis*—*Lac mihi non defit*, *Nisi vinum nobis defecisset*, &c.

**RULE III.** Verbs compounded of *satis*, *bene*, and *male* govern the dative; as,

*Legibus satisfecit,*  
*Benefacere reipublicæ,*

He satisfied the laws,  
To benefit the state.

*Obs. 2.* These compounds are often written separately, and the dative is governed by the combined force of the two words.

**RULE IV.** Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*,—*in*, *inter*, *ob*,—*post*, *præ*, *sub*, and *super* govern the dative; as,

*Annue cæptis,*

Favor our undertakings.

Verbs governing the dative under this rule are such as the following; viz.

1. *Accëdo*, *accresco*, *accumbo*, *acquiesco*, *adno*, *adnato*, *adequito*, *adhæreo*, *adsto*, *adstipulor*, *advolor*, *affulgeo*, *allabor*, *allaboro*, *annuo*, *appareo*, *applaudo*, *appropinquo*, *arrideo*, *aspiro*, *assentior*, *assideo*, *assisto*, *assuesco*, *assurgo*.

2. *Antecello*, *anteo*, *antesto*, *anteverto*.

3. *Colludo*, *concino*, *consöno*, *convivo*.

4. *Incumbo*, *indormio*, *indubito*, *inhio*, *ingemisco*, *inhæreo*, *insideo*, *insideor*, *insto*, *insisto*, *insudo*, *insulto*, *invigilo*, *illacrymo*, *illudo*, *immineo*, *immorior*, *immöror*, *impendeo*.

5. *Intervenio*, *intermico*, *intercëdo*, *intercïdo*, *interjaceo*.

6. *Obrëpo*, *oblucto*, *obtrecto*, *obstrëpo*, *obmurmuro*, *occumbo*, *occurro*, *occurso*, *obsto*, *obsisto*, *obvenio*.

7. *Postfëro*, *posthabeo*, *postpöno*, *postpüto*, *postscribo*; with an accusative.

8. *Pracëdo*, *præcurro*, *præeo*, *præsideo*, *praluceo*, *præniteo*, *præsto*, *prævaleo*, *præverto*.

9. *Succëdo*, *succumbo*, *sufficio*, *suffrâgor*, *subcresco*, *suboleo*, *subiaceo*, *subrëpo*.

10. *Supervenio*, *supercurro*, *supersto*. But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

*Obs. 3.* Some verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *circum*, and *contra*; also compounds of *di* and *dis* meaning generally "to differ," are sometimes followed by the dative. These, however, chiefly fall under Rule XXXI. § 125.

*Obs. 4.* Many verbs compounded with prepositions, instead of the dative, take the case of the preposition which is sometimes repeated.

Some intrans. verbs so compounded, either take the dative, or, acquiring a trans. signification by the force of the preposition, govern the accusative by Rule XX. as, *Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt*, The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in bravery.

**RULE V.** Verbs govern the dative which signify to profit or hurt;—to favor or assist, and the contrary;—to command and obey, to serve and resist;—to threaten and to be angry; to trust.

**EXPLANATION.**—Verbs governing the dative, under this and the preceding rule, are always intransitives, or transitives used intransitively, and consequently it is applicable to the active voice only. The dative after passive verbs, does not come under these rules, but belongs to § 126. Rule XXXIII.

*Obs. 5.* The verbs under this rule are such as the following:

1st. To profit or hurt; as,

*Proficio, prosum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo*, for *prospicio*. Likewise, *Naceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo*, &c.

2d. To favor or assist, and the contrary; as,

*Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adalor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor*. Likewise, *Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor*. Likewise, *Derõgo, detrãho, invideo, æmulor*.

3d. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

*Impëro, præcipio, mando; modëror*, for *modum adhibeo*. Likewise, *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gëro, morigëror, obsecundo*. Likewise, *Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor*. Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refrãgor, adversor*.

4th. To threaten and to be angry; as,

*Minor, comminor, irascor, succenseo*.

5th. To trust; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido*.

To these add, *Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despëro, opëror, præstolor, prævaricor; recipio*, to promise; *renuncio; respondeo*, to answer, or satisfy; *tempëro, studeo; vucuo*, to apply; *convictor*.

*Exc. Jubeo, juvo, lædo*, and *offendo*, govern the accusative.

*Obs. 6.* Many of these verbs, however, are variously construed, the same verb sometimes governing the dative according to this rule; sometimes taken in an active sense they govern the accusative by rule XX. They are followed by an accusative with a preposition, and sometimes by an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *Impendëre alicui, or aliquem, or in aliquem*, to hang over; *congruëre alicui cum aliqua re, inter se*, to agree.

*Obs. 7.* Many verbs when they vary their construction, vary their meaning also; as, *Timeo tibi, de te, pro te*, signifies, "I fear for you," i. e. for your safety; but *timeo te*, means, "I fear you." "I dread

you." *Consûlo tibi*, is "I consult for you," i. e. "for your safety," *consûlo te*, means "I consult you," "I ask your advice;" and so of others.

*Obs.* 8. Verbs signifying *motion* or *tendency* to a thing instead of the dative have usually the preposition *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *Clamor* *it ad coelum*; seldom and chiefly with the poets, *coelo*.

## § 113. DATIVE GOVERNED BY IMPERSONALS.

**RULE XVIII.** An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

*Expêdit reipublicæ*, It is profitable for the state.

**EXPLANATION.**—This rule applies to the dative governed by the passive of all those verbs which in the active voice govern the dative only, according to § 112, Rules III. IV. and V.—the passive of all intransitives, being used only impersonally, § 85. 3. Thus, *Favetur mihi*, "I am favored," not *ego faveor*. When the passives of such verbs are used *personally*, then the verb is to be considered as used in an active sense, § 112. *Obs.* 6.

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs.* 1. These verbs *Potest*, *coepit*, *incipit*, *destnit*, *debet* and *solet*, before the infinitive of impersonals, become impersonal also; as, *Non potest credi tibi*, "You cannot be believed."

*Obs.* 2. Some verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *doleo*, "I grieve;" *dolet mihi*, "It grieves me," i. e. "I grieve." So also verbs commonly used impersonally sometimes have a subject in the nominative, and are of course used personally. This is the case especially with such nominatives as these,—*Id*, *hoc*, *illud*, *quid*, *quod*, *nil*, &c. as, *Nonne hæc te pudet?* "Are you not ashamed of these things?"

*Obs.* 3. An infinitive mood or part of a sentence is commonly joined to an impersonal verb, which in fact may be regarded as its subject; as, *Delectat me studere*, "It delights me to study," i. e. "study delights me." § 101. *Obs.* 3.—§ 144. *Obs.* 1.

*Obs.* 4. The dative after impersonals is sometimes understood; as *Faciât quod libet*, (sc. *sibi*.)

**Exc. I.** *Refert* and *Interest* govern the genitive; as.

*Refert patris,*  
*Interest omnium,*

It concerns my father.  
It is the interest of all.

But *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

*Non mea refert,*

It does not concern me.

*Obs.* 5. These pronouns must be considered as agreeing with such a substantive as *negotia*; and that *mea*, for example, is equal to *negotia mei*. This then seems clearly to shew that such constructions as.

*refert patris* are elliptical, and that the word to be supplied is in the accusative plural neuter; thus, *refert patris*, (sc. *ad negotia*,) lit. it refers to the affairs of my father; *Interest omnium*, i. e. *est inter omnium negotia*. "it is among the affairs of all;" *refert mea*, i. e. *ad mea negotia*, equivalent to *ad negotia mei*.

Obs. 6. Instead of the genitive, these verbs sometimes take the accusative with a preposition; as, *refert ad me*, for *refert mea*, i. e. *mei*. Sometimes they are used absolutely without a case expressed.

Exc. II. These five *Miseret*, *poenitet*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of the immediate, with the genitive of the remote object; as,

<i>Miseret me tui,</i>	I pity you.
<i>Poenitet me peccati,</i>	I repent of my sin.
<i>Tædet me vitæ,</i>	I am weary of life.
<i>Pudet me culpæ,</i>	I am ashamed of my fault.

EXPLANATION.—These examples may be rendered literally thus; It grieves me on account of you, i. e. *ergo*, or *causa tui*.—It repents me of my sin.—It wearies me of life.—It shames me of my fault. For the method of rendering impersonal verbs in a personal form, as in the above examples, see § 85. 2. and 6.

Obs. 7. The infinitive mood or part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *poenitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccavêrim*. After *Miseret*, it is sometimes supplied by the accusative governed by *quod attinet ad*, understood; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*. i. e. *quod attinet ad vicem*. Ter. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Scelêrum si bene poenitet* (scil. *nos*.) Hor.

Obs. 8. The preterites of these verbs in the passive form, govern the same cases as the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*. Ter. *Miserescit*, and *miseretur* are sometimes used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*. Ter. *Misereatur te fratrum*; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*. Cic.

Exc. III. *Decet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

<i>Delectat me studere,</i>	It delights me to study.
<i>Non decet te rixari,</i>	It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 9. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decent*. Hor. *Decet* sometimes governs the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*. Ter.

Obs. 10. *Oportet*, instead of the infinitive, elegantly takes the subjunctive with *ut*, "that," understood; as, *Sibi quisque consulat oportet*. Cic. When followed by the perfect participle, *esse*, or *fuisse* is understood, which being supplied, makes the perfect infinitive.

Obs. 11. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *prætërit*, *latet*, when used impersonally, are construed with the accusative and infinitive; as, *fugit me ad te scribere*. Cic

## § 114. VERBS GOVERNING TWO DATIVES.

**RULE XIX.** The verbs *sum*, *do*, *habeo*, and some others, with the dative of the *object*, govern also the dative of the *end*, or *design*; as,

1. *Est mihi voluptati*, { It is to me for a pleasure, i. e.  
                                  { It is, or brings, a pleasure to me.
2. *Hoc misit mihi muneri*, This he sent as a present to me.
3. *Ducitur honori tibi*, { It is reckoned to you for an honor, i. e.  
                                  { It is reckoned an honor to you.

**EXPLANATION.**—In these examples it is manifest that the words *voluptati*, *honori*, and *muneri*, each express the *end* or *design* for which the thing spoken of, or referred to, *is*, *is reckoned*, *is sent* to the *object* expressed by the other datives, *mihi* and *tibi*. See also *Obs. 3*.

The verb *sum*, with the dative of the *end*, may be variously rendered according to the sense; as, by the words, *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, &c. For, the sign of the dative, is often omitted, especially after *sum*.

## OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs. 1.* Verbs governing two datives under this rule, are chiefly, *sum*, *fore*, *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *duco*, and a few others.

*Obs. 2.* Instead of the dative of the *end*, the nominative after *est*, &c. or the accusative, in apposition with the object of the preceding verb, expresses the same thing; as, *Amor Est exitium pecōri*, for *exitio*; *Se Achilli comitem esse datum dicit*, for *comiti*. In the first example, *exitium* is the nominative after *est*, by Rule V. In the second, *comitem* is in apposition with *se*, by Rule I.

*Obs. 3.* Intransitives, such as *sum*, *fore*, *fio*, *eo*, *curro*, *profiscor*, *venio*, *cedo*, *suppedito*, are followed by two datives, as in the first example; transitive verbs in the active voice, besides the two datives, have an accusative expressed or understood by Rule XX. as in the second example; and in the passive voice two datives, as in the third example, the one by rule XXIX. and the other by this rule.

*Obs. 4.* The dative of the *object* (commonly a person,) is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c. scil. *mihi*, *alicui*, *hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignori*, sc. *alicui*, "to pledge;" *canere receptui*, sc.  *suis militibus*, "to sound a retreat;" *habere curæ, questui, odio, voluptati, studio*, &c. sc. *sibi*.

*Obs. 5.* To this rule is sometimes referred the forms of naming, so common in Latin; such as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*; *Cui cognomen Iulo additur*. The construction. § 97. *Exc. 2*, is much better.

*Obs. 6.* From constructions under this rule, should be distinguished those in which the second dative may be governed by another noun in the dative, according to § 110.

**N. B.** For the Dative with the Accusative, see § 123.

For the Dative after the Passive voice, see § 126.

For the Dative after Particles, see § 135. *Obs. 3.* and

**R. XLVII.**—After *Hei* and *Væ*, § 117. *Obs. 3.*

# § 115. CONSTRUCTION OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. The Accusative, in Latin, is used to express the immediate object of a transitive (or active) verb,—or, in other words, that on which its action is exerted, and which is affected by it.

2. It is used to express the object to which something tends or relates in which sense it is governed by a preposition, expressed or understood. When used to express the remote object of a transitive verb, or certain relations of measure, distance, time, and place, the preposition is usually omitted.

## § 116. ACCUSATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

RULE XX. A transitive verb in the active voice governs the accusative; as,

*Ama Deum,*

Love God.

### SPECIAL RULES.

RULE I. A transitive deponent verb governs the accusative; as,

*Reverere parentes,*

Reverence your parents.

RULE II. An intransitive verb may govern a noun of kindred signification in the accusative; as,

*Pugnare pugnam,*

To fight a battle.

EXPLANATION.—These rules apply to all verbs which have an accusative as their immediate object; and that accusative may be any thing used substantively, whether it be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or *clause of a sentence*. Intransitives under Rule II. are often followed by the ablative, with a preposition expressed or understood, as, *Ire* (in) *itinere*. *Gaudere* (cum) *gaudio*, &c.

Obs. 1. Verbs signifying to *name*, *choose*, *reckon*, *constitute*, and the like, besides the accusative of the object, take also the accusative of the *name*, *office*, *character*, &c., ascribed to it; as, *Urbem Romam vocavit*: He called the city *Rome*. All such verbs in the passive. have the same case after as before them, § 103, Exp.

Obs. 2. Verbs commonly intransitive, are sometimes used in a transitive sense, and are therefore followed by an accusative under this rule; thus,

#### TRANSITIVE.

*Abhorrere famam*, to dread infamy. *Abhorrere a litibus*, to be averse &c. *Abolere monumenta*, to abolish &c. *Memoria abolevit*, memory failed. *Declinare ictum*, to avoid a blow. *Declinare loco*, to remove from, &c. *Laborare arma*, to forge arms. *Laborare morbo*, to be ill. *Morari iter* to stop. *Morari in urbe*, to stay in the city

#### INTRANSITIVE.



**Obs. 3.** The Accusative after many intransitive verbs depends on a preposition understood; as *Morientem nomine clamat; Meas queror fortunas; Num id lacrymat virgo; Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achiui; Stygiids juravimus undas, &c.* In which and similar sentences the prepositions, *ob, propter, circa, per, ad, in, &c.* may be supplied.

This construction of intransitive verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, hoc, multa, alia, pauca, &c.*

**Obs. 4.** The accusative after many verbs depends on a preposition with which they are compounded. This is the case,

1st. With intransitive verbs; as, *Gentes quæ mare illud adjacent*, “the nations which border upon the sea;” So, *ineunt prælium, adirs provinciam, transcurrere mare, alloquor te, &c.* Thus compounded, many verbs seem to become transitive in sense, and so govern the accusative by this rule. In general, however, they fall under Rule LII.

2d. With transitive verbs, in which case two accusatives follow, one governed by the verb, and another by the preposition; as, *Omnem equitatum pontem transducit*, “He leads all the cavalry over the bridge.” *HELLESFONTUM copias trajecit*. Here also the second accusative falls under Rule LII.

**Note.**—After most verbs, however compounded with prepositions governing the accusative, the preposition is repeated before it; as, *Cæsar se ad neminem adjunxit*.

**Obs. 5.** The accusative after a transitive verb is sometimes understood; as, *Tum prora avertit*, sc. *se*; *flumina præcipitant*, scil. *se*; *faciam vitula, sc. sacra*. Sometimes the verb is omitted.

**Obs. 6. RULE.** The infinitive mood or part of a sentence is often used as the object of a transitive verb, instead of the accusative; as,

*Da mihi fallere,*

Give me to deceive.

*Cupio me esse clementem,*

I desire to be gentle.

*Statuerunt ut naves conscenderent,* } They determined that they would embark.

**Note 2.**—In such constructions, the subject of the clause is sometimes by a Greek idiom put in the accusative, as the object of the verb; as, *Nosti Marcelum, quam tardus sit*; instead of *Nosti quam tardus Marcellus sit*; So, *Illum ut vivat optant*, instead of *ut ille vivat optant*; or *illum vivere optant*. Gr. Gram. § 180. **Obs. 4.**

**Obs. 7.** A few cases occur in which the accusative is put after a noun derived from a verb, or the verbal adjectives in *-bundus*; as, *Quid tibi huc receptio ad te est meum virum?* Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? Plaut. *Quid tibi hanc aditio est*. Id. *Vitabundus castra*. Liv.

**Obs. 8.** Many verbs considered transitive in Latin, are intransitive in English, and must have a preposition supplied in translating; as, *Ut caveat me* “that he should beware of me.” On the other hand, many intransitive verbs in Latin, i.e., verbs which do not take an accusa-

tive after them are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Fortuna favet fortibus*, "fortune favors the brave."

N. B. For the Accusative governed by *Recordor*, &c. see § 108. R. XIV.—with another accusative, § 124. R. XXX.—governed by prepositions, § 136. R. XLVIII. L. LI. LII.—denoting *time*, § 131. R. XLI.—*place*, § 130, R. XXXVII.—*measure* or *distance*, § 132. R. XLII.

## § 117. CONSTRUCTION OF THE VOCATIVE.

The Vocative is used to designate the person or thing addressed, but forms no part of the proposition with which it stands; and it is used either with, or without an interjection.

RULE XXI. The interjections *O*, *heu* and *proh*, are construed with the vocative; as,

*O formose puer!*

*O fair boy!*

Sometimes with the accusative; as, *Heu me miserum*, "Ah wretch that I am!" and sometimes with the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amicus*.

Obs. 1. To these may be added other interjections of calling or addressing; as, *ah*, *au*, *ehem*, *ehou*, *eho*, *eja*, *hem*, *heus*, *hui*, *io*, *ohe*, and *vah*, which are often followed by the vocative: as, *Heus Syre*; *Ohe libelle*.

Obs. 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O miseræ gentis*, sc. *homines*. Lucan.

Obs. 3. The interjection *Hei* and *Væ*, govern the dative; as, *Hei mihi*; "Ah me!" *Væ vobis*, "Woe to you!"

## § 118. CONSTRUCTION OF THE ABLATIVE.

The ablative is used in Latin generally to express that from which something is separated or taken; or, as that *by*, or *with* which something is done, or exists. It is governed by *nouns*, *adjectives*, *verbs* and *prepositions*, and also is used to express various relations of *measure*, *distance*, *time*, and *place*, &c.

### THE ABLATIVE AFTER NOUNS

RULE XXII. *Opus* and *Usus* signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

*Est opus pecuniâ,*  
*Nunc usus viribus*

There is need of money.  
Now there is need of strength.

**EXPLANATION.**—The ablative after these nouns is probably governed by a preposition such as *pro* understood. In this sense they are used only with the verb *sum*, of which *opus* is sometimes the subject, and sometimes the predicate: *Usus*, the subject only.

## OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs. 1.* *Opus* in the predicate, is commonly used as an indeclinable adjective, in which case it rarely has the ablative; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, "We need a general." Cic. So, *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*. Cic. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*. Cic. In these examples *opus*, as an indeclinable adjective, agrees with "*dux*," "*nummos*," "*exempla*," by Rule II. This construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns, and is always used with those denoting quantity; as, *quod non opus est, asse carum est*. Cato apud Sen.

*Obs. 2.* *Opus* and *usus* are often joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, "Need of haste;" *Opus consulto*, "Need of deliberation;" *Usus facto*, "Need of action." The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it after *opus*; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, "It behoved me to meet with Hirtius." Cic. Sometimes the supine is joined with it; as, *Ita dixit opus est*. Ter

*Obs. 3.* *Opus* is often followed by the infinitive, or by the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte, quod opus sit sciri*. Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, agram ut te adsimiles*. Plaut. Sometimes it is absolutely without a case, or with a case understood; as, *Sic opus est*; *Si opus est*.

*Exc.* *Opus* and *usus*, are sometimes followed by the genitive by Rule II.; as, *ARGENTI opus fuit*, "there was need of money;" Sometimes by an accusative, in which case an infinitive is probably understood; as *Puero opus est cibum*; Scil. *habere*. Plaut.

## § 119. ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

[For the Ablative governed by adjectives of plenty or want, see § 107. Rule XI.]

**RULE XXIII.** These adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*, also the participles *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*; and the like, denoting origin, govern the ablative; as,

*Dignus honore,*  
*Contentus parvo,*  
*Præditus virtute,*  
*Captus oculis,*  
*Fretus viribus,*  
*Ortus regibus,*

Worthy of honor.  
Content with little.  
Endued with virtue.  
Blind  
Trusting to his strength.  
Descended of kings.

**EXPLANATION.**—The ablative after these adjectives and participles is governed by some preposition understood; as, *cum*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*, &c. Sometimes it is expressed, as *Opus est concubina*. Sallust.

*Obs.* 1. Instead of the ablative, these adjectives often take an infinitive, or a subjunctive clause with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Dignus amari*. Virg. *Dignus qui imperet*. Cic. *Non sum dignus, ut figam palum in parietem*. Plaut.

*Exc.* *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Dignus avorum*. Virg. For the ablative governed by adjectives of plenty or want, see § 107. Rule XI.

## § 120. THE ABLATIVE WITH THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

**REM.** When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction such as, *quam*, *ac*, *atque*, &c. signifying “than,” is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted. In the first the construction of the case falls under other rules; in the second it falls under the following, viz.

**RULE XXIV.** The comparative degree without a conjunction governs the ablative; as

*Dulcior melle,*  
*Præstantior auro,*  
*Perennius ære,*

Sweeter than honey.  
More precious than gold.  
More durable than brass.

**EXPLANATION.**—The ablative under this rule is supposed to be governed more properly by *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Unus præ ceteris fortior*.

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs.* 1. Of these two modes of comparison, the ablative without a conjunction is commonly used when the object is compared with the subject of a proposition; as, *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ*. But when in such a comparison *quam* is used, the second substantive will be in the same case with the first, because in the same construction; as, *Oratio quam habitus fuit miserabilior*; Cic. i. e. *Oratio fuit miserabilior quam habitus (fuit)*.

*Obs.* 2. When the object is compared with the predicate of a proposition the conjunction, *quam* is commonly used, and then there are two cases.

1st. If the same thing is predicated of both substantives, they will be in the same case, because they will fall under the same construction; as, *Ego hominem callidiores vidi neminem quam Phormionem*; i. e. *quam (vidi,) Phormionem*.

2d. If the same thing is not predicated of both substantives, the latter will commonly be in the nominative with *sum*, expressed or understood; as, *Meliores quam ego sum, suppono tibi*. Plaut.

*Obs.* 3. *Quam* is frequently understood after *plus*, *minus*, and *amplius*, and sometimes after *major*, *minor* and some other comparatives without a change of case, as, *Capta plus (quam) quinque mil-*

*ha hominum*, "More than five thousand men were taken." *Obstides ne minores (quam) octonum denum annorum.*

But *quam* is always expressed before the dative and vocative.

*Note.*—These words are also followed by the ablative without *quam* according to the rule.

*Obs. 4.* When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive mood, or a part of a sentence, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil turpius est quam mentiri.*

*Obs. 5.* The comparative is often followed by the following nouns, adjectives, and participles in the ablative; viz. *opinionē, spē, expectationē, fidē,—dicto, solito,—æquo, credibili, justo*; as, *citius dicto tumida, æquora placat.* Virg. These ablatives often supply the place of a clause; as, *gravius æquo*, equivalent to *gravius quam æquum est.*

These ablatives are sometimes omitted; as, *Liberius vivebat, sc. æquo*, "he lived more freely than was proper;" i. e. "he lived *too freely*," or "rather freely."

*Obs. 6.* When one quality is compared with another, in the same subject, the adjectives expressing them are both put in the positive degree with *magis quam*, or in the comparative connected by *quam*; as, *ars magis magna quam difficilis. Triumphus clarior quam gratior*, "a triumph more famous than acceptable."

*Obs. 7.* The prepositions *præ, ante, præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *scelere ante alios immanior omnes.* Also a superlative; as, *Ante alios carissimus.* *Pro* is used after *quam*, to express proportion; as, *Prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium.*

*Obs. 8.* *Magis* and *minus* joined to the positive degree, are equivalent to the comparative; as, *O luce magis delecta.* *Magis* and *plus* joined with a comparative, only strengthen it; as, *Nihil invenies magis hoc certius.*

*Obs. 9.* *Inferior* sometimes governs the dative; as, *vir nullâ arte cui quam inferior*; the ablative also is found, but it is usually followed by *quam*.

*Obs. 10.* *Alius* is sometimes construed like comparatives and sometimes, though rarely, is followed by the ablative; as, *non putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum.*

## § 121. ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

**RULE XXV.** Verbs of plenty and scarceness, for the most part govern the ablative; as,

*Abundat divitiis,*  
*Caret omni culpâ,*

He abounds in riches.  
He has no fault.

**EXPLANATION.**—The ablative after such verbs, may be governed by a preposition understood, sometimes it is expressed; as, *vacat a culpa.* Or it may be used to limit the verb, by showing in what respect its meaning is to be taken; as, "he abounds in respect of riches," (see Rule XXXIV.) Instances of this construction, however, are so common as to warrant the rule here given.

**Obs. 1.** Verbs of plenty are such as, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scatēo*, &c. of want, *Carēo, egēo, indigēo, vaco, deficior, destitutor*, &c.

**Exc. 1.** *Egēo* and *indigēo*, sometimes govern the genitive; as, *Egēt aris*, he needs money. Hor. *Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris*. Cic. So, also, some verbs denoting to fill, to abound, such as, *abundo, carēo, saturo, scatēo*.

**RULE XXVI.** *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

*Utitur fraude,  
Abutitur libris,*

He uses deceit.  
He abuses books.

**Obs. 2.** To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto, labōro*, ("to be ill;") *pascor, epūlor, nitor*, &c.

**Exc. 2** *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*, To get possession of the city; *Potiri rerum*, (never *rebus*,) to possess the chief command. In such cases, the genitive may be governed by *imperio* understood.

**Exc. 3.** *Potior, fungor, vescor, epūlor* and *pascor*, sometimes govern the accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*. Cic. *Officia fungi*, &c. and also, in ancient writers *utor, abutor, and fruor*. *Depasco* and *depascor* have the accusative always.

**N. B.** For the Ablative of the adjunct, see § 106. R. VII.—For the Ablative governed by adjectives of *plenty*, or *want*, § 107. Rule XI.—By verbs of *loading, binding*, &c. § 125.—By passive verbs, § 126. Rule V.—By a *preposition*, § 136. R. XLIX. LI. LII.

For the Ablative of *Limitation*, see § 128.—Of *Cause, manner*, &c. § 129.—Of the *place where*, § 130. **Exc.**—From *which*, § 130. 3.—Of *time when*, § 131. R. XL.—*How long*, R. XLI.—Of *measure*, § 132. R. XLII.—Of *excess*, R. XLIII.—Of *price*, § 133.—In the *case absolute*, § 146. R. LX.

## § 122. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

Many transitive verbs, with the accusative of the direct object, govern also another word to which the action has an indirect or remote reference, in the *genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative*, as the nature of that reference may require. All verbs under these rules are transitive verbs in the active voice, or transitive deponents.

**RULE XXVII.** Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting*, and *admonishing*, govern the accusa-

tive of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

<i>Arguit me furti,</i>	He accuses me of theft
<i>Meipsum inertiae condemno,</i>	I condemn myself of laziness.
<i>Illum homicidii absolvunt,</i>	They acquit him of manslaughter.
<i>Monet me officii,</i>	He admonishes me of my duty.

To this rule belong verbs of,

ACCUSING; as, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, anquiro, arguo, coarguo, capto, increpo, increpito, urgeo, incuso, insimulo, interrogo, postulo, alligo, astringo, defero, compello.*

CONDEMNING; as, *Damno, condemno, infamo, noto, convinco, prehendendo, deprehendo, judico, plector.*

ACQUITTING; as, *Absolvo, libero, purgo,* and perhaps *solveo.*

ADMONISHING; as, *Moneo, admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio.*

Obs. 1. With many of these verbs, instead of the genitive of the crime or punishment, the ablative is used with or without a preposition; as, *Accusare de negligentia.* Cic. *Liberare culpâ.* Id. The ablatives *crimine* and *nomine* are often inserted before the genitive, which may be regarded as the full form of the construction; as, *Arcessere aliquem crimine ambitus.* Liv. Sometimes the punishment is put in the accusative after *ad* or *in*; as *Damnare ad pœnam, in metallum,* rarely in the dative; as, *Damnatus morti.* *Multo* has always the ablative; as, *multare pœnâ, pecuniâ, exsiliis,* &c.

Obs. 2. *Accuso, incuso, insimulo,* together with verbs of admonishing, instead of the genitive, are followed by the accusative, especially of the neuter pronouns, *hoc, id, illud, quod,* &c. and their plurals; as, *Si id me non accusas;* Plaut. *Eos hoc monio,* Cic. rarely by the accusative of nouns; as, *Sic me insimulare falsum facinus.* The accusative in this case may be considered as governed by the preposition *secundum,* or *quod attinet ad.*

Obs. 3. Many verbs signifying to accuse, and among them some of the verbs enumerated under this rule, do not govern the genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, govern it in the accusative by Rule XX; as, *Arguo culpam.* *Ejus avaritiam perfidiamque accusarat.* When thus construed, the immediate object of condemnation is the crime; in the other construction it is the person.

Obs. 4. Verbs of admonishing instead of the genitive are sometimes followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Soror monet Succumbere Lauso Turnum.* Virg. *Monet ut suspiciones vitel.* Cæs.

**RULE XXVIII.** Verbs of *valuing* with their own case, and sometimes without a case, govern such genitives of degree as *magni, parvi, nihili*; as

<i>Estimo te magni,</i>	I value you much.
<i>Mihi stetit pluris,</i>	It cost me more.
<i>Est parvi,</i>	It is of little value.

EXPLANATION.—By its own case is meant, the case which the verb usually governs. Verbs without case, as, *sum fio, existo,* &c., have the genitive only. The adjectives *magni parvi,* &c., may agree with *pretii, momenti,* or the like understood, and the construction perhaps come under R. VII. If so, it would account for the ablative sometimes used after the same verbs. See Obs. 6.

Verbs of valuing are such as *æstimō, existimō, duco, facio, habeo, pendeo, puto, taxo, sum, fio, consto, &c.*; also, *refert* and *intērest*.

Among the genitives of degree governed by such verbs are the adjectives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris, magni, plurimi, mirimi, parvi, quantilibet, &c.*, and the substantives *assis, flocci, nauci, pili, teruncii, hujus, &c.* For the genitive of price, see §133, Exc.

*Obs. 5.* *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*; as, *Æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

*Obs. 6.* Instead of the genitive, *æstimō*, and a few others, sometimes take the ablative. After *habeo, puto, duco*, the ablative with *pro* is common; as, *Pro nihilo putāre*. *Refert* and *Intērest*, with their own case, §113, Exc. I., often take *nil*, or a neuter accusative, or an adverb, instead of the genitive, to express degree; as, *Mea nihil refert. Multum intērest*. So, also, *nil* is used with *æstimō* and *moror*.

## §123. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

RULE XXIX. Verbs of *comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away*, govern the accusative and dative; as,

*Compāro Virgilium Homēro,*  
*Suum cuique tribuito,*  
*Narras fabulam surdo,*  
*Eripuit me morti,*

I compare Virgil to Homer.  
Give every man his own.  
You tell a story to a deaf man.  
He rescued me from death.

EXPLANATION.—This is a rule of very extensive application. When, together with the *thing done*, (expressed by the active verb and its accusative,) we express also the remote object to which it is done, that object will be put in the dative; thus, in the above examples, the verb and the accusative following it, express the *whole* of that which is represented as done to, or with reference to, the object expressed in the dative; i. e. *Compāro Virgilium*, expresses all here said to be done, (*Homēro*), to Homer,—I compare Virgil to him. *Narras fabulam*, expresses all here said to be done, (*surdo*), to the deaf man,—you tell a story to him; and so *Eripuit me*, together, express what is here done, (*morti*) to death,—he rescued me from it; and so of other examples. See this more fully illustrated, Gr. Gram. § 152. *Obs. 3.*

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs. 1.* Verbs of comparing and taking away, and some others, instead of the dative often take a preposition and its case; as, *Comparāre unam rem cum aliā, —ad aliā, —res inter se. Eripuit me morti, —morte, —a, or ex morte, &c.*

*Obs. 2.* Instead of the accusative, these verbs have frequently an infinitive mood or a part of a sentence; as, *Da mihi fallere, Reddes mihi dulce loqui, &c.* Hor. *Perfacile factu esse illis probat; Itemque Dumnorigi, ut idem conaretur persuadet.* Cæs. This construction is especially common with such verbs as, *Aio, dico, inquam, persuadeo,*



*respondeo*, &c. when the thing *said*, *replied*, &c. though a sentence or a paragraph, is to be regarded as the accusative, and the person or persons to whom said is put in the dative.

*Obs.* 3. Several verbs governing the accusative and dative are often construed differently; as, *Circumdäre mænia oppido*, or *oppidum mænibus*, "to surround a city with walls." *Intercludere comæatûm alicui*, or *aliquem comæatû*, "to intercept one's provisions." *Induere, exuire vestem sibi*, or, *se vesti*. So the following, *Universos frumento donavit*. *Nep.* and *Prædam militibus donat*. *Cæs.* *Aspergere sals carnes*, or *aspergere salem cornibus*. *Plin.*

*Obs.* 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui* (*sc. se.*) *Cedere alicui* (*sc. locum.*) *detrahere alicui*, (*sc. laudem.*) &c.

*Obs.* 5. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them with the preposition *ad*; as, *Ad prætorem hominem traxit*.

## § 124. VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES.

**RULE XXX.** Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

*Poscimus te pacem,*  
*Docuit me grammaticam,*

We beg peace of thee.  
He taught me grammar.

**EXPLANATION.**—The first accusative under this rule belongs to Rule **XX**. the second may be governed by *quod attinet ad*, or *secundum* understood, meaning *as to*, *in respect of*. Or the reason of this rule may be, that most of the verbs under it, admit either of the nouns after them, as their immediate object.

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs.* 1. Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are *Rogo*, *oro*, *exoro*, *obsecro*, *precor*, *posco*, *reposco*, *flagito*, &c. Of teaching, *Doc o*, *edoc o*, *dedoc o*, *erud. o*. To these may be added, *celo*, to conceal; as, *Antigonus iter omnes celat*. *Nep.*

*Obs.* 2. Verbs of asking, instead of the accusative of the person, often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Veniam oramus ab ipso*. So also, instead of the accusative of the thing, many verbs both of asking and teaching sometimes take the ablative with *de*; as, *De itinere hostium senatum edocet*. *Sall.* *Sic ego te eisdem de rebus interrøgem*.

*Obs.* 3. Some verbs of asking and teaching, are never followed by two accusatives, but by the ablative of the person, with a preposition; such as, *exigo*, *pelo*, *quæro*, *scitor*, *sciscitor*, and the following verbs of teaching, viz: *imbuo*, *instituo*, *instruo*, and some others, are followed by the ablative of the thing, sometimes with, and sometimes without a preposition; and sometimes they are otherwise construed.

*Obs.* 4. Many other active verbs, frequently besides the accusative of a person, take also an accusative of *nihil*, or of the neuter pro-

nouns, *hoc*, *id*, *quid*, or of adjectives of quantity; as, *Fabius ea me monuit*. Cic. *Nec te id consulo*. Id. These verbs, however, in their signification, generally resemble verbs under this rule; or the accusative of the thing may be governed by a preposition understood

## § 125. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

RULE XXXI. Verbs of *loading*, *binding*, *clothing*, *depriving*, and their contraries, govern the accusative and ablative; as,

*Onerat naves auro*,            He loads the ships with gold.

EXPLANATION.—The accusative under this rule belongs to Rule XX. The ablative may be governed by a preposition understood.

### OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. Verbs of loading are *Onero*, *cumulo*, *premo*, *opprimo*, *obruo*, *implero*, *explero*, *compleo*.—Of unloading, *levo*, *exonero*, &c.—Of binding, *astringo*, *ligo*, *alligo*, *devincio*, *impedio*, *irretio*, *illaqueo*, &c.—Of loosing, *solvo*, *exsolvo*, *libero*, *laxo*, *expedio*, &c.—Of depriving, *privo*, *nudo*, *orbo*, *spolio*, *fraudo*, *emungo*.—Of clothing, *vestio*, *amicio*, *induo*, *cingo*, *tego*, *velo*, *corono*.—Of unclothing, *exuo*, *discingo*, &c.

To these may be added many other verbs, such as, *muto*, *dono*, *munero*, *remunero*, *communico*, *pasco*, *beo*, *impertior*, *dignor*, *afficio*, *prosequor*, *assequor*, *spargo*, *oblecto*, &c. with which, however, in many cases, the ablative may come under Rule XXXIV. and XXXV.

Obs. 2. These verbs are sometimes followed by the ablative with a preposition expressed; as, *Solvère aliquem ex catēnis*. Cic. The ablative is sometimes understood; as, *complet naves*, sc. *viris*. Virg.

Obs. 3. Several of these verbs denoting to fill, likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temerilitatis implet*, "He fills the youth with his own rashness." Some of them also vary their construction; as, *induit* or *exuit se vestibus*, or *vestes sibi*. *Abdicare magistratum*. Sall. *Abdicare se magistratu*. Cic. See § 123. Obs. 3.

## § 126. CONSTRUCTION WITH PASSIVE VERBS.

RULE XXXII. Verbs that govern two cases in the active voice, govern the latter of these in the passive; as,

<i>Accusor furti,</i>	I am accused of theft.
<i>Virgilius comparatur Homero,</i>	Virgil is compared to Homer.
<i>Doceor grammaticam,</i>	I am taught grammar.
<i>Navis oneratur auro,</i>	The ship is loaded with gold

This rule may be subdivided into the five following, which will be much more convenient in practice, than the general Rule.

**Rule I.** Verbs of *accusing, condemning, &c.* in the passive voice, govern the Genitive.

**Rule II.** Verbs of *valuing* in the passive, govern such genitives as, *magni, parvi, nihili, &c.*

**Rule III.** Verbs of *comparing, giving, declaring and taking away, &c.* in the passive, govern the dative.

**Rule IV.** Verbs of *asking, and teaching, &c.* in the passive, govern the accusative.

**Rule V.** Verbs of *loading, binding, clothing, depriving, &c.* in the passive, govern the ablative.

**EXPLANATION.**—This rule applies to the passives of all verbs under Rules XXVII. to XXXI. inclusive. In all of these the “latter case” is that which with the active voice expresses the *remote*, and never the *immediate* object of the verb. In all constructions under this rule it must be noticed that that which was, or would be the accusative after the verb in the active voice, must be its nominative in the passive, otherwise the construction does not belong to this rule. Thus, Active, *Narras fabulam surdo*. Passive, *Narratur fabula surdo*. Here “fabulam,” the direct object of *narras*, is changed into the nominative or subject of *narratur*; and *surdo* remains the same in both sentences. The “latter case,” in other words, the remote object of the active voice is never, in Latin, converted into the subject of the passive except in a few instances which are manifest Græcisms. See Greek Gram. § 164. Obs. 2. In English, however, there are some expressions in which this is allowed. See Eng. Gram. § 49. Obs. and Crombie's Etymology, p. 270.

Hence, where, in some cases the Greek and English languages admit of two forms of expression, the Latin *idiom* admits of only one, e. g. “This was told to me,” or “I was told this,” is rendered into Latin by the first form; thus, *Hoc mihi dictum est*. But we cannot say according to the second form, *Hoc dictus sum*.

Obs. 1. When the active voice is followed by three cases, § 114.  
Obs. 3. the passive has the two last; as, *Hoc missum est mihi muneri*, “This was sent as a present to me.” Here *muneri* is the dative of the *end*. R. XIX.

**RULE XXXIII.** Passive verbs frequently govern the dative of the doer; as,

<i>Vix audior ulli,</i>	I am scarcely heard by any one.
<i>Scriberis Vario,</i>	You shall be described by Varius.
<i>Nulla audita mihi sororum,</i>	None of your sisters have been heard of by me.

**EXPLANATION.**—This construction is used chiefly by the poets, and by them as a substitute for another still more common; namely, that the voluntary agent after the passive voice, is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab* and *ag* comes under Rule XLIX. as, (in the active voice,) *Clodius me diligit*, “Clodius

loves me." (in the passive,) *A Clodio diligo*, "I am loved by Clodius. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *colitur linigera turba*.

*Obs. 2.* After passive verbs the *principal* agent or actor, is usually expressed in the ablative with the preposition *a*, or *ab*; as, *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis*, "He is praised by these, he is blamed by those." But,

The *secondary* agent, means, or instrument after transitive verbs in the active or passive voice or after intransitive verbs, is put in the accusative with *per*; as, *Per Thrasybulum Lyci filium, ab exercitu recipitur*. Nep.; but oftener in the ablative by Rule XXXV.

*Obs. 3.* The passive participle in *-dus*, has the agent or doer almost always in the dative; and besides, when it agrees with the subject of a sentence, conveys the idea of obligation or necessity; as, *Semel omnibus calcanda est via leti*, "The way of death (is to be, i. e.) must once be trod by all. Hor. *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, "Diligence must be used by us," i. e. we must use diligence. Cic. *Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda*, "All things had to be done by Cæsar at one time." § 49. 6.

*Obs. 4.* The accusative of *place* or *time* after intransitives in the passive voice, is not governed by the verb, but by a preposition understood, or comes under other rules; as, *itur Athenas*, Rule XXXVII. *pugnatum est biduum*. R. XLI. *dormitur totam noctem*. R. XLI. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems: Noctes vigilantur amuræ; Oceanus aditur*. Tac.

## § 127. CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

Words and phrases are often thrown in between the parts of a sentence in an adverbial manner, to express some **CIRCUMSTANCE** connected with the idea of the simple sentence, and which do not depend for their case on any word in the sentence to which they belong, but on a preposition or adverb or other word understood, or are by common usage put in a particular case in certain circumstances without government or dependence on any words either expressed or understood.

To this may be referred circumstances. 1. Of *limitation*.—2. Of *cause*, *manner*, &c.—3. Of *place*.—4. Of *time*.—5. Of *measure*.—6. Of *price*; as follows.

## § 128. CIRCUMSTANCES OF LIMITATION.

A particular qualification of a general expression, made in English by the phrase "in respect of," "with regard to," is expressed in Latin by the ablative or more briefly, as follows:

**RULE XXXIV.** *Respect wherein*, and the *part affected* are expressed in the ablative; as,

*Pietate filius,*  
*Jure peritus,*  
*Pedibus æger,*

In affection a son.  
Skilled in law.  
Lame in his feet.

**EXPLANATION.**—The ablative under this rule is used to limit the signification of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, and may be variously rendered to express the nature of the limitation intended; as, *in*, *in respect of*, *with respect to*, *with regard to*, &c.

**Obs. 1.** The part affected, after adjectives and verbs, belongs to this rule, containing, as it does, a similar limitation of a general expression, as in the last of the above examples. The following are of a similar character. *Anxius animo.* Tac. *Crine ruber; ore niger;* Mart. *Con-tremisco totâ mente et omnibus artibus.* Cic. *Antmoque et corpore tor-pet.* Hor.

**Exc.** The part affected, in imitation of a Greek construction, is sometimes expressed in the accusative; as, *Nudus membra*, "Bare as to his limbs." Virg. So, *Sibila colla tumentem.* Id. *Expleti mentem nequit.* Id. *Fractus membra.* Hor. *Tempora cinctus.* Virg. This construction is in imitation of the Greek, (See Gr. Gr. § 1 7. Obs. 1.) The accusative may be governed by a preposition understood.

**Note.**—The accusative in such phrases has usually been accounted for by supplying *quoad*, or *quod ad*, signifying "as to," "with regard to." Crombie in his *Gymnasium*, has clearly shewn that neither of these solutions are correct. That *quoad* never governs an accusative, nor has the meaning here assigned to it; that *quod ad* is not justified by any good authority; but that the proper supplement is, *quod attinet ad*, "as pertains to;" *quod spectat ad*, "as regards." See *Gymnasium*, p. 261. et seq. 4th Ed.

**Obs. 2.** To this rule may be referred the matter of which any thing is made; as, *Ære cavo clypeus*, a shield of hollow brass. But here the preposition is commonly expressed; as, *Templum de marmore.* In imitation of the Greeks, the matter is sometimes put in the genitive; as *cratères argenti*, "goblets of silver." Gr. Gr. § 156. **Obs. 3.**

## § 129. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, &c.

**RULE XXXV.** The *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, are put in the ablative; as,

*Paleo metu,*  
*Fecit suo more,*  
*Auro ostroque decòri,*  
*Scribo calamo,*

I am pale for fear.  
He did it after his own way.  
Decked with gold and purple.  
I write with a pen.

**EXPLANATION.**—The ablative in this rule is probably governed by a preposition understood,—as there are numerous instances in which the preposition is expressed. The *cause* will be known by putting the question, "Why?" or "wherefore?" The *manner*, by "How?" The *mean* by "By what means?" The *instrument*, by "Wherewith?"

*Obs. 1.* The *cause* sometimes takes the prepositions *per*, *propter*, *ob*, with the accusative; or *de*, *e*, *ex*, *præ*, with the ablative; as, *Depulsus per invidiam; Fessus de viâ.*

*Obs. 2.* The manner is sometimes expressed by *a*, *ab*, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *per*; as, *De more suo.* The means frequently by *per*, and *cum*; as, *cum meis copiis omnibus vexavi Amanienses.* See § 126. *Obs. 2.*

*Obs. 3.* The instrument properly so called seldom admits a preposition, though among the poets, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *sub*, are sometimes used; as, *Pectora trajectus ab ense; Exercere solum sub vomere.*

### § 130. CIRCUMSTANCES OF PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*.—2. The place *whither* or *to which*.—3. The place *whence*, or *from which*.—4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

N. B. The following rules respecting place refer chiefly to the names of towns. Sometimes, though very seldom, the names of countries, provinces, islands, &c. are construed in the same way. With these, however, the preposition is commonly added.

#### 1. The Place WHERE, or IN WHICH.

RULE XXXVI. The name of a town denoting the place *where*, or *in which*, is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Romæ,  
Mortuus est Mileti,*

He lived at Rome.  
He died at Miletus.

Exc. But if the name of the town *where* or *in which*, be of the third declension, or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,  
Studuit Athénis,*

He dwells at Carthage.  
He studied at Athens.

*Obs. 1.* When the name of a town is joined with an adjective, or common noun in apposition, a preposition is commonly added; as, *Romæ in celebri urbe*; or *in Romæ celebri urbe*; or *in Româ celebri urbe*; or sometimes, *Romæ celebri urbe.*

*Note.*—In this construction the name of a town in the third declension frequently has the ablative singular in *i*; as, *Habitat Carthaginî. Fuisse Sicyonî jamdiu Dionysia.* Plaut. *Tiburi genitus.* Suet.

*Obs. 2.* The name of the town *where*, or *in which*, is sometimes, though rarely put in the ablative when it is of the first or second declension; as, *Tyro rex decedit*; for *Tyri*, "The king dies at Tyre;" Just. *Hujus exemplar Româ nullum habemus.* Vitruv.

*Obs. 3.* The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed before the ablative; as. *In Philippis quidam nuntiavit.* Suet. *At*, or *near a*

place is expressed by *ad*, or *apud* with the accusative ; as, *Ad*, or *apud Trojam*, “at or near Troy.”

## 2. The Place WHITHER, or TO WHICH.

RULE XXXVII. The name of a town denoting the place *whither*, or *to which*, is put in the accusative ; as,

<i>Venit Romam,</i>	He came to Rome.
<i>Profectus est Athēnas,</i>	He went to Athens.

Obs. 4. Among the Poets, the town *to which* is sometimes put in the dative ; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*. Hor.

Obs. 5. After verbs of *telling*, and *giving*, when motion is implied, the name of a town is sometimes put in the accusative ; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, “The report was carried to Rome.” *Messanam litēras dedit*.

## 3. The place WHENCE, or FROM WHICH.

RULE XXXVIII. The name of a town *whence* or *from which* ; or *by* or *through which*, is put in the Ablative ; as,

<i>Discessit Corintho,</i>	He departed from Corinth,
<i>Laodiceā iter fecit,</i>	He went through Laodicea.

Obs. 6. The place *by* or *through which*, however, is commonly put in the accusative with *per* ; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*. Nep.

## 4. *Domus* and *Rus*.

RULE XXXIX. *Domus* and *rus* are construed in the same way as names of towns ; as,

<i>Manet domi,</i>	He stays at home.
<i>Domum revertitur,</i>	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum,</i>	I am called from home.

So also.

<i>Vivit rure or ruri,</i>	He lives in the country.
<i>Abiit rus,</i>	He is gone to the country.
<i>Rediit rure,</i>	He is returned from the country.

Obs. 7. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive like names of towns ; as, *Jacet humi*, “he lies on the ground ;” *Domi et militiæ*, (or *belli*,) “At home or abroad.”

Obs. 8. When *domus* is joined with an adjective the preposition is commonly used ; as, *In domo paternā*. So, *ad domum paternam*, *Ex domo paternā*,—Except with *meus*, *tuus*, *sus*, *noster*, *vester*, *regius*, and *alienus* ; then it follows the rule. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, it may be with or without a preposition ; as *Deprehensus est domi domo*, or *in domo Cæsaris*.

*Obs.* 9. *Rus* and *rûre* in the singular joined with an adjective are used with, or without a preposition. But *rûra* in the plural, is never without it.

*Obs.* 10. The names of countries, provinces, and all other places except towns, are commonly construed with a preposition; as, *Natus in Italiâ; Abiit in Italiam; Rediit ex Italiâ; Transit per Italiam*, &c. A few cases occur, however, in which names of countries, provinces, &c. are construed like the names of towns without a preposition; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, &c. *Cæs.*

*Pelo*, "I seek," or "go to," always governs the accusative as an active verb without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, "he went to Egypt."

### § 131. CIRCUMSTANCES OF TIME.

**RULE XL.** Time *when*, is put in the ablative; as,

*Venit horâ tertiâ,*

He came at the third hour.

**RULE XLI.** Time *how long*, is put in the accusative or ablative; as,

*Mansit paucos dies,  
Sex mensibus abfuit,*

He staid a few days.  
He was absent six months.

**EXPLANATION.**—A *precise* period or point of time, is usually put in the ablative,—continuance of time, not marked with precision, for the most part in the accusative.

*Note.*—It must be observed here, that the *point of time* under this rule, must coincide with the time of the verb with which it is connected, otherwise the rule does not hold good.—Thus, "He invited me to dine with him next day," is properly rendered under this rule. *Secum postero die ut pranderem invitavit*; because *postero die* and *pranderem* are cotemporary. But if we change the verb *pranderem* for a noun, *postero die* will not do in the ablative, but must be changed thus; *ad prandium me invitavit in posterum diem*. *Postero die* in this sentence, would mean that the invitation was given next day, and would be rendered in English, "Next day he invited me to dinner."

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs.* 1. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; such as, *in, de, ad, ante, circa, per*, &c. Sometimes *ad* or *circa*, is understood before *hoc, illud, id, isthuc*, with *etâtis, temporis, horæ*, &c. following in the genitive; as, *id temporis, (sc. ad) for eo tempore*, &c.

*Obs.* 2. Precise time, before or after another fixed time, is expressed by *ante*, or *post*, regarded as adverbs, either with the accusative or ablative; *aliquot ante annos. Paucis ante diebus. Paucos post dies*, &c.

Sometimes *quam* with a verb, are added to *ante* or *post*; as, *Paucis post diebus quam Luca discesserat*. A few days after he had departed from Luca. Sometimes *post* is omitted before *quam*; as, *die et gestâ quam creatus erat*.



Obs. 3. Instead of *postquam*, we sometimes find *ex quo*, or *quum*; or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Octo diebus quibus has litteras dabam*. Eight days after I gave these letters.

Obs. 4. The adverb *abhinc*, is used to express past time, joined with the accusative or ablative, without a preposition; as, *Factum est abhinc biennio*, or *biennium*. It was done two years ago.

## § 132. CIRCUMSTANCES OF MEASURE.

RULE XLII. *Measure* or *distance* is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

<i>Murus est decem pedes altus,</i>	The wall is ten feet high.
<i>Urbs distat triginta millia or tri-</i>	} The city is distant thirty miles.
<i>ginta millibus passuum,</i>	
<i>Iter or itinere unius diei,</i>	One day's journey.

### OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after such adjectives, and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, altus; Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are, *pes, cubitus, ulnus, digitus, palmus, mille passuum*, a mile, &c.

Obs. 2. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *eo, curro, duco, absum, disto, &c.* The accusative under this rule may be governed by *ad*, or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a*, or *ab*.

Obs. 3. When the measure of more things than one is expressed, the distributive numeral is commonly used; as, *Muri sunt decem pedes alti*, "The walls are each ten feet high." Sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum* is used in the genitive, governed by *ad mensuram*, understood. But the genitive is used to express the measure of things in the plural only.

Obs. 4. The distance of the place where any thing is said to be done, is usually expressed in the ablative or in the accusative with a preposition; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe conseedit*; or *ad sex millia passuum*. Cæs.

Obs. 5. Sometimes the place from which distance is estimated is not expressed, though the preposition governing it is, and may be rendered *off, distant, &c.*, as *Ab sex millibus passuum abfuit*; He was six miles off, or distant. (Scil. *Româ*, from Rome.)

RULE XLIII. The measure of *excess* or *deficiency* is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Sesquipede longior,</i>	Taller by a foot and a half.
<i>Novem pedibus minor,</i>	Less by nine feet.
<i>Quantodoctior, tanto submissior,</i>	The more learned, the more humble

(Obs. 6. To this rule are to be referred the ablatives *tanto, quanto, quâ, eo, hoc, aliquanto, multo, paulo, nihilo, &c.*, frequently joined to comparatives, and sometimes with superlatives.

## § 133. CIRCUMSTANCES OF PRICE.

RULE XLIV. The *price* of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Constitit talento,</i>	It cost a talent.
<i>Vendidit hic auro patriam,</i>	This man sold his country for gold.

Exc. But *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are used in the genitive; as,

<i>Quanti constitit?</i>	How much cost it?
<i>Non vendo pluris quam ceteri,</i>	I do not sell for more than others.

Obs. 1. When joined with a noun, *tanti, quanti*, &c. are put in the ablative; as, *Quam tanto pretio mercatus est. Tanto quanto*, and *plure* are sometimes though rarely found without a noun; as, *plure venit*, "it is sold for more."

Obs. 2. The ablative of price is often an adjective without a noun; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, tantulo, minimo, plurimo, vili, nimio*. These refer, however, to some such noun as *pretio, ære*, &c. understood. *Valeo* is found with an accusative.

## § 134. CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

RULE XLV. Adverbs are joined to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, to modify and limit their signification; as,

<i>Bene scribit,</i>	He writes well.
<i>Fortiter pugnans,</i>	Fighting bravely.
<i>Egregie fidelis,</i>	Remarkably faithful.
<i>Satis bene,</i>	Well enough.

## OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes joined with nouns, as, *Homærus plane orator*, Homer evidently an orator.

Obs. 2. The adverb is usually placed near the word modified or limited by it.

*Negatives.*

Obs. 3. Two negatives in Latin, as well as in English, destroy each other, or are equivalent to an affirmative; as, *Nec non senserunt*, "nor did they not perceive;" i. e. *et senserunt*, "and they did perceive." So, *Non poteram non exanimari metu*. Cio. *Non sum nescius*, i. e. *scio*; *haud nihil est*, "it is not nothing," i. e. "it is something," *nonnulli*, "not none," i. e. "some;" *nonnunquam*, "not never," i. e. "sometimes;" *non nemo*, "not nobody," i. e. "somebody;" &c.

Obs. 4. Exc. In imitation of the Greeks, however, two negatives in Latin, as well as in English, sometimes make a stronger nega

tive; as, *Neque ille haud objiciet mihi*, "He will not by any means object to me;" *Jura te non nocilurum homini nemini*, &c. *Neque*, and *nec*, and sometimes *non*, are especially thus used after a negative; as, *Non me carminibus rincet*, *nec Orpheus*, *nec Sinus*.

Obs. 5. *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non modo*, or *non solum*, when followed in a subsequent clause by *ne quidem*; as, *Mihi non modo irasci*, (i. e. *non irasci*,) *sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*. Sometimes, but rarely, it is omitted after *sed*, or *verum*, with *etiam*; as, *Non modo ea futura timet*, (i. e. *non timet*,) *verum etiam fert sustinetque presentia*. For *ne*, and *ut*, with *timeo*, &c. see § 140. Obs. 6.

Obs. 6. Certain adverbs are joined to adjectives in all the degrees of comparison, for the purpose of imparting greater force to their signification; as,

1st. To the positive are joined such adverbs as, *apprime*, *admōdum*, *vehementer*, *maxime*, *perquam*, *valde*, *oppidō*, and *per*, in composition; as, *gratum admōdum*, very agreeable; *perquam puerile*, very childish; &c. In like manner, *Parum*, *multum*, *nimum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*; as, *parum firmus*; *multum bonus*.

2d. To the comparative are joined, *Paulo*, *nimio*, *aliquanto*, *eo*, *quo*, *hoc*, *impendio*, *nihiō*; as, *Eo gravior est dolor quō culpa major*.—Cic. See § 132. Obs. 6. Sometimes, also, *parum*, *multum*, &c. as with the positive.

3d. To the superlative are joined *Facile*, meaning "certainly," "undoubtedly;" *longe*, *quam*, also *tanto*, *quanto*, *multo*, &c. as, *Facile doctissimus*, certainly the most learned; *longē bellicosissima*, (sc. *gens*,) by far the most warlike; *quam maximas potest copias armat*, he arms as great forces as possible.

4th. *Quam*, (and also *ut*,) is also used as an intensive word with the positive, but in a sense somewhat different, resembling an exclamation; as, *Quam difficile est!* how difficult it is! *quam*, or *ut crudelis!* how cruel! *Flens quam familiariter*, weeping how affectionately, i. e. very affectionately; *quam severē*, how severely, i. e. very severely.

## § 135. CASES GOVERNED BY ADVERBS.

RULE XLVI. Some adverbs of *time*, *place*, and *quantity*, govern the genitive; as,

*Pridiē ejus diēi*,

The day before that day.

*Ubique gentium*,

Every where.

*Satis est verbōrum*,

There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genitive are, *Interea*, *postea*, *inde*, *tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time.

2. Of place, *Ubi*, and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique*, *ubicunque*, *ubivis*, *ubiubi*, *quovis*, &c. Also, *eo*, *huc*, *hucne*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *longe*, *ibidem*, &c.; also, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *unde terrarum* or *gentium*; *longē gentium*; *ibidem loci*, *ēd audaciē*,—*recordiē*—*miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness—madness—misery, &c.

3. Of quantity, *Abundè, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minime*; as, *Abundè gloriæ; affatim divitiarum; largiter auri; satis eloquentiæ; sapientiæ parum est illi, or habet, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. Minime gentium, by no means.*

*Obs. 1. Ergò, (for the sake of,) instar and partim, also govern the genitive; as, Donari virtutis ergò.*

*Obs. 2. Pridie and Postridie, govern the genitive or accusative; as, Pridie Kalendas, sup. ante; Postridie Kalendas, sup. post.*

*Obs. 3. En and Ecce govern the nominative or accusative; as, En causa; Ecce homo or hominem, sometimes a dative is added; as, Ecce duas aras tibi. Virg. In such constructions, a verb may be understood. The dative may be referred to, § 109. 3.*

*Obs. 4. Certain prepositions used adverbially by the poets, are followed by the dative; as, Mihi clam est, it is unknown to me. Contra nobis.*

**RULE XLVII.** Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

<i>Omnium optime loquitur,</i>	He speaks the best of all.
<i>Convenienter naturæ,</i>	Agreeably to nature.
<i>Veni obviam ei,</i>	He came to meet him.
<i>Proxime castris or castra,</i>	Next the camp.

**EXPLANATION.**—In the first example, *optime* is derived from *optimus*, which governs the genitive by Rule X. § 107. *Convenienter* and *obviam*, are derived from *conveniens* and *obvius*, which govern the dative by Rule XVI. § 111. And *proxime* is derived from *proximus*, which governs the dative or accusative by Rule XVI. *Obs. 5. § 111.*

## § 136. CASES GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

**RULE XLVIII.** Twenty-eight prepositions, *ad, apud, ante, &c.* govern the accusative; as,

<i>Ad patrem,</i>	To the father.
-------------------	----------------

**RULE XLIX.** Fifteen prepositions, *a, ab, abs, &c.* govern the ablative; as,

<i>A patre,</i>	From the father.
-----------------	------------------

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs. 1. Clam, one of these fifteen, is sometimes followed by the accusative; as, clam vos, without your knowledge. When followed by a genitive or dative; as, Clam patris. Ter. Mihi clam est. Plaut. A substantive may be understood, or they may be regarded as adverbs*

*Obs. 2. Tenus after a plural noun. commonly has it in the genitive; as crurum tenus. Virg.*

RULE L. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, denoting *motion to*, or *tendency towards*, govern the accusative; as,

<i>Venit in Urbem,</i>	He came into the city.
<i>Amor in te,</i>	Love towards thee.
<i>Sub jugum missus est,</i>	He was sent under the yoke.
<i>Incidit super agmina,</i>	It fell upon the troops.

RULE LI. The prepositions *in* and *sub* denoting *situation*, govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative; as,

<i>Jacet in terrâ,</i>	He lies upon the ground.
<i>Mediâ in urbe,</i>	In the middle of the city.
<i>In poetis,</i>	Among the poets.
<i>Sub mœnibus,</i>	Under the walls.

Obs. 3. To both of these rules there are some exceptions. Instances occur in which *in* and *sub* denoting *motion to*, or *tendency towards*, instead of the accusative govern the ablative; as *In conspectu meo audeat venire*; *sub jugo dictator hostem misit*. Others are found in which they govern the accusative when they denote *situation*; as, *Mihi in mentem fuit. Hostes sub montem consedissee, &c.*

Obs. 4. The preposition *in* with the accusative usually signifies *into*, *towards*, *until*, *for*, *against*; with the ablative *in*, *upon*, *among*. With both cases, however, considerable variety of translation is necessary to convey correctly the idea of the original. The following are instances, "*In the case of*," *Talis in hoste fuit Priamo*. Virg. "*On account of*," *In quo facto domum revocatus*;—*In sex mensibus*, "*Within six months*;" *In dies*, "*from day to day*." So, *in horas*, "*from hour to hour*;" *in capita*, "*per head*;" *in pueritia*, "*during boyhood*;" *in hoc tempore*, "*at this time*," &c.

Obs. 5. The preposition is frequently understood before its case; as, *Devenere locos*. Virg. *Homo id ætatis*. Cic. *Propior montem*. Sall. In which *ad* is understood. So, *Nunc id prodeò*, sc. *ob*;—Ter. *Maria aspèra jûro*, sc. *per*. *Se loco movère*, sc. *e*, or *de*; *Quid illo facias?* sc. *in* or *de*, "*what can you do in his case?*" *Ut patriâ expelleretur*, sc. *ex*. Nep.

Obs. 6. Sometimes, but much more rarely, the case is omitted after the preposition; as, *circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*. Sall. *Multis post annis*, i. e. *post id tempus*.

RULE LII. A preposition in composition often governs its own case; as,

<i>Adeamus urbem,</i>	Let us go to the city.
<i>Exeamus urbe,</i>	Let us go out of the city.

EXPLANATION.—By "*its own case*" is meant the case it governs when not in composition. This rule takes place only when the preposition may be separated from the verb, and placed before the case, without altering the sense. Thus, *Adeamus urbem*, and *Eamus ad urbem*, express the same thing.

**Obs. 7.** The preposition is often repeated after the compound word; the case is then governed by the preposition repeated; as, *Exire e finibus*. Cæs. *Nunquam accedo ad te, quin abs te abeam doctior*. Ter.

**Note.**—Some verbs never have the preposition repeated after them; such as, *affaris, alloquor, allatro, alluo, accolo; circum*, with *venio, eo, sto, sedeo, volo; ob eo, oratere, ab dico, effero, everto, &c.* Some compounds with *inter*, and *præter*, commonly omit the preposition. The compounds of *in*, *ob*, and *sub* generally take the dative; those of *super* generally the accusative.

**Obs. 8.** Some verbs compounded with *e*, or *ex*, are followed by an accusative or ablative; as, *exire limen*. Ter. *Exire septis*. Virg. Some words compounded with *præ*, take an accusative; as, *Tibur aquæ præfluunt*. Hor. In some of these cases, however, the accusative may be governed by *præter* or *extra* understood.

**Obs. 9.** The case governed by the preposition in composition is sometimes omitted; as, *Emittere servum*, sc. *manu*. Plaut. *Evomere virus*, sc. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, sc. *castris*. Cæs.

For the construction of interjections, see § 117.

## SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

### § 137. CONNEXION OF TENSES.

The tenses in the indicative and subjunctive moods, so far as relates to their construction may be divided into two classes, *Primary* and *Secondary*, as follows,

#### *Primary.*

Present,  
Perfect definite. § 44. III.  
Futures.

#### *Secondary*

Imperfect.  
Perfect indefinite. § 44. III.  
Pluperfect.

With the primary tenses may be classed the *Imperative Mood*.

Of these tenses the *Primary* are used to express actions, &c. as present or future; the *Secondary*, in the recital of these actions as past.

In the construction of sentences consisting of different members, the subjunctive mood in the subordinate or secondary parts, usually corresponds in time to the tense in the primary or leading part. Hence the following Rule.

**RULE LIII.** Any tense of the subjunctive mood may follow a tense of the *same class* in the indicative; as,

PRES.	<i>Lego,</i>	} <i>ut discam,</i>	I read,	} <i>that I may learn</i>
PERF. DEF.	<i>Legi,</i>		I have read,	
FUT.	<i>Legam,</i>		I will read.	
IMPER.	<i>Lege, ut discas.</i>		Read that you may learn	
IMPER.	<i>Legēbam,</i>	} <i>ut discērem.</i>	I was reading,	} <i>that I might learn.</i>
PER INDEF.	<i>Legi,</i>		I read,	
PLUP	<i>Legēram.</i>		I had read,	

**EXPLANATION.**—In clauses connected, the present, the perfect and periphrastic future with *sim* or *fuero*, § 79. 8, in the subjunctive mood, may follow either the present, or the perfect definite, or the futures, of the indicative, or the imperative mood. In like manner, the imperfect, the perfect definite, and the periphrastic future with *essem* or *fuisset* in the subjunctive mood, may follow either the imperfect, or the perfect indefinite, or the pluperfect in the indicative.

*Obs.* 1. When the present tense of the indicative is used in narration for the past, § 44. I. 3. it may be followed by the secondary tenses of the subjunctive, as *Legatos mittunt ut pacem impetrarent*.

*Obs.* 2. Primary tenses are sometimes followed by secondary, and secondary by primary, in order to express actions whose time is different.

*Obs.* 3. When the subjunctive follows an infinitive or participle in the primary clause, the class of tenses employed, usually corresponds with the time of the verb on which the infinitive or participle depends.

N. B. This rule and the observations under it, are to be regarded as stating only general principles, the deviations from which, in expressing the endless variety of relations among actions with reference to time, dependence; &c. can be learned only by practice and close attention to classic usage.

For the interchange of tenses in the same and in different moods, see observations on the tenses, § 44 and 45.

## § 138. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

The indicative mood is used in Latin to express what is actual and certain, in an absolute and independent manner; as, *veni, vidi, vici*, "I came, saw, and conquered." It is also used in direct and independent interrogations; as, *Quid agis?* what are you doing?

The indicative mood is used in conditional and dependent clauses, to denote, not what is contingent or uncertain, but what is supposed, or admitted as fact; as, *Si VALES bene est*, if you are in health it is well, i. e. "since you are in health."

The signification and use of this mood, in its several tenses, have been specified, § 44.

## § 139. THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

[For the character and meaning of this mood, in its several tenses, see § 42. II. and § 45.]

### GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. The subjunctive mood is used in dependent clauses only, and consequently, must be preceded by another verb

in the indicative, imperative, or infinitive mood, expressed or understood, with which it is connected by a conjunction, a relative or indefinite word. On this fact the whole construction of this mood depends.

2. The subjunctive mood, in Latin, is used in all cases where the potential or subjunctive mood is used in English. § 42, II. 2d, and Obs. 3.

So far, the construction of the subjunctive in Latin agrees, generally, with the English and the Greek. Its use, however, is much more extensive in Latin, being used in many cases where the indicative is used in these languages. In the construction of sentences, this mood is subject to the following rules.

#### § 140. SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS, &c.

RULE LIV. The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam*, and *dummodo*, &c., and words used indefinitely in dependent clauses, for the most part, require the subjunctive mood; as,

*Lego ut discam.*  
*Nescit quis sim,*

I read that I may learn.  
He knows not who I am.

EXPLANATION.—The conjunctions requiring the subjunctive mood, are those which imply *doubt*, *contingency*, *uncertainty*, and the like, as follows:

1. *Ut*, *quo*, "that," *ne*, *quominus*, "that not," referring to the *result*, *end*, or *design*; take the subjunctive; thus,

1st. *Ut*, "that," denoting a *result*, after such words as *sic*, *ita*, *adeo*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *is*, *ejusmodi*, is followed by the subjunctive.

2d. *Ut*, "that," and *ne*, "that not," denoting *purpose* or *design*; or when "that" is equivalent to "in order that," "so that," take the subjunctive.

3d. After verbs signifying to *request*, *admonish*, *advise*, *commission*, *encourage*, *command*, and the like; or to *endeavor*, *aim at*, or *accomplish*; as, *facio*, *efficio*, &c.; and sometimes to *permit*, to *wish*, to be *necessary* &c., *ut* and *ne* usually take the subjunctive.

4th. *Ut*, with the subjunctive, usually follows such impersonals as *fit*, *fieri non potest*, *accidit*, *incidit*, *occurrit*, *contingit*, *evenit*, *usu venit*, *rarum est*, *sequitur*, *futurum est*, *reliquum est*, *relinquitur restat*, *superest*, *opus est*, *est*; signifying, *it happens*, *it occurs*, *it remains*, &c.

2. *Si* "if;" *ut si*, *quasi*, *ac si*, *æque ac si*, *perinde ut si*, *ulter ac si*, *velut si*, *tanquam*, *ceu*, "as if," expressing a *condition* or *supposition* commonly take the subjunctive.

3. *Ut*, *licet*, *etiam si*, *quamvis*, "although;" *quin* for *quonon*, *utnon*, or *quominus*, take the subjunctive.



4. *Antequam, priusquam*, "before;" *dum, donec, quoad*, "until," *modo, dum, dummodo*, "provided," and the particles of wishing *utinam, O si, ut* or *uti*, for *utinam*, commonly take the subjunctive.

5. Interrogative words used indefinitely in dependent clauses or containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

The words thus used are, the particles *an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon*;—the adverbs *ubi, quo, unde, quorsum, quamdiu, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, quemadmodum, quomodo, ut, quam, quantopere*; the adjectives, *quantus, qualis, quot, quotus, uter; quis, qui, cujus, &c*

*Obs. 1.* Many of these conjunctions are used also with the indicative mood. They are to be regarded merely as connectives, or used adverbially, denoting circumstances of time, manner, &c.

*Obs. 2.* Many other conjunctions are used sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive mood; such as, *Quum* or *cum, etsi, tamenetsi, quanquam, si, sin, ne, nisi, siquidem, quod, quia, &c. Quoniam, quando, and quando quidem*, usually have the indicative.

*Obs. 3.* *Quum* or *cum*, when it signifies *time*, merely, takes the indicative, and is translated *when*; as, *tempus fuit quum homines vagabantur*. When it denotes a *connection of thought*, implying dependence, it takes the subjunctive, and may be translated variously, according to the nature of the connection, *since, although, as soon as, seeing that, &c.*, as, *cum ea ita sint*, "since these things are so."

*Obs. 4.* In narration *quum* is joined with the imperfect, and pluperfect subjunctive, even when it relates to *time*, but then the event denoted by the subjunctive, usually relates to that expressed in the clause on which the subjunctive depends, not only in regard to *time*, but also in some sense as a *cause*; as, *cum sciret Clodius iter necessarium Miloni esse Lanuvium, Româ subito ipse profectus est*.

*Obs. 5.* The conjunction *ut*, is elegantly omitted after *volo, nolo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est*, and the like. Also after the imperatives *sine, fac, or facito*; as, *Precor venias*, "I beg (that) you would come;" *Fac facias*, "see (that) you do it."

*Obs. 6.* After the verbs *timéo, verëor*, and the like, *ut* is used in a negative sense; as, "that not," and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as, *Timeo ut faciat*, "I fear that he will not do it." *Timeo ne faciat*, "I fear that he will do it." In a few examples, however, *ut* seems to have an affirmative and *ne* a negative meaning.

6. In oblique discourse § 141, R. VI. Exp. the verb in dependent clauses takes the subjunctive after any conjunctive term.

## § 141. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVE.

RULE LV. The relative *qui, quæ, quod*, requires the subjunctive, when it refers to an *indefinite, negative* or *interrogative* word—to words imply-

ing *comparison*,—or assigns the *reason, cause* or *end* of that which precedes,—and also in all cases of *oblique narration*.

This General Rule may be subdivided into the following,

### SPECIAL RULES.

**Rule I.** When the relative *qui, quæ, quod*, refers to an *indefinite, negative, or interrogative* word, it requires the subjunctive mood; as,

*Sunt qui dicant,* Some people say.  
*Nemo est qui haud intelligat,* There is no one who does not understand.  
*Quis est qui utilia fugiat?* Who is there that shuns what is useful?

**EXPLANATION.**—This rule takes effect only when the antecedent is something indefinite and when the relative clause is the predicate of the sentence, i. e. when it expresses what is affirmed or denied respecting the subject of the verb, and has for its antecedent, the indefinite, negative or interrogative itself, and not any intervening word. These are indispensable conditions of this rule.

**Obs. 1.** The indefinites referred to in this rule are the indefinite pronouns. § 34. *Obs. 1,* and § 35. (except *quidam*,) and the periphrastic expressions, *est qui, sunt qui, fuerunt qui*, “Some one,” “some;” to which may be added the verbs *reperio, invenio, habeo, adsum, desum, venio*, and some others used in a similar manner, by which indefinite expressions are formed nearly of the same import with *est qui, sunt qui, &c.*; as, *Omnis atas quod agat inveniet*.

The negative antecedents most common under this rule are such as *Nemo est, nullus est, unus non est, alius non est* or *extat, nihil est, nec* or *non quisquam est, vix ullus est, nec ullus est, vix decimus quisque est*, (or any other ordinal used in a similar manner,) *non multi sunt, non multum est*; also, *non est*, or *nihil est*, meaning “there is no cause,” or “reason *wl.*,” and also after *non* or *nihil habeo*. After these last, *quod*, “which,” must follow, governed by *propter* understood; as, *Non est quod scribas*.

The interrogative expressions in the antecedent clause under this rule are chiefly these. *Quis est? quantus est? Uter est? Ecquis est? Numquis est? An quisquam est? an est aliquis? Quotusquisque est? Quotus est? Quot sunt? Quam multi sunt?* And also, *Quid est? Numquid est?* “What cause?” as, *Num quid est quod timeas?* “why should you fear?”

**Note.**—Interrogatives under this rule are of a general character and usually imply a negation; as, *Quis est qui faciat?* “Who is there that does it?” i. e. “nobody does it.”

**Rule II.** The relative is followed by the subjunctive when the relative and antecedent clauses involve a comparison, or when the latter expresses the purpose, object or design, of something expressed by the former; as,

*Dignus qui ametur*, “Worthy to be loved.” *Quis tam esset amens qui semper viveret?* “Who would be so foolish as to live always?”

**EXPLANATION.**—In all cases under this rule the relative is equivalent to *us* with the personal pronoun representing the antecedent; i. e. it is used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut ille, ut nos, ut vos, ut illi*. In such cases, *ut* with the personal pronoun, is frequently used instead of the relative. Here, also, the relative clause must belong, not to the subject, but to the predicate of the sentence, for in such cases only can it be resolved into *ut ego, &c.*

**Obs. 2.** The relative is used in this sense and requires the subjunctive,

1st. When it comes after *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, and the like in the predicate; as, *Patres, si dignum qui (ut ille) secundus ab Romulo numeretur, crearit, auctores fient.*

2d. When it follows *tam, tantus, adeo*; as, *Quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis, tenebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut in tantis, &c.* "Who is so quick sighted that he would not stumble in such darkness?"—In like manner when it follows *talis, ejusmodi, hujusmodi*, the subjunctive is commonly used; as, *est innocentia affectio talis animi qui noceat nemini.*—Also after *is, ille*, and *hic* in the sense of *talis*; as, *Non tu is es qui nescias*, "you are not such a one as not to know." Sometimes in such cases *ut* takes the place of *qui*; as, *Neque enim is es, Catilina, ut te pudor revocarit, &c.*

3d. When it follows a comparative with *quam*; as, *Major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere.*

4th. When the relative clause expresses the *purpose, object or design*, for which the person mentioned in the antecedent clause is *appointed*, or the thing spoken of is *possessed or done*; as, *Lacedæmonii legatos Athenas miserunt qui (i. e. ut illi) eum absentem accusarent*. In such sentences the relative and subjunctive may be properly rendered *to, in order to*; thus, "The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse (or in order to accuse) him in his absence." Sometimes here also, *ut* takes the place of the relative; as, *missus sum ut (i. e. qui) te adducërem.*

**Obs. 3.** When *qui* combines with its signification as a relative, or when the preceding clause implies, a force equal to *so that, such that, the man to, such a man as*, it requires the subjunctive; as, *stultum est timere quod vitare non possis*, "It is foolish to fear that which (i. e. such a thing as) you cannot avoid." In all such cases the antecedent clause conveys a vague and general idea, i. e. the person or things referred to are regarded as a *species* or class rather than as individuals.

**Rule III.** When the relative with its clause assigns the cause or reason of the action or event announced by the antecedent clause, it requires the subjunctive; as,

*Peccavisse mihi videor qui a te discesserim*, "I think that I have erred in having (or, because I) left you."

**EXPLANATION.**—In all constructions of this kind, the relative is equivalent to *quum, quod, quia, or quoniam ego, tu, is, nos, &c.* signifying "because," or "seeing that I," "thou," &c.

**Obs. 4.** The relative has this force in the expressions *quippe qui, ut qui, utpote qui*, and consequently is followed by the subjunctive; as

*Libros non contemno, equidem, quippe qui nunquam legërim, "I do not indeed despise books for, (or because) I have never read them."*

**Rule IV.** When *qui* possesses a power equal to *quam*, or *etsi* is, or to *si*, *modo*, or *dummodo*, "Although—if—provided that he, she, it," &c. it requires the subjunctive mood; as,

*Tu aquam pumice postulas, qui, ipse sitiât, "You demand water from a pumice stone, though itself is parched with thirst." Laco, consilii quamvis egregii quod non ipse afferret inimicus, "Laco was the enemy of any measure, however excellent, if (i. e. provided that) he himself did not propose it."*

**Rule V.** The relative *qui*, takes the subjunctive after *unus* and *solus*; when they restrict the affirmation to a particular subject; as,

*Hæc est una contentio quæ adhuc permansërit, "This is the only dispute which has remained till this time."*

**Rule VI.** In *oblique* or *indirect* discourse, the relative requires the subjunctive mood; as,

*Socrates dicere solëbat, omnes in eo quod scirent satis esse eloquentes. "Socrates was accustomed to say, that all were eloquent enough in that which they knew."*

**EXPLANATION.**—Discourse is said to be *direct*, when a writer or speaker delivers his own sentiments,—*oblique*, when a person relates in his own language, what another speaker or writer said; an example will best illustrate this distinction.—Tacitus introduces Galgacus, addressing the Caledonian army as follows. "When I contemplate the causes of the war, and the necessity to which we are reduced, great is my confidence that this day, and this union of yours, will prove the beginning of universal liberty to Britain." This is the *direct* discourse. If, instead of introducing Galgacus himself to speak his own speech, the historian had only told us what he said, he would have used the *oblique* or *indirect* style, thus. Galgacus said, "that when he contemplated the causes of the war, and the necessity to which they, (the Roman army,) were reduced, his confidence was great, that that day and that union of theirs would prove the beginning of universal liberty to Britain."

In the first of these, or the *direct* discourse, it will be observed that when the speaker refers to himself, he uses the *first* person, "I," "we." When he refers to those addressed, he uses the *second* person, "thou," "you,"—and that the leading verbs in Latin are all in the indicative mood, and independent of any previous word. But in the second or *oblique* discourse, the *third* person only, is used, whether the speaker is said to refer to himself, or his hearers, or a third person. And the leading verbs in Latin, are in the infinitive mood, or in the subjunctive with *ut*, and in either case dependent on the verb with which the account is introduced, such as, "he said," "stated," "replied," or the like. It is evident, therefore, that while in both forms, the same idea is expressed in nearly the same language, the construction of the sentence in each is entirely different; thus, in direct discourse: *Antonius inquit, "Ars earum rerum est quæ sciuntur. Cic* *Quintilian* relates the same thing in the ob-

*lique* form; thus, "*Antoni*us ait, *artem earum rerum esse quæ scientur*. Here the leading verb in the direct form, is *est*, in the indicative mood, having no dependence on any previous word, and having its subject in the nominative case. In the *oblique* form, the same verb is in the infinitive, *esse*; it is dependent on *ait*, and has its subject in the accusative. In the *first*, the verb in the subordinate clause, is in the indicative, *Sciuntur*; in the *last*, it is in the subjunctive mood, *scientur*. Hence, the following general principle.

In every unmixed example of *oblique narration*, two moods only are admissible, the *infinitive* and *subjunctive*, and consequently, as the relative is never employed but in the *secondary*, and subordinate members of a sentence, it must always, in oblique statements, be followed by the subjunctive.

*Obs. 5.* In connection with this general principle, however, two things must be noticed.

1st. In *oblique* discourse, the narrator frequently introduces a remark of his own, for the purpose of explanation, but yet so closely interwoven with the discourse he is reporting, as to seem to be a part of it. Such remark is usually introduced with the relative, and the indicative, and may be detected by this construction: Thus, *Disseruit Cæsar, "non quidem sibi ignara"* quæ de Silano vulgabantur, "*Sed non ex rumore statuendum.*" Cæsar replied that those things, indeed, viz: which were rumoured concerning Silanus, were not unknown to him, &c. Tac. Here, the clause, *quæ de Silano vulgabantur*, is not to be regarded as a part of what Cæsar said, but as a clause thrown in by the historian to inform his readers what things they were which Cæsar meant. But if the verb had been *vulgarentur*, it would have shewn that it was a part of what Cæsar said.

2d. In animated *oblique* narration, the historian sometimes suddenly passes from the *oblique* to the *direct* discourse, and instead of reporting the remarks of the speaker, introduces him, as it were, to speak for himself. This is always manifest by the transition, from the use of the infinitive and subjunctive, to that of the indicative, and from the use of the third person to denote the speaker, and the person addressed, to that of the first and second. The following is often quoted as an appropriate example of this. (OBLIQUE) "*Sabinæ mulieres dirimere infestas acies, hinc patres, hinc viros orantes, ne se sanguine nefando, soceri, generique respergerent; ne parricidio macularent partus suos, nepotum illi, liberam hi progeniem.* (DIRECT) *Si piget affinitatis inter vos, si connubii piget, in nos vertite iras, nos causa belli, nos vulnèrum ac cædium viris ac parentibus sumus, melius peribimus, quam sine alteris vestrum viduæ aut orbæ vivemus.* Liv. I. 13.

*Obs. 6.* A verb in the *Future perfect* indicative, in direct discourse, will always take the pluperfect subjunctive, when the same sentence is thrown into the oblique form, whatever be the tense of the introductory verb; thus, *Dabitur quodcunque optâris*. Ov.; in the direct discourse, is thus related by Cicero, in the oblique form: *Sol Phaethonti filio facturum esse dixit quidquid optâsset*.

*Obs. 7.* To this construction may be referred the subjunctive connected by a relative or casual conjunction with the preceding verb is

any of its parts, for the purpose of expressing, not what the writer asserts himself, but what is alleged by others; as, *Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet juventutem*, "Socrates was accused, because (as was alleged,) he corrupted the youth." The indicative here would assert on the part of the writer, that *Socrates did* corrupt the youth.

*Obs.* 8. When an infinitive or subjunctive mood has a clause connected with it by a relative or other connecting word, for the purpose of restricting the predicate, otherwise indefinite, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive mood; as,

*Quid enim potest esse tam perspicuum, quam esse aliquod numen quo hæc regantur.* "For what can be so clear, as that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed?"

## § 142. CONSTRUCTION OF THE IMPERATIVE.

1. The Imperative mood is used to command, exhort, &c. § 42. III. Its subject, with which it agrees by Rule IV. is the person or persons addressed in the command, &c., and hence, it is properly used only in the *second person*. In Latin, as well as in Greek, the imperative mood has a distinct form for the third person; it is, however, but seldom used, and chiefly in the enacting of laws, having the force of a command on those for whom they are designed.

2. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *neve*; as, *Ne crede colōri*. Virg. *Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito, neve urito*. Cic.

3. Instead of the simple imperative, sometimes *fac* or *cave*, with the subjunctive, are used, and *noli* with the infinitive; as, *Fac venias*, "come;" *cave existimes*, "do not think;" *Noli timere*, "do not fear." For other tenses, used imperatively, see § 42. *Obs.* 9.

## § 143. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

[For the tenses of the infinitive mood, in connection with different tenses of the verb, see § 47.]

The infinitive mood, in Latin, is used in two ways; *First*, as a verbal noun, and *Second*, as a verb. As a verbal noun, it has no subject; as a verb, it always has. Without a subject it cannot form a proposition, or express an affirmation; with a subject it always does. In the first case it comes under the regimen of the verb, either alone as a verbal noun, or with the words depending upon it, as a *substantive phrase*. In the second it comes under its regimen only in connection with its subject, as a distinct, though dependent proposition or *substantive clause*. Hence, all that belongs to the construction of this mood, may be comprised in what relates to the use of it, in these two ways.

## § 144. I. THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT.

The infinitive without a subject, may be regarded as a verbal noun in the singular number, neuter gender, and in form indeclinable, but differing from all other nouns, inasmuch as it involves the idea of *time*, and has all the power of governing that belongs to the verb. The character of the infinitive as a noun, is manifest from its being used in almost every way that a noun is. It is used,

1. As the nominative to a verb; as, *Utinam emori fortunæ meæ honestus exitus esset*; or as the nominative after the verb; as, *Sive illud erat sine funere ferri*.

2. As a case in apposition to a preceding nominative; as, *Res erat spectaculo digna, videre Xerxem*, &c. *It was a thing worthy of being seen, to see Xerxes*, &c.

3. It is used as a genitive after substantives and adjectives; as, *Tempus est abire, for abeundi: Soli cantare periti Arcades*, for *cantandi* or *cantus*. Rule VII. IX.

4. As a dative after adjectives, &c; thus, *Et vos servire magis quam imperare parati estis*. Rule XVI.

5. As an accusative after an active verb; as, *Da mihi fallere*, Hor. *Terram cum primum arant, proscindere appellant; cum iterum, offringere dicunt*. Varr.—After a preposition; as, *Nihil interest inter dare et accipere*. Sen. *Præter plorare*. Hor. *Præter loqui*. Liv.

6. As a vocative; as, *O vivere nostrum*, for *O vita nostra*.

7. As an ablative in various constructions; as, *dignus amari*; as the case absolute; thus, *Audito regem in Siciliam tendere*. This example, however, has a subject *regem*, Rule XXIII.

8. It has an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as, *Scire tuum nihil est*; *Ipsium dicere nunquam non ineptum est*, &c. Cic. In this way we may account for the poetic "*dulce loqui*," "*ridere decorum*," &c.

9. It governs the genitive like a noun; as, *cujus non dimicare fuit vincere*.

It is however, chiefly as the subject or the object of a verb that it is thus used. Hence the following rules.

**RULE LVI.** One verb being the subject of another, is put in the infinitive; as,

*Facile est queri,*  
*Mentiri turpe est,*

To complain is easy.  
To lie is base.

**EXPLANATION.**—In the first example the subject or thing spoken of is expressed by the infinitive *queri*, which is therefore the nominative to the verb *est*. A noun used instead of *queri* would have to be in the nominative case. In such sentences it is manifestly improper to say that *est* governs *queri*, just as it would be improper to say the verb governs its nominative. This rule applies also to the infinitive with a subject

*Obs. 1.* A proper attention to this rule will show that many verbs considered impersonal, or thought to be used impersonally are not really so, but have an infinitive or a clause of a sentence for their subject or nominative; thus, *Nec profuit Hydræ crescere per damnum*, "Nor did it profit the Hydra to grow by his wounds." Ovid. Here, instead of saying that *profuit* is used impersonally, and governs *crescere* in the infinitive; the true construction is that *profuit* is used personally, and has *crescere* for its nominative. So the following, *Cadit in eundem misereri et invidere*. Cic. *Vacare culpâ magnum est solatium; Neque est te fallere quidquam*, &c. § 101. *Obs. 3.*

**RULE LVII.** One verb governs another, as its object, in the infinitive; as,

*Cupio discere.*

I desire to learn.

**EXPLANATION.**—The infinitive mood under this rule is equivalent to a noun in the case which the preceding verb usually governs: Thus, in the example *Cupio* is an active verb and governs *discere*, as if it were a noun in the accusative. The meaning is that a verb, used as the object of another without a conjunction or connective word, must be put in the infinitive. This Rule also applies to the infinitive with a subject.

*Note.*—In all cases under this rule, of the infinitive without a subject, the infinitive expresses an act, or state, of the subject of the preceding verb.

*Obs. 2.* The infinitive without a subject is used only after certain verbs, especially such as denote *desire, ability, intention, or endeavor*, such as, *cupio, opto, volo, nolo, malo*;—*possum, queo, nequeo, valeo, cogito, conor, tendo. disco, doceo, debeo*, &c. By the poets it is used after *fuge, parce* for *noli*, and sometimes after *caveo, fugio, gaudeo*, &c. In a few instances it is used after verbs of motion, to denote a purpose; as, *introit videre*, "He came to see." Ter. *Iniit consilia tollere reges*, "He devised a plan to destroy the kings."

*Obs. 3.* In many cases the infinitive after such verbs may be changed for the infinitive with a subject; as, *cupio me esse clementem*. Cic. for *esse clemens* or *clementem*. § 103. *Obs. 6.* Or for the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *sententiam ne diceret recusavit*, for *sententiam dicere*.

*Obs. 4.* The infinitive without a subject is also used after adjectives and nouns. So used, it is equivalent to a noun in the case governed by such adjective or noun. See examples, § 144. No. 3. 4. 6.

*Obs. 5.* Sometimes the infinitive is understood; as, *Ei provinciam Numidiam populus jussit; sc. dari*.

### *The Historical Infinitive.*

*Obs. 6.* The verb governing the infinitive is sometimes omitted; especially is this the case in historical narration when the infinitive follows a nominative case in the sense of the Imperfect indicative, or the Perfect indefinite; as, *Invidere omnes mihi*, "All envied me." Ter. *At Romani domi militiæque intenti, festinare, parere, alius alium hortari*. Sall. When thus used it is supposed to be governed by *capit* or *ceperunt* understood. Cases occur, however, in which this supplement cannot be made; as, *Verum ingenium ejus haud absurdum; posse facere versus, jocum movere*, &c. Sall



## § 145. II. THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT.

1. The infinitive with a subject possesses the character of the verb and affirms of its subject as in the indicative or subjunctive moods; but only in subordinate and dependent propositions. These propositions themselves have a substantive character, and generally stand in the relation of substantives to the verb on which they depend; sometimes as a nominative, but generally as an accusative or the ablative of manner or cause. Thus used, they may be called *substantive clauses*—and as such they fall under the two preceding rules. Thus,

1st. As the nominative according to Rule LVI. *Te non istud audisse mirum est*, “*That you have not heard that is wonderful.*” Here *Te non istud audisse* stands as the nominative to *est*.

2d. As the object or accusative after the verb, according to Rule LVII. *Miror te non scribere*, “*I wonder that you do not write.*” Here, *te non scribere* stands as the object of *miror* which governs it as an accusative by Rule XX. See *Exp.* 2.

**RULE LVIII.** The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; as,

*Gaudeo te valere,*                      I am glad that you are well.

**EXPLANATION.**—The subject of the infinitive is the person or thing spoken of in the dependent clause and may be, as in Rule IV. a noun, a pronoun, &c. and is always to be in the accusative case; except as in § 144. *Obs.* 6. Under this rule the infinitive with its subject forms a distinct proposition and is equivalent to the indicative, or subjunctive mood in English together with the connective “*that*.” Thus in the example, *te valere* contains the simple proposition “*You are well.*” The equivalent of the English “*that*,” connecting it as a subordinate clause with the preceding verb is implied in the infinitive form. If the infinitive stand after an accusative which does not form with it a distinct proposition, i. e. which is not its subject, it does not belong to this rule, but the accusative is governed by Rule XX; as, *Proteus pecus egit altis visere montes*. Hence,

### OBSERVATIONS.

*Obs.* 1. The English particle “*that*,” may be called the sign of the accusative before the infinitive, being used to connect the infinitive clause with the preceding. It may often be omitted, however, in translating, as it frequently is in English; thus, *Aiunt regem adventare*, “*They say the king is coming,*” or, “*that the king is coming.*”

*Obs.* 2. The accusative in Latin, is translated by the nominative in English. Hence, the accusative of the relative pronoun, referring to persons must be rendered *who*, not *whom*; as, *Quem confectum vulneribus diximus*, “*Who, we said, was exhausted with his wounds.*”

*Obs.* 3. When the subject of the infinitive is the same with the subject of the preceding verb, it is seldom expressed, unless required to be emphatic; as, *Pollicitus sum scripturum (esse) sc. me*, “*I promised that I would write.*” After verbs signifying *to be accustomed, to dare, I can, I ought*, the infinitives *esse, judicari, videri, &c.* having the same subject with the preceding verb, have an adjective

or noun after them in the nominative case, indicating that the subject of the infinitive understood is regarded as a nominative according to the Greek construction. Gr. Gr. § 175. *Exc.* Thus, *solet tristis videri; aude sapiens esse; debes esse diligens.* See also, § 103. *Obs* 5-8. and 150. 3. 3d.

*Obs.* 4. When the preceding verb is in the passive voice, the subject of the infinitive may be changed into the subject of that verb, or remain unchanged in the accusative, the passive verb being used impersonally, or rather having the infinitive clause for its subject; thus, *Matrem Pausaniæ eo tempore vixisse dicitur*, or, *Mater Pausaniæ eo tempore vixisse dicitur*, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living at that time, or, the mother of Pausanias is said to have been living, &c.

*Obs.* 5. The accusative with the infinitive in a subordinate clause is equivalent to the subjunctive with *ut*, *quod*, &c. "that," preceding; as, *Gaudëo te valëre*, or *Gaudëo quodd valeas*. Hence, the one expression may often be changed for the other. Usage, however, has given a preference to the one form in some cases, and to the other in others; as,

1st. When the dependent clause expresses *purpose* or *design*, or when "*that*" is equivalent to "*in order that*, *so that*, *ut* with the subjunctive is used. § 140. 1. 2d.

2d. After verbs of *endeavoring*, *aiming*, *accomplishing*, such as *facio*, *efficio*, *perficio*, &c. the subjunctive with *ut* is used.

3d. Verbs signifying to *request*, *demand*, *admonish*, *advise*, *commission*, *encourage*, *command*, and the like usually take the subjunctive.

4th. *Ut* with the subjunctive follows verbs signifying to *happen*, to *occur*, &c. as, *fit*, *incidit*, *occurrit*, *contingit*: *est*, *restat*, *superest*, &c.

5th. Verbs signifying *willingness*, *unwillingness*, *permission*, *necessity*, &c. commonly take the accusative with the infinitive. Also generally verbs denoting *seeing*, *hearing*, *knowing*, *feeling*, *thinking*, *saying*, &c., but sometimes they take the subjunctive.

*Obs.* 6. After such verbs as *existimo*, *pulo*, *spero*, *affirmo*, *suspicio*, &c. the place of the future infinitive is elegantly supplied by *fore*, or *futurum esse*, followed by *ut* with the subjunctive; as, *Nunquam putavi fore ut supplex ad te venirem*, for *(me) venturum esse*.

This construction is necessary when the verb has no supine and consequently no future infinitive active. See § 47. 9. *Fore* is sometimes used with the perfect participle passive to denote a future action in the passive voice; as, *Quodd vidëret nomine pacis bellum involutum fore*.

*Obs.* 7. The verb on which the infinitive depends is sometimes omitted especially in interrogations, or exclamations, expressive of indignation; as, *Mene incepto desistere nec posse*, &c. *Virg.* In such cases, some such expression as *credibile est* is understood.

## § 146. CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES

[For the tenses and use of the participles in certain connexions see § 49.]

**RULE LIX.** Participles, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

*Homo carens fraude,  
Pax tantum amata.*

A man wanting guile.  
Peace so greatly loved.

**REM.** Participles together with gerunds and supines being parts of the verb, govern the case of their own verb. So that no separate rule for the government of cases by these is at all necessary.

## OBSERVATIONS.

**Obs. 1.** The verbs *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio*, with the perfect participle form a periphrasis similar to the compound tenses in English and other modern languages thus, *Habeo comperitum*, for *compëri*, "I have found;" *Missam iram faciet* for *iram mittet*, &c.

**Obs. 2.** The perfect passive participle is often used to supply the place of a verbal noun, when such a noun is wanting, or but seldom used; as, *Hæ litteræ recitatæ magnum luctum fecerunt*, "The reading of this letter, (not "this letter being read") caused great mourning." So, *Captum Tarentum*, "The taking of Tarentum;" *receptus Hannibal*, "the reception of Hannibal." *Ab urbe condita*, "from the building of the city," &c.

**Obs. 3.** The future active participle is frequently used to denote the purpose or design of an action, and is in such case rendered *to, in order to*; as, *Ad Jovem Hammonem pergīt consultūrus de origine suâ*, "He goes to Jupiter Ammon *to* (or *in order to*) consult him about his origin." So also the present; as, *petens veniam venit*.

**Obs. 4.** The future participle in *-dus*, also denotes a purpose, when joined with verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake*, &c. as, *Testamentum tibi tradit legendum*, He delivers his will to you *to be read*; So, *His aera dedit habendum*.

**Obs. 5.** The participle in *-dus*, generally implies the idea of propriety, necessity, or obligation. This is almost always the case when it agrees with the subject of a sentence; as, *Delenda est Carthago*, Carthage *must be destroyed*. Sometimes, also, when it agrees with words not in the subject; as, *Facta narrabas dissimulanda tibi*, "You were relating things which *ought to have been concealed* by you." The *doer* in such constructions, when expressed, must be in the dative. § 126, **Obs. 3.**

**Note.**—In most other cases, the participle in *dus*, is used as a present participle passive, § 49. **Note 3.**

**Obs. 6.** Participles are often used in Latin, instead of a verb, and particle in explanatory and adversative clauses, to mark a variety of accompanying circumstances, and relations belonging to some noun in the leading proposition of the sentence; as, *Curio ad focum sedenti*

*magnum auri pondus Samnites attulerunt. To Curius as he was sitting by the fire, &c. Dionysius Syracusis expulsus Corinthi pueros docebat, Dionysius when he was expelled from Syracuse. &c.*

Sometimes, as in Greek, it is used to connect an accompanying with the main action, in the same subject as the *cause, manner, or means* of effecting it; as, *Hoc faciens vivam melius, By doing this I will live better. Hor.* So used, it is equivalent to the ablative Gerund.

*Obs. 7.* When a participle does not refer to some leading subject in the proposition, but to a new subject introduced, not depending on any word in the sentence, the participle is put with that new subject, in what is called,

### THE CASE ABSOLUTE.

**RULE LX.** A substantive with a participle, whose case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute; as,

*Sole oriente fugiunt Tenebræ,* { The sun rising, or while the sun rises, darkness flies away.

**EXPLANATION.**—This rule properly belongs to the substantive only, with which the participle then agrees by the preceding rule.

*Obs. 8.* This construction is much more frequent in Latin than in other languages, partly because there is no perfect participle in the active voice. When, therefore, in connection with an active verb, a past act of its subject is to be expressed by the participle, the perfect participle passive must be used, and hence, the *object* of the act must be introduced as a new subject, which, having no dependence on any word in the sentence, must under the rule, be put in the *ablative absolute*. Thus, in English we say. *Cæsar* having sent forward the Cavalry, followed with all his forces. There being no perfect participle in Latin corresponding to "having sent," which would agree with *Cæsar* in the nominative case, this clause must be changed into the passive form; thus, *Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequèbitur,* &c. literally, *Cæsar, the cavalry being sent before, followed, &c.*

As the perfect participle of deponent verbs has an active signification, it is not necessary to resort to such a change in the use of them. Thus, *Cæsar hæc locutus concilium dimisit,* "*Cæsar having said these things, dismissed the council.*" With the participle of a verb, not deponent, the passive form and the ablative would be used thus; *Cæsar his dictis concilium dimisit,* &c. "*Cæsar, these things being said, dismissed the council.*"—The first of these expressions, besides being more direct, is also much more definite, for here, there is no doubt as to who said the things referred to, but in the second it is left in doubt, whether the things referred to were spoken by *Cæsar* or by *some other*. This doubt can be removed only by the context, or by express mention of the doer, which is not often done. In the following sentence the two forms are combined. *Cæsar omnium remotis equis, cohortatus suos prælium commisit.*—So, *Agros Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis ædificiisque incensis. Cæs.*

*Note.*—A few instances occur in which this construction is used when there is no change of subject, and where a different case would have expressed the same thing; thus, *Legio ex castris Varronis, adstante et inspectante ipso, for instantis et adspectantis ipso.*

*Obs. 9.* The ablative absolute in the case of deponent, as well as of other verbs, is used to indicate the order and connection of events narrated, as in the above examples; or to mark the *time* of an action by reference to that of another action; as, *Pythagoras Tarquinio Superbo regnante, in Italiam venit*, Pythagoras came into Italy *in the reign of Tarquin the Proud*. In all such cases, it is equivalent to the subjunctive with a connective word. Thus, *his dictis* in the former example, is equivalent to *quum hæc dixisset*—*Tarquinio superbo regnante, to quum Tarquinius Superbus regnâret*; and so of others.

*Obs. 10.* The verb *sum* having no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and adjective, are used in the case absolute without a participle, which is supplied in English by the word *being*; thus, *se duce*, "he being leader;" *se consule*, "he being consul," or, "in his consulship;" So, *C Duillio et Cn. Cornelio Asinâ consulibus*.

*Obs. 11.* Some word, phrase, or clause of a sentence, sometimes supplies the place of the substantive, and has a participle with it in the ablative; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent; Audito Darium appropinquare; Vale dicto, &c.*

*Obs. 12.* Sometimes the noun is understood as, *Parto quod avêbas*. Sometimes a plural substantive is joined with a singular participle; as, *Nobis præsentē*. For the construction of Gerundives, see next section.

## § 147. GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

The Gerund is a verbal noun in the singular number, governed in its cases as other nouns, and having the same power of Government as the verb. As, therefore, the rules which apply to the government of nouns and verbs, apply to the gerund, it is unnecessary to repeat them here. All that is peculiar to the construction of the gerund, is comprised in the following Rules and Observations.

**RULE LXI.**—The verb *Est*, with the gerund for its subject, implies necessity, and governs the dative of the doer; as,

Nom. <i>Legendum est mihi,</i>	Reading is to me, i. e. I must read
Nom. <i>Moriendum est omnibus,</i>	Dying is to all, i. e. All must die.
Acc. <i>Scio moriendum esse mihi,</i>	I know that dying is to me, i. e. that I must die.

**EXPLANATION.** The dative here is governed by *Est*, according to §112 R 11. In the first and second examples the gerund in the nominative is the subject.

\* Some Grammarians, who regard the gerund as a verbal noun, speak of it as such only in the oblique cases. They think that the nominative of the verbal is supplied by the infinitive mood, and that what is called the nominative of the gerund, is really the neuter of the participle in *dus*, in a passive sense, joined

of *est*, which agrees with it by R. IV. In the third example the gerund is in the accusative, and the subject of *esse*, by R. LVIII. The necessity implied in this construction is stronger than that expressed by the participle in *dus*, the latter implying only that a thing *is to be* done, or *should be* done,—the former that it *must be* done.—See §79, 9.

*Obs. 1.* The dative of the doer in this construction is often understood; as, *Orandum est (tibi) ut sit sana mens in corpore sano.*

*Obs. 2.* The gerund in *di*, of the genitive case, is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

<i>Tempus legendi,</i>	Time of reading, § 106. Rule VI.
<i>Cupidus discendi,</i>	Desirous of learning, § 107. Rule IX.

*Obs. 3.* The gerund in *do*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

*Charta utilis scribendo,* Paper useful for writing, § 111. Rule XVI.

Sometimes it is governed by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo.* Cic. *Appetat habendo ensem.* Virg. *Is finis censendo factus est.*

*Obs. 4.* The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative case, when not the subject of the infinitive, is governed by the prepositions, *ad*, *inter*, &c.; as,

<i>Inter docendum,</i>	In time of teaching.
------------------------	----------------------

*Obs. 5.* The gerund in *do*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

*Pœna a peccando absterret,* Punishment frightens from sinning.

Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner, or cause; as,

*Memoria excolendo augetur,* The memory is improved by exercising it.  
*Defessus sum ambulando,* I am wearied with walking.

*Obs. 6.* The gerund as a verbal noun, resembles the infinitive, and is often put for it; as, *Est tempus legendi* or *legere*. The gerund, however, is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocaretur ad imperandum,* to receive orders. *Urbi videndo,* i. e. *dum videtur,* by being seen.

with the verb *est*, used impersonally. Thus *Studendum est mihi*, they think should be literally rendered "It is to be studied by me." Though this solution is plausible, and would seem to answer in many cases, there are others in which we, at least, cannot see how it could be applied. It cannot be applied unless the participle in *dus* in all cases has, or may have a passive sense; but of this there is no evidence, and facts are opposed to it. Thus, it will hardly be admitted as a literal rendering of *moriendum est omnibus*, to say "it is to be died by all," and it certainly cannot be so used in those examples in which it governs the same case that it does in its active sense; thus, *Utrum pace nobis in bello esset utendum.* Cic. *Quum suo cuique judicio, utendum sit.* Indeed, the fact that gerunds, in all cases, do govern the case of their own verb, seems to be opposed to their being considered as parts of the passive participle in *dus*.

## CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDIVES.

**RULE LXII.** Gerunds governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into gerundives in *dus*, which with the sense of the gerund, instead of governing, agree with their substantive in gender, number, and case ; as,

Gerund,	<i>Tempus petendi pacem,</i>	} Time of seeking peace.
Gerundive,	<i>Tempus petendæ pacis,</i>	
Gerund,	<i>Ad petendum pacem,</i>	} To seeking peace.
Gerundive,	<i>Ad petendam pacem,</i>	
Gerund,	<i>A petendo pacem,</i>	} From seeking peace.
Gerundive,	<i>A petendâ pace,</i>	

**EXPLANATION.**—This rule applies only to the oblique cases. In the first of the above examples, the Gerund *petendi* is governed in the genitive by *tempus* according to Rule VI. and then governs *pacem* in the accusative by Rule XX. In the gerundive form, the genitive *pacis* is governed by *tempus*, by Rule VI. and the gerundive *petendæ* agrees with it by Rule II. In the gerund form the gerund is governed, and then governs the noun. In the gerundive form, the noun is governed, and then the gerundive agrees with it by R. II. In order to change from the gerund to the gerundive, it is necessary only to change the accusative of the noun, into the case of the gerund, and then make the gerundive agree with it; and from the gerundive to the gerund, change the noun into the accusative and the gerundive into the gerund, in the same case as before.

The following are examples to be changed,

**GEN.** *Consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi.*

**DAT.** *Perpetiundo labori idoneus;—Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis;—Natus miseras ferendo;—ad miseras ferendas;—oneri ferendo aptus.*

**Acc. and AB.** *Ad defendendam Romam; Ab oppugnando Capuam; ad collocandum signa; In diripiendis castris.*

**Obs. 7.** Instead of the gerundive in the genitive plural, to agree with a noun in that case, the gerund in the genitive singular is often retained, probably for the sake of Euphony; as, *Fuit exemplorum eligendi potestas.* Cic. *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, instead of *eligendorum condonandorum*. Also, sometimes when the noun is singular and feminine; as, *ejus* (sc. fem.) *videndi cupidus*. Ter.

**Obs. 8.** The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative are never changed into the gerundive, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*, but we always say *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*

## § 148. CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in -UM.*

RULE LXIII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

*Abiit deambulatum,*                      He hath gone to walk

So *Ducere cohortes prædatum.* Liv. *Nunc venis irrisum dominum?* *Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio.* Plant.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat*, *ut se perdat*. He is bent on his own destruction. Ter. This supine with *iri*, taken impersonally supplies the place of the future infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illam sine tuâ op̄râ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved; *An credebas iri* (a te, or ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum.* Ter. The supine here may be considered as a verbal substantive governing the accusative, like the gerund.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Cantatum provocemus.* Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias hiematum.* Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*.

2. *The Supine in -U.*

RULE LXIV. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

*Facile dictu,*                                      Easy to tell, or to be told.

So, *Nihil dictu fædum, visuque, hæc limina tangat, intra quæ puer est.* Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus*; *Fas est*, or *nefas est dictu*; *Opus est scitu.* Cic.

Obs. 4. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsonatu redeo*, from getting provisions. Plant. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus,) *postræmus cubitum eat*. "Let the overseer be the first to rise, and the last to go to bed." Cato.

Obs. 5. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum.* Cic.

Obs. 6. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.



## § 149. CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

**RULE LXV.** The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and moods; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,  
Nec legit nec scribit,*

Honor father and mother.  
He neither reads nor writes.

**EXPLANATION.**—Words coupled by a conjunction under this rule are in the same construction, i. e. two nominatives coupled together are the subject of the same verb, or predicates of the same subject; and nouns coupled together in the oblique cases are governed by the same word, as in the first example. Verbs thus coupled have the same subject or nominative, as in the second example.

**Obs. 1.** The copulative conjunctions under this rule are such as *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *etiam*, *que*; the disjunctives *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*. *seu*, *sive*, *ve*, *neve*, *neu*; also *quam*, *præterquam*, *nisi*, *an*, *nempe*, *quamvis*, *nec-dum*, *sed*, *autem*, *verum*, and in general such connectives as do not imply a dependence of the following, on the preceding clause.

**Obs. 2.** These conjunctions connect not only words but also clauses whose construction is the same, i. e. whose subjects are in the same case, and their verbs in the same mood; as, *Concidunt venti, fugiuntque nubes*.

**Obs. 3.** Words in the same construction are sometimes in a different case: Still they are coupled by the above conjunctions; thus, *Mea et reipublicæ interest*. Here, *mea* and *reipublicæ* though in different cases are in the same construction by Rule XVIII: *Exc. I.* So, *constitit asse et pluris*, Rule XLIV. *Vir magni ingenii, summæque industriæ*, Rule VII. &c. The subjunctive being often used for the imperative is sometimes coupled with it; as; *Disce nec inideas*.

**Obs. 4.** The indicative and subjunctive may be connected in this manner, if the latter does not depend on the former.

**Obs. 5.** When two words coupled together have each a conjunction such as, *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, *nec*, &c. without being connected with a preceding word the first *et* is rendered *both* or *likewise*; the first *aut* or *vel*, by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*, and the first *nec* or *neque* by *neither*. So, also, *tum....tum*, and *cum....tum*, not only....but also; or both....and. And so of others: as, *nunc....nunc*; *jam, ....jam*, &c. In such cases the conjunctive before the first word renders it more emphatic: *tum....tum*, often mean, "at one time....at another time."

**Obs. 6** After words expressing similarity or dissimilarity, *ac* and *atque* signify "as;" and "than;" as, *Facis ac si me roges*, "You do as if you should ask me." *Me colit æquè atque patronum suum*, "He shews me as much attention as," &c. *Si aliter scribo ac sentio*, "If I write otherwise than I think."

**Obs. 7.** Conjunctions that do not imply doubt and contingency; are usually joined with the indicative mood; those which do imply doubt, contingency and dependence, are for the most part joined with the subjunctive. § 140. **Obs. 1. 2. 3.**

## § 150. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A **FIGURE** is a manner of speaking different from the regular and ordinary construction, used for the sake of beauty or force

The figures of Syntax or construction, may be reduced to four, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, *Enallage*, and *Hyperbâton*. Of these, the *first*, and *second*, and *third*, respect the constituent parts of a sentence, the *fourth* respects only the arrangement of words.

1. **ELLIPSIS**, is the omission of one or more words necessary to complete the sense ; as,

*Atunt, ferunt, &c. sc. homines. Aberant bidui, sc. iter, or itinere. Quid multa ? sc. dicam.* Under this may be comprehended,

1st. **ASYNDETON**, or the omission of a conjunction ; as, *veni, vidi, vici. Deus optimus, maximus, sc. et.*

2d. **ZEUGMA** is the uniting of two nouns or infinitives to a verb which is applicable only to one of them ; as, *Pacem an bellum gerens.* Sall. where *gerens* is applicable to *bellum* only. In this way, *nego* is sometimes used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative ; as, *Negant Casârem mansurum, postulâtaque interposita esse: i. e. dicuntque postulâta.*

3d. **SYLLEPSIS** is when an adjective or a verb belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another. See examples § 98. *Obs. 2. 3.*

4th. **SYNECHDÖCHE** is the use of an accusative of the part affected instead of an ablative ; as, *Expleri mentem nequit.* Virg. § 128. *Exc.*

2. **PLEONASM**, is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning ; as,

*Sic ore locuta est,* “ thus she spoke with her mouth.” Virg. Under this are included,

1st. **POLYSYNDETON**, or a redundancy of conjunctions ; as, *Unâ Eurûs que Notusque ruunt.* Virg.

2d. **HENDIADYS**, or the expression of an idea, by two nouns connected by a conjunction, instead of a noun limited by an adjective or genitive ; as, *Patëris libamus et auro,* “ We offer a libation from cups and from gold,” instead of *patëris aureis*, from golden cups.

3d. **PERIPHRAISIS** or a circuitous mode of expression ; as, *Teneri fatus ovium,* “ the tender young of the sheep,” instead of *agni*, lambs.

3. **ENALLAGE**, is a change of words, or a change of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another. It includes,

1st. **ANTIMERIA** or the using of one part of speech for another ; as, *nostrum vivere*, for *nostra vita* ; *conjugium videbit*, for *conjugem*. &c

- 2d. *Heterōsis*, or the using of one form of a noun, pronoun, or verb for another ; as, *Romanus prælio victor*, for *Romani viatores*. *Truncus me sustulêrat*, for *sustulisset*. Hor.
- 3d. *Antiptōsis*, or the using of one case for another ; as *cui nunc cognomen Iulo* for *Iulus*. Virg. § 97. *Exc.* 2. and 114. *Obs.* 5. *Uxor inivicti Jovis esse nescis*, for *te esse uxorem*. Hor. See § 145. *Obs.* 3.
- 4th. *Synēsis* or *Synthēsis*, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word rather than to its gender or number ; as, *Concursus populi mirantium* ;—*Pars in crucem acti* ;—*scelus qui*, &c. § 88. *Exc.* 1. and § 99. *Exc.* 1.
- 5th. *Anacoluthon*, or a departure in the end of a sentence, from the construction with which it commenced. Thus, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est alicunde aliquis objectus labos.....lucro est*. Here the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habemus*, and ended as if he had said *nobis omnibus*. As it is, the nominative *nos* has no verb, and *est*, which in such sentences requires the dative of a person, is without it.

4. **HYPERBATON**, is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses. It includes,

- 1st. *Anastrophe*, or an inversion of the order of two words ; as, *Transtra per et remos*, for *per transtra*, &c. ;—*Collo dare brachia circum*, for *circumdare*, &c.
- 2d. *Hysteron protêron*, or reversing the natural order of the sense ; as, *Moriamur et in media arma ruamus*. Virg. *Valet atque vivit*, Ter.
- 3d. *Hypallage* or an interchange of constructions ; as, *In nova fert animus mutatas dicere formas corpora*, for *corpora mutata in novas formas*. *Dare classibus Austros*, for *dare classes Austris*.
- 4th. *Tmesis*, or separating the parts of a compound word ; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*. Virg. *Quæ me cunque vocant terræ* for *quæcunque*, &c.
- 5th. *Parenthesis*, the insertion of a word or clause in a sentence which interrupts the natural connection ; as, *Tityre dum recdeo (brevis est via,) pasce capellas*. Virg.

To these may be added,

**ARCHAISM**, which in Syntax means the use of ancient forms of construction ; as, *Operam abutitur*, for *operâ*. Ter. *Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem ?*

**HELLENISM** or the use of Greek constructions ; as, *Abstinēto irârūm*, for *iris*. Hor. *Tempus desistere pugnæ*, for *pugnâ*. Virg.

## § 151. LATIN ARRANGEMENT.

In all languages, the arrangement of words in a sentence is different ; and all, it is probable, consider the order of arrangement in their own language the most natural, being that to which they have themselves

been most accustomed. In a language like the English, however, the words of which have but few changes of form or termination, much more depends on their position in a sentence than in those languages which are able, by the changes of form only, to indicate the relation of words to each other, however they may be arranged. Thus when we say in English, "*Alexander conquered Darius*," if we change the order of the words we necessarily change the meaning also; as, *Darius conquered Alexander*. But whether we say in Latin, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*, or place these words in any other possible order of arrangement, the meaning is the same and cannot be mistaken; because it depends, not on the position, but on the form of the words. This gave the Latin writer much more scope to arrange his words in that order which would best promote the strength or euphony of the sentence, without endangering its perspicuity. Still even in Latin, custom has established a certain order of arrangement which is considered the best. And though no certain rules can be given on this subject, which are applicable to every instance, the following general principles and Rules may be noticed.

### *General principles of Latin Arrangement.*

1. The word governed is placed before the word which governs it.

2. The word agreeing is placed after the word with which it agrees. More particularly,

*Rule I.* The subject is generally put before the verb; as, *Deus mundum gubernat*.

*Exc. 1.* When the subject is closely connected with a clause following the verb, it is placed after the verb; as, *erant omnino duo itinera, quibus, &c.*

*Exc. 2.* When the subject is emphatic, it usually follows the verb and concludes the sentence.

*Rule II.* The adjective or participle most commonly follows the substantive with which it agrees.

With few exceptions, however, the place of the adjective or participle is entirely arbitrary. The following usages may be noticed.

- 1st. The adjectives *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, summus, infimus, imus, supremus, reliquus, cæterus*, denoting the first part, the middle part, &c. are generally put before the substantive; as, *summus mons; Extremo libro*, the top of the mountain, &c.
- 2d. When the substantive governs another in the genitive, the adjective generally precedes both; as, *Duo Platonis precepta*.
- 3d. When the substantive is governed by a preposition, the adjective is frequently put before the substantive; as, *Hæc in questione; magnâ in parte*.

4th. The adjective is often put before the substantive for the sake of Euphony.

5th. *Is, ille, hic, iste*, are generally placed before the substantive. and, if used substantively, are placed before the participle.

**Rule III.** The relative is commonly placed after, and as near as possible to its antecedent.

*Obs.* 1. The relative is commonly the first word of its own clause, and when it stands for *et ille, et hic, et is*, or for these pronouns without *et*. § 99. *Obs.* 8. it is always first. Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause precede the antecedent and its clause.

**Rule IV.** The governing word is generally placed after the word governed; as, *Carthaginienſium dux—laudis aridus—Romanorum diſtiſſimus—hoſtem fudit, &c.* Hence,

*Obs.* 2. The finite verb is commonly the laſt in its own clause. To this, however, there are many exceptions.

**Rule V.** Adverbs are generally introduced before the word which they are intended to modify; as, *Leviter agrotantes, leniter curant.* Cic.

**Rule VI.** Conjunctions generally introduce the clause to which they belong; as, *At ſi dares; Sed profecto in omni re fortuna dominatur.*

*Exc.* 1. The enclitics *que, ve, ne*, are always annexed—the two firſt, to the latter of the two words which they ſerve to connect; as, *Albus atrove.* Cic. *Boni malique;*—and the laſt, to the ſubject which the queſtion chiefly regards, thus, *Loquarne?* “Shall I ſpeak?” *Egone loquar?* “Shall I ſpeak?”

*Exc.* 2. The conjunctions *Autem, enim, vero, quodque, quidem*, are always placed after the introductory word of the clause generally in the ſecond place, and ſometimes in the third. *Etiā, igitur*, and *tamen*, more frequently in the ſecond and third place than in the firſt.

**Rule VII.** Words connected in ſenſe, ſhould be as cloſe as poſſible to each other, and the words of one clause ſhould never be mixed with thoſe of another.

**Rule VIII.** Circumſtances, viz: the “cauſe,” the “manner,” the “inſtrument,” the “time,” the “place,” &c. are put before the predicate; as,

*Eum ferro occidi; Ego te ob egregiam virtutem ſemper amavi.*

**Rule IX.** The proper name ſhould precede the name of rank or profeſſion; as *Cicero orator.*

**Rule X.** The Vocative ſhould either introduce the ſentence, or be placed among the firſt words; as, *Credo vos, iudices.*

**Rule XI.** When there is an antithesis, the words chiefly opposed to each other should be as close together as possible ; as, *Appetis pecuniam, virtutem abjicis.*

**Rule XII.** Dependent clauses, as well as single words, are placed before the principal finite verb upon which they chiefly depend.

**Rule XIII.** As a general rule, where the case will admit, it is proper to proceed from shorter to longer words, and from shorter to longer clauses and members of a sentence, as we advance towards the close.

Hence, it will follow, that a sentence should not conclude with a monosyllable, when it can be avoided.

**REMARK.** These, however, are to be considered as but general rules, subject to many modifications, and exceptions, according to the taste of different writers. However, as a general guide, with close attention to classical usage and euphony, they may be of use to enable the student to avoid errors on this subject.

## § 152. RESOLUTION OR ANALYSIS.

Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate, § 94. 6. 7. 8. In analyzing a sentence, it is necessary to distinguish between the *Grammatical* subject and predicate, and the *Logical* subject and predicate.

The *Grammatical subject* is the name or thing spoken of, without, or separated from, all modifying words or clauses, and which stands as the nominative to the verb, or the accusative before the infinitive.

The *Logical subject* is the same word in connection with the qualifying or restricting expressions, which go to make up the full and precise idea of the thing spoken of.

The *Grammatical predicate* is the word or words containing the simple affirmation, made respecting the subject.

The *Logical predicate* is the grammatical predicate combined with all those words or expressions that modify or restrict it in any way ; thus :

In the sentence, "An inordinate desire of admiration often produces a contemptible levity of deportment;" the Grammatical subject is "*desire*;" the Logical "*An inordinate desire of admiration.*" The Grammatical predicate is "*produces*," the Logical, "*produces often a contemptible levity of deportment.*"

In Latin and English, the *general* arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e. the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts, is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how "to take it in," or to arrange it in the

order of the English. This is technically called *construing* or *giving the order*. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

### DIRECTIONS FOR BEGINNERS.

**DIRECT. 1.** As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or **NOMINATIVE**, and the predicate or **VERB**; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,

*First.* Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,\* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

*Second.* Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, § 151. R. I. with exceptions.

**DIRECT. 2.** Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows :

1st. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, Introductory, or connecting words*, if there are any.

2d. The **NOMINATIVE**.

3d. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e. words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4th. The **VERB**.

5th. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e. words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it.

6th. Supply everywhere the words *understood*.

7th. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

**DIRECT. 3.** In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

---

\* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive, § 141. Rule VI.

## RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

*Exc.* The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause, should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb; (in English between the auxiliary and the verb.) Interrogative words, however, such as *quis*, *quotus*, *quantus*, *uter*, &c. come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb look for an accusative,—and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative, and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c. should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions to be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.

*Examples of Resolution.*

*First.* Etenim omnes artes, quæ ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum, et quasi cognatione quâdam inter se continentur. Cic.

1. In looking over this sentence, according to Direction 1 we find the first leading verb to be *habent*, which must have a plural nominative. This leads us at once to *artes*, as the no-



minative. The nominative and verb being thus found on which the other parts depend, then,

2. By direction second, the general arrangement will be,
  1. Connective word, *Etenim*.
  2. NOMINATIVE, "*artes*."
  3. Words limiting and explaining, *omnes, quæ ad humanitatem pertinent*.
  4. The VERB, *habent*.
  5. Words governed by it, *quoddam commune vinculum*.

3. Then by the rules in direction 3, the words in each of these divisions, will be arranged thus. 1. *Etenim*; 2. and 3. *omnes artes*, (R. II.) *quæ*, (R. III.) *pertinent ad humanitatem*, (R. VIII.) 4. *habent*, 5. *quoddam commune vinculum*, (R. II.)

By proceeding in the same manner with the next clause, the whole will then stand thus;

*Etenim omnes artes, quæ pertinent ad humanitatem, habent quoddam commune vinculum, et continentur inter se quasi quâdam cognatione*;—and may be translated as follows:

"For all the arts which pertain to liberal knowledge, (civilization,) have a certain common bond, and are connected together as if by a certain affinity between them."

The pupil will now see, that in the first clause, or simple sentence, the Grammatical subject is *artes*; the Logical—*omnes artes quæ ad humanitatem pertinent*.—The Grammatical predicate is *habent*; the Logical—*habent quoddam commune vinculum*; and so with the next clause.

In like manner proceed with every new simple sentence, or with every succeeding clause of a compound sentence.

### *Example Second.*

Justum et tenacem propositi virum  
Non civium ardor prava jubentium,  
Non vultus instantis tyranni  
Mente quatit solidâ.—

1. Here again, by Direction 1, we find the leading verb to be *quatit*, and its nominative *ardor*. 2. Then, as before,
  1. Connecting words—none.
  2. The NOMINATIVE, *ardor*.
  3. Limiting words, *civium jubentium prava*.
  2. A second NOMINATIVE, *vultus*.

3. Limiting words, *instantis tyranni*.

4. VERB, *quatit*.

5. Words modifying and governed by it, *non—mente solidâ justum et tenacem propositi virum*.

3. By the rules in Direction third, then the order will stand thus. *Ardor civium*, (R. I.) *jubentium*, (R. III.) *prava* (sc. *negotia*, R. I. and II.) Again, *Vultus instantis tyranni*. (R. I. and II.) *non quatit solidâ mente*, (R. VIII. and II.) *virum*, (R. I.) *justum et tenacem*, (R. II.) *propositi*, (R. I.) i. e.

*Ardor civium jubentium prava (negotia), vultus instantis tyranni, non quatit solidâ mente virum justum et tenacem propositi*.

### § 153. ETYMOLOGICAL AND SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

Having arranged and translated a sentence, the next thing is to parse it, in doing which, every word should be fully described by its accidents, traced to its primitive, if a derivative,—analyzed into its parts if compound, and its concord or government pointed out. The following scheme, with each part of speech, may be useful to the beginner.

1. NOUN.—1. kind; 2. Gender; 3. Declension; 4. Decline; 5. Derived from (if derived;) 6. it is found in—Case; 7. Number; 8. is the nominative to (if the nominative) is governed by—(if governed) 9. Rule.

2. ADJECTIVE.—1. Declension; 2. Decline it; 3. compare it (if compared;) 4. It is found in—Case; 5. Number; 6. Gender; 7. agrees with—8. Rule.

3. PRONOUN.—1. kind; (i. e. personal, relative, or adjective,) 2. Decline it; then,

If personal, 3. Person; 4. found in—Case; 5. Number; 6. Reason of the case; 7. Rule; 8. stands for—

If a Relative pronoun, 3. found in—Case; 4. Number; 5. Reason of the case; 6. Rule; 7. Its antecedent; 8. Rule.

If an Adjective pronoun; then, 3. Kind, (i. e. possessive, indefinite, demonstrative, &c.) 4. It is found in—Case; 5. Number; 6. Gender; 7. Agrees with; 8. Rule.

4. VERB.—1. Kind, viz: Transitive, or Intransitive, (or if preferred, Active or Neuter,) 2. Conjugation, (or Irregular, if it is so,) 3. Conjugate it; 4. derived from, (if deriv

ed ;) 5. Compounded of—(if compounded,) 6. It is found in—Tense ; 7. Mood ; 8. Voice ; 9. Person ; 10. Number ; 11. agrees with—as its subject ; 12. Rule ; 13. give a Synopsis.

5. **ADVERB.**—1. Derived from, (if derived,) 2. Compounded of, (if compounded,) 3. Compared, (if compared,) 4. It modifies ;—5. Rule.

6. **PREPOSITION.**—1. Governs—case ; 2. Rule ; 3. It points out the relation between—and—

7. **INTERJECTION.**—1. Kind ; 2. Governs, or is put with the—case ; 3. Rule.

8. **CONJUNCTION.**—1. Kind ;— 2. Connects—3. Rule.

### *Example of Parsing by the foregoing Scheme.*

The first of the above examples may serve as an example of Etymological and Syntactical parsing, and for this purpose we arrange it in the order of translation, as above.

“*Etenim omnes artes, quæ pertinent ad humanitatem habent quoddam commune vinculum, et continentur inter se quasi quâdam cognatione.*”

*Etenim*, conjunction, casual, connecting the following sentence with the preceding, as containing the *cause* or *reason* of what is there stated.

*Omnes*, An adjective, 3d decl. *omnis*, -*is*, -*e*, &c. not compared, because incapable of increase,—in the nom. pl. fem. and agrees with *artes*, (Rule,) “An adjective agrees,” &c.

*Artes*, A noun (or substantive,) fem. 3d (decl.) *ars*,\* *artis*, &c.—in the nom. pl.—the nom. to (or, subject of,) *habent*.

*Quæ*, Rel. pron.—in the nom. pl. fem. nom. to *pertinent* and agrees with its antecedent *artes*, Rule III.

*Pertinent*, Verb, intransitive (or neuter,) 2d (conj.) *pertinẽo*, -*ẽre*, -*ui*, *pertentum* ; compounded of *per*, and *tenẽo*,—in the pres. ind. act. 3d. (pers.) pl. and agrees with *quæ*. Rule IV. “A verb agrees,” &c.

*Ad*, Preposition, governs the acc. shews the relation between *pertinent* and *humanitatem*.

*Humanitatem*, Noun, fem. 3d, *humanitas*,—*atis*, &c. Abstract, derived from *humanus*. § 6.2,2, in the acc. sing.

\*As all nouns are common except proper nouns, to save time in parsing this may always be taken for granted, mentioning, however, when the noun is proper. For the same reason the words, “declension,” “gender,” “number,” “conjugation,” “mood,” “tense,” may be omitted, these being sufficiently indicated by the words *masculine*, *singular*, *indicative*, &c.

governed by *ad.* Rule XLVIII. "Twenty-eight prepositions," &c.

*Habent*, Verb transitive (or active) 2d. *habeo*, -ēre, -ui, -itum,—in the pres. ind. act. 3d pers. pl.—and agrees with *artes*. Rule IV. "A verb agrees," &c. Synopsis.

*Quoddam*, indef. adj. pron. *quidam*, *quædam*, &c. compounded of *quis* and the syllable *dam*.—in the acc. sing. neut. and agrees with *vinculum*. Rule II. "An adjective agrees," &c.

*Vinculum*, noun, neut. 2d. *vinculum*, -i, &c.—In the acc. sing. governed by *habent*. Rule XX. "A tr. verb signifying actively," &c.

*Et*, a conjunction, copulative, connecting *continentur* with *habent*, which are consequently in the same construction, (§ 149. *Exp.*) and have the same nominative *artes*.

*Continentur*, A verb, Trans. (or active) 2d *contineo*, *continēre*, *continui*, *contentum*; compounded of *con* and *teneo*.—in the pres. ind. pass.—3d pers.—pl. and agrees with *artes*. Rule IV. "A verb agrees," &c. Synopsis.

*Inter*, a preposition which governs the accusative, and here points out the relation of reciprocity between the individuals represented by *se*. (§ 28. *Obs.* 5.)

*Se*, Substantive pron. 3d pers.—in the acc. pl. fem. governed by *inter*. Rule XLVIII. "Twenty-eight prepositions," &c. refers to *artes*, the subject of *continentur*, and is here taken reciprocally. § 28. *Obs.* 5.

*Quasi*, An adverb of manner modifying *continentur*. Rule.

*Quoddam*, Indef. adj. pron. *quidam*, *quædam*, &c. compounded of *quis* and the syllable -*dam*—in the ablative sing. fem. and agrees with *cognatione*. Rule II. "An Adjective agrees," &c.

*Cognatione*, A noun, fem. 3d (decl.) *cognatio*, -ōnis, &c. from *cognatus* "related by birth," (from *con* and *nascor*)—in the ablative of manner, relating to *continentur inter se*. Rule.

*Note.*—In this way by stating every thing respecting a word in the shortest possible manner, and without waiting to be questioned, parsing may be done rapidly, and much time saved; and then such questions may be put as will draw attention to any thing not included in the above scheme. By a little attention on the part of the teacher in leading the pupil to understand and apply the preceding rules for arranging a sentence in the order of translation, he will save much time and labor to himself afterwards and accustom the learner to the important lesson of reasoning out a difficult sentence and so by repeated victories to gain confidence in his own powers.

## PART FOURTH.

---

### PROSODY.

PROSODY in its common acceptation, treats of the quantity of syllables in the construction of verses; in other words, of *Quantity* and *Metre*.

---

#### § 154. OF QUANTITY.

QUANTITY means the relative length of time taken up in pronouncing a syllable.

1. In respect of quantity every syllable is either *long* or *short*. When a syllable is sometimes long and sometimes short, it is said to be *common*.

2. The quantity of syllables is determined by certain established rules; or when no rule applies,—by the *authority* of the poets.

3. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special*. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

---

#### § 155. GENERAL RULES.

RULE I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Dĕus, alĭus, nĭhil*.

EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to a vowel before another vowel or diphthong in a different syllable, whether it be in the same, or in a different word. The letter *h* in verse, being considered as only a breathing, is wholly disregarded, hence such words as, *nĭhil, mĭhi, ōhe*, &c. come under this rule. A diphthong before a vowel does not come under this rule, except as in Rule V. *Exc.* 1.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

1. *A* is long in *āēr, Cāi, aulāi, terrāi*, and the like

2. *E* is long after *i* in the genitive and dative of the fifth declension; as, *speciei*; not after *i*, it is common.

*E* is long in *ēheu, Pompēi*.

3. *I* not before *er*, is long in *fio*; as, *fio*, *fiēbam*. Also in *altus* the genitive of *altus*.

*I* is common in *Diana*, and genitives in *ius*; but is short in *altus*. Genitives in *-ius*, in prose, have *i* long.

4. *O* is common in *Ohe*.

5. Greek words vary. As a general rule when the vowel before another represents a long vowel or diphthong in the Greek word, it is long; otherwise it is short.

RULE II. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long by position; as,

*arma*, *fāllo*, *āxis*, *gāza*, *mājor*.

EXPLANATION.—When a final syllable is long by another rule, this rule does not apply; the double consonants under this rule are, the same consonant doubled; as, *ll*, *tt*, *rr*, &c. and the letters *j*, *x* and *z*, equivalent to *dg*, *ks*, *ds*.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

1. A short vowel in the end of a word before two consonants in the next is common; before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*, it is usually long; before a double consonant it is short.

2. A vowel before *j*, is short in compounds of *jugum* as *bijugus*.

RULE III. A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as *volūcris*, or *volūcris*.

EXPLANATION.—Under this rule the vowel must be naturally short, and the mute must come before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. But if the vowel be naturally long it remains so, as *mātris* (from *μήτηρ*) *salūbris*, &c. If the mute and liquid be in different syllables, the vowel preceding is long by position; as, *ābluo*, *ōbruo*. In Latin words the liquids are *l* and *r* only. In Greek words *l*, *r*, *m*, *n*.

Obs. 1. This rule is properly an exception to Rule II. A short vowel in the end of a word is seldom affected by a mute and a liquid in the next.

RULE IV. A contracted syllable is always long; as,

*Nīl*, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *ātius*, for *altius*; *it* for *iit*; *sodes* for *saudes*, *nōlo* for *non volo*; *bigæ*, for *bijugæ*; *scilicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

RULE V. A diphthong is long; as, *Cæsar*, *Aūrum*, *Eūbæa*.

#### EXCEPTIONS

1. *Præ* in composition, before a vowel, is commonly short; as *præire* *præustus*, &c.

2. Also, *æ* is sometimes Short in the end of a word, when the next begins with a vowel; as, *Insulæ Ionio*, &c.

Note.—U, after *q* and *g*, does not form a diphthong with a vowel following it, but has a force similar to the English *u*; as, *lingua* *cueror*, &c. pronounced *lingwa*, *kweror*. § 1. Obs. 2.

## SPECIAL RULES.

## § 156. FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

**RULE VI.** Preterites of two Syllables lengthen the former ; as, *vēni, vīdi, vīci*.

*Exc. 1.* Those which are short by Rule I; as, *rūi, lūi, &c.*

*Exc. 2.* Seven have the first syllable short; viz: *bībi, dēdi, fidī, (from findo,) scīdi, stēti, stīti, and tali*.

**RULE VII.** Preterites which double the first syllable, shorten the first and second ; as, *Cēcīdi, tēlīgi, pēpūli, &c.* from *cado, tango, pello*.

*Exc. Cēcīdi, from cado; and pepēdi, have the second long.*

**RULE VIII.** Supines of two syllables lengthen the former ; as, *Cāsum, mōtum, vīsum, from cādo, mōveo, vīdeo*.

*Exc. Ten have the first syllable short, viz: citum, (from cīto,) dātum, itum, litum,—quītum, rātum rātum, sātum,—stītum, and stātum.*

**RULE IX.** In polysyllables, *a, e, and u,* are long before *-tum,* of the Supine ; as, *Amātum, delētum, indātum*.

**RULE X.** In polysyllables, *i* is short before *tum* of the Supine ; as, *monītum*. *I* is long in *divīsum*.

*Exc. But Supines in itum, from preterites in ivi, have i long ; as, Cupīvi, cupītum, audīvi, audītum, &c.*

*Obs. Recensēo has recensītum, from vī in the preterite, because originally from censio, censīvi. Eo and its compounds have i short ; as, itum, redītum, &c. Except ambio, ambītum, 4th conj.*

**RULE XI.** Participles in *-rus,* have *u* long in the penult ; as, *amatūrus, &c.*

## § 157. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

1. A noun is said to *increase*, when any of its cases has more syllables than the nominative singular ; as, *rex, regis; sermo, sermonis*.

2. With only few exceptions, nouns have but *one increase* in the singular number : *iter, supellex,* and compounds of *caput* in *ps,* have two ; as, *itineris, supellectilis, præcipientis, from præceps*.

3 The increment or increasing syllable, to which the following rules apply, is never the last syllable, but the one preceding it, if there be one increment; or the two preceding it, if there be two. &c.

4. The rules for the increase of nouns, apply to adjectives and participles.

5. Nouns of the *fourth* declension have no increment in the singular; those of the *first* and *fifth*, have none but what come under Rule I. and its exceptions. In the *second* declension, those only increase in the singular which end in *r*, according to the following,

**RULE.** The increment of the second declension is short; as,  
*Puëri, viri, satùri*, &c. from *puer, vir, satur*.

*Exc.* But *Iber* and *Celtiber*, have *Ibëri* and *Celtibëri*.

#### INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**RULE. XII.** Increments of the third declension in *a* and *o* are long; *e, i,* and *u*, short; as,

*Pietätis, honoris, muliëris, laetitidis, marmäris.*

#### *Rules with Exceptions*

##### A.

1. Increments in *a*, of the third declension, are long.

*Exc.* 1st. The increment in *a*, from Masculines in *al* and *ar* is short, also from *par*, and its compounds;—from *anas, mas, vas, (vädis) baccar, hepar, jubar, lar, nectar, and sal*.

*Exc.* 2d. The increment in *a*, from nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, is short; as, *Arabs, Sräbis*.

*Exc.* 3d. The increment in *a*, from Greek nouns in *-a, -ätis*; and *as, -ädis*, is short; as, *poëma, poemätis; lampas, lampädis*.

*Exc.* 4th. Also the following in *ax*, viz: *abax, anthrax, Atax, Atrax, climax, colax, corax, dropax, fax, harpax, parax, phylax, smilax, and styrax*, increase with *ä* short.

##### O.

2. Increments in *o*, of the third declension are long.

*Exc.* 1st. The increment in *o*, from neuter nouns is short; as, *marmor, marmöris; corpus, corpöris*. But *os, öris*, and neuter comparatives increase in *ö* long, *Ador* has *addöris*, or *addöris*.

*Exc.* 2d. The increment in *o*, from nouns in *s* with a consonant before it is short; as, *scrobs, scröbis; inops, inöpis*. But *Cercops, Cyclops, and Hydrops*, have *ö* short.

*Exc.* 3d. Generally from Gentile and Greek nouns in *o*, and *on*, the increment is short; as, *Macedo, Macedönis*: but some are long, and some are common.



**Exc. 4.** Greek nouns in *tor*, shorten the increment; as, *Hector—ōris*,

**Exc. 5.** Greek nouns in *pus*, (πῶς); as, *tripus*, *Polypus*; also, *arbor*, *memor*, *bos*, *compos*, *impos*, and *lepus*, have *ō* short in the increment.

### E.

3. Increments in *e*, of the third declension, are short.

**Exc. 1st.** The increment in *-ēnis* from *en* and *o* is long; as, *Siren*, *Sirēnis*; *Anio*, *Aniēnis*.

**Exc. 2d.** The increment in *e* is long from *hæres*, *locuples*, *mansues*, *merces*, and *quies*. Also from *Iber* and *ver*—from *lex*, *rex* and *vervex*—*plebs*, *seps*, and *hælec*.

**Exc. 3d.** Greek nouns in *er* and *es* increase *e* long; as, *Crater*, *cræteris*; *magnes*, *magnētis*.

### I.

4. Increments in *i*, of the third declension are short.

**Exc. 1st.** Verbals in *trix*, and adjectives in *ix* have *i* long; as, *victrix*, *victricis*; *felix*, *felicis*.

Also *cervix*, *cicatrix*, *cornix*, *coturnix*, *lodix*, *matrix*, *perdix*, *phænix*, *radix*, and *vibex*.

**Exc. 2d.** Greek nouns in *is* and *in*, with the genitive in *-inis*, increase long; as, *Salamis*, *Salaminis*.

**Exc. 3d.** *Dis*, *glis*, and *lis*, with *Nesis*, *Quiris*, and *Samnis*, increase long.

### U.

5. Increments in *u*, of the third declension, are short.

**Exc. 1st.** Genitives in *udis*, *uris*, and *utis*, from nominatives in *us*, have the increase long; as, *palus*, *palūdis*, &c. But *Ligus*, *intercus*, and *pecus*, increase with *u* short.

**Exc. 2d.** *Fur*, *frux*, *lux*, and *Pollux*, have *u* long.

### Y.

6. Increments in *y* are short.

**Exc.** Greek nouns with the genitive in *ynis*, have the increase long. Also *Bombyx*, *Ceyx*, and *gryps*, which increase long.

## INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

A noun in the plural number, is said to increase when it has more syllables in any case, than in the nominative plural.

An increment in the plural, can occur only in the genitive dative, and ablative, and in these, it is the syllable next to the last. When any of these cases has no more syllables than the nominative, it has

no plural increment. Thus, *Sermōnum*, *puëris*, *capitum*, have no plural increase, because they have no more syllables than *sermōnes*, *puëri*, *capita*; still, they all have the increment of the singular, because they have more syllables than *sermo*, *puer*, and *caput*. But *sermōnibus*, *puerōrum*, and *capitibus*, have both the singular and plural increment.

**ROLE XIII.** Plural increments in *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long—in *i*, and *u*, short; as,

*Musārum*, *rērum*, *virōrum*, *partibus*, *lacubus*.  
from *Musæ*, *res*, *viri*, *partes*, *lacus*.

**EXPLANATION.**—All the increments of the singular remain in the plural, and to these the plural increment is added. The rule here given applies to the plural increments only, and not to the increments of the singular in the plural. Thus, in *itinēribus* from *ite*, the second and third syllables are increments of the singular, *ti* be found in *itinēris*; the fourth is the plural increment, which comes under this rule.

## § 158. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase when it has more syllables in any part, than in the second person singular, of the present indicative, active voice; as, *amas*, *amatis*, *amabatis*, &c.—A verb in the active voice may have three increments, and in the passive four. If there is but one increment, it is the syllable next the last. If there is two, the second increment is the syllable next the last, and the first the syllable preceding that, &c. thus.

1                      1 2                      1 2 3  
a-mas,—am-ā-mus,—am-ā-bā-mus,—am-ā-v-ēr-ā-mus, &c

The increments of deponent verbs, are determined in the same manner as if they had an active form.

**ROLE XIV.** In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i*, and *u* short; as,

*Amārēmus*, *amātōte*; *legimus*, *possumus*.

### Exceptions in A.

1. The first increment of *do* is short; as, *dāmus*, *dābāmus*, *dārēmus*, &c

### Exceptions in E.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim* and *ro*.

But when contracted by syncope it is long; as, *stetram* for *stet-ram*

3. In the third conjugation *e* is short before *r* in the first increase of the present and imperfect; as,

*Legère, legèrem, Act. legèrèris, legèrère, legère, Pass.*

4. In the first and second conjugation *e* is short in—*bèris* and—*bère*.

*Note*—*erunt* and *-ere* in the perfect come under the general rule; sometimes they are shortened. § 166. 5.

### *Exceptions in I.*

5. In preterite tenses *i* is long before *v*; as,

*Audivi, audiveram, audiverim, &c.*

6. In the first increase of the fourth conjugation, except *-imus* of the perfect, *i* not before a vowel is always long; as,

Pres. *venimus*; Perf. *ventimus*. So, also, *ibam*, and *ibo*, from *eo*.

7. *I* is long in *sīmus, sītis, velīmus, velītis*; and their compounds; as, *possīmus, nolīmus, &c.*

8. In *rimus*, and *ritis* of the Future perfect indicative and perfect subjunctive, *i* is common; as,

*Dixērimus, or dixērīmus; viderītis, or viderītis.*

*Note*.—*U* long before *tum* of the supine comes under Rule VIII. and IX. It is also long in the penult of the perfect participle by the same rules as the perfect participle is always derived from the supine.

## § 159. QUANTITY OF PENULT SYLLABLES.

For the quantity of penult syllables no definite rule can be given which is not rendered nearly useless by the number of exceptions occurring under it. The following observations are usually given rather as a general guide, than certain rules, and they might be easily extended were it of any practical advantage.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as,

*Priamides, Atlantiādes, &c.* Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelides, Tydides, &c.*

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE*, and *ONE* commonly lengthen the penult; as,

*Achāis, Ptolemāis, Chryētis, Ænēis, Memphītis, Latōis, Icarīōtus*

*Nerine, Acrisïone.* Except *Thebæis*, and *Phocæis* short; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as,

*Ægyptiæcus, academicus, lepidus, legitimus*: also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opæcus, amicus, apricus, pudicus, mendicus, asticus, posticus, fidus, infidus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short,) *bimus, quadrinus, patrimus, matrimus, opimus*; and the two superlatives, *imus*, and *primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as,

*Dotælis, urbænus, avârus, æstivus, decôrur, arenôsus.* Except *barbârus, opipârus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agîlis, facîlis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as.

*Anîlis, civîlis, herîlis*, &c. To these add, *exîlis, subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprîlis, Quinctîlis, Sextîlis*: Except *humîlis, partîlis*; and also *simîlis*. But all adjectives in *atîlis* are short; as, *versatîlis, volatîlis, umbratîlis, plicatîlis, fluviatîlis; saxatîlis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS*, derived from words denoting inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as,

*Amaractinus, crocinus, cedrinus, faginus, olenginus; adamantinus, crystallinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus. cartnus. annotinus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as,

*Agninus, caninus, leporinus binus, trinus quînus, austrinus, clan destinus, Latinus, marinus, supînus, vespertinus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM*; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as,

*Urceûlus, flûbula, muscûlum; lectûlus, ratiuncûla, corcûlum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as,

*Oppidâtîm, virîtîm, tributîm.* Except *affâtîm, perpêtîm, and stâtîm*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenult, which in the second and third person is the penult; as,

*Esûrio, esûris, esurît.* But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable: as, *ligûrio. ligûris; scatûrio, scatûris*, &c.

## PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

*The following proper names lengthen the penult:* Abdēra, Abydus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahala, Alaricus, Alcides, Amyclæ, Andronicus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristides, Aristobūlus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busiris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darici, Demonicus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphyle, Eubūlus, Euclides, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Euripus, Euxinus, Garganus, Gætūlus, Granicus; Heliogabūlus, Henricus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippōnax. Hispānus; Irēne; Lacydas, Latōna, Leucata, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximinus, Meleager, Messāla, Messāna, Milētus; Nasica, Nicinor, Nicētas; Pachynus, Pandōra, Pelōris & -us, Pharsālus, Phœnice, Polites, Polyclētus, Polynices, Priāpus, Sardanapālus, Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonice, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Thessalonica; Verōna, Veronica.

*The following are short:* Amāthus, Amphipōlis, Anabāsis, Anticyra, Antigōnus, & -ne, Antilōchus, Antiōchus, Antiōpa, Antipas, Antipāter, Antiphānes, Antiphātes, Antiphila, Antiphon, Anytus, Apūlus, Areopāgus, Ariminum, Armēnus, Athēsis, Attālus, Attica; Bitūrix, Bructēri; Calāber, Callicrātes, Callistrātus, Candāce, Cantāber, Carneādes, Cherilus, Chrysostōmus, Cleombrōtus, Cleomēnes, Corycos, Constantinōpolis, Cratērus, Cratylus, Cremēra, Crustumēri, Cybēle, Cyclādes, Cyzicus; Dalmātæ, Damōcles, Dardānus, Dejoces, Dejotārus, Democritus, Demīpho, Didymus, Diogēnes, Drepanum, Dumnōrix; Empedocles, Ephēsus, Evergētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripylus; Fucinus; Geryōnes, Gyārus; Hecyra, Helipōlis, Hermiōne, Herodōtus, Hesiodus, Hesiōne, Hippocrātes, Hippotāmos, Hypāta, Hypānis; Icārus, Icētas, Illyris, Iphitus, Ismārus, Ithāca; Laodice, Laomēdon, Lampsācus, Lamyris, Lapithæ, Lucretilis, Libānus, Lipāre or -a, Lysimāchus, Longimānus; Marāthon, Mænālus, Marmārica, Massagētæ, Matrōna, Megāra, Melitus & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutina, Micōnus; Neōcles, Neritos, Noricum; Omphale; Patāra, Pegāsus, Pharnāces, Pisiestrātus, Polydāmus; Polyxēna, Porsēna or Porsenna, Praxitēles, Puteoli, Pylādes, Pythagōras; Sarmātæ, Sarsina, Semōle, Semirāmis, Sequāni & -a, Sisyphus, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācus, Sporādes, Strongyle, Stymphālus, Sybāris; Taygētus, Telegōnus, Telemāchus, Tenēdos, Tarrāco, Theophānes, Theophilus, Tomyris; Urbicus; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xencrātes; Zoilus, Zopyrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi*. Lucan. *Batāvi*. Juv. & Mart. *Fortuitus*. Hor. *Fortuitas*. Martial. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables, but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*. Stat. *Patrimus, matrimus, prestolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

## § 160. FINAL SYLLABLES.

*A final.*

**Rule XV.** *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musă, templă*, &c.

*Exc. 1.* The ablative of the first declension is long ; as, *Musâ*, &c.

*Exc. 2.* The vocative of Greek nouns in *as* is long ; as, *O Ænêâ*, *O Pallâ*.

**RULE XVI.** *A* in the end of a word not declined 'ry cases is long ; as, *Amâ*, *frustrâ*, *ergâ*, *intrâ*, &c.

*Exc. Itâ*, *quiâ*, *ejâ*, *postêâ*, *putâ*. (adv.) are short ; Sometimes also the prepositions *contrâ*, and *ultrâ* ; and the comparands of *-ginta* as *trigintâ*, &c. But *contrâ* and *ultrâ*, as adverbs, are always long.

### *E final.*

**RULE XVII.** *E* in the end of a word is short ; as. *Natě*, *sedělě*, *ipsě*, *possě*, *nempě*, *antě*.

### *Special Rules and Exceptions.*

**RULE 1.** Monosyllables in *e* are long ; as, *mě*, *tě*, *sě*.

*Exc.* The enclitics *quě*, *vě*, *ně*, are short ; also *ptě*, *cě*, *tě*.

**RULE 2.** Nouns of the first and fifth declension have final *e* long ; as, *Calliöpě*, *Anchisě*, *diě*, &c.

Also Greek neuter plurals ; as, *Cetě*, *melě*, *Tempě*, &c.

**RULE 3.** Verbs of the second conjugation have *e* long in the second person singular of the imperative active ; as, *Docě*, *maně*, &c. But *cave*, *vale*, and *vide* are sometimes short.

**RULE 4.** Adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declension have final *e* long ; as, *placidě*, *pulchrě*, *valdě*. (contracted for *validě*.) So also *fermě*, *ferě*, and *ohě*.

*Exc.* But *beně*, *malě*, *inferně*, and *superně* are short.

### *I final.*

**RULE XVIII.** *I* final is long ; as, *domĭnĭ*, *filĭ*, &c.

*Exc. 1.* *I* final is common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi* ; also in *ibi*, *ubi*, *nisi*, *quasi*. Sometimes *uti* and *cui* as a dissyllable have *i* short. *Sicuti*, *sicubi*, and *necubi* are always short.

*Exc. 2.* *I* final is short in Greek vocatives and datives ; as, *Alexi*, *Daphni* ; *Palladi*, *Troasti*, and *Troastn*.

### *O final*

**RULE XIX.** *O* final is common ; as, *Virgo*, *amo*, *quando*.

*Exc. 1.* Monosyllables in *o* are long ; as, *O*, *dō*, *stō*, *prō*.

**Exc. 2.** The dative and ablative in *o* are long; as, *librō dominō*. Also Greek nouns in *o*; as, *Didō, Sapphō*.

**Exc. 3.** Ablatives used as adverbs have *o* long; as, *certō, falsō, paulō; quō, eō*, and their compounds; *illō, idcirco, citrō, retrō, ultrō, ergō*, (for the sake of.)

**Exc. 4.** *Egō, sciō*, the defective verb *cedō*; also *homō, citō, illicō. immō, duō, ambō, modō*, and its compounds *quomōdō, dummodō, postmodō*, are almost always short.

**Exc. 5.** The gerund in *o* is long in Virgil, in other poets mostly short.

U and Y, *final*.

**RULE XX.** U final is long; Y final is short, as *vultū, Moly*.

B, D, I, M, R, T, *final*,

**RULE XXI.** B, D, L, R and T, in the end of a word are short; as, *āb, apūd, semēl, consūl, patēr, capūt*.

**EXPLANATION.**—This rule does not apply, if any of these final letters are preceded by a diphthong, or if the syllable is contracted, or made long by position; as, *aut, abūt* for *abiūt, amānt*

**Exc. 1.** *Sāl, sōl, and nūl* are long.

**Exc. 2.** *Āer, & æthēr*, are long. Also nouns in *er* which have *-ēris* in the genitive; as, *Crater, Iber, &c.*

**Exc. 3.** *Far, lar, Nar, par, cur, and fur*, are long.

**Exc. 4.** The Hebrew names *Jōb, Daniēl*, are long; but *David* and *Bogud* are common.

**Obs.** *M* final anciently made the preceding vowel short, as *Militām octo*. By later poets it is usually cut off, by *Echthipsis*, (§ 166. 2.) when the next word begins with a vowel. When not so cut off, it is short.

C, N, *final*.

**RULE XXII.** C and N in the end of a word are long; as, *āc, sīc, illūc, ēn, nōn, &c.*

**Exc. 1.** *Nēc* and *donēc* are short; *hic* and *fac*, common.

**Exc. 2.** *Forsitān, ĩn, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*, are short.

**Exc. 3.** *En* having *-inis* in the genitive is short; as, *carmēn, carminis*. Also Greek nouns in *an, on, in, yn*, originally short, and the dative plural in *sin* have the final syllable short; as, *Īiōn, Eretion, Maiān, Alexin, chelyn Troastn, &c.*

As, Es, Os, *final*.

**RULE XXIII.** *As, Es, Os*, in the end of a word are long; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs*

**Exc. 1.** *As* is short in *ands* and Greek nouns which have *-ads* or *-ados* in the genitive ; as, *Arcās, lampās, &c.*

**Exc. 2.** *Es* is short, 1st in nouns and adjectives which increase short in the genitive ; as, *hospēs, limēs, hebēs.* But *Cerēs, parietis, arietis, abietis,* and *pēs,* with its compounds are long. 2d. *Es* from *sum,* and *penēs* are short. 3d. Greek neuters in *es,* and nominatives and vocatives of the third declension which increase in the genitive otherwise than in *eos,* have *es* short ; as, *Arcadēs, Troēs, &c.*

**Exc. 3.** *Os* is short in *compōs, impōs, ōs, (ossis),*—in Greek words of the second declension, and in neuters and genitives of the third ; as, *Ilīōs, Tyrōs, chaōs, epōs, Palladōs, &c.*

### Is, Us, Ys, final.

**RULE XXIV.** *Is, us* and *ys,* in the end of a word are short ; as, *Turrīs, legīs, legitimūs, Capys.*

**Exc. 1.** Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long ; but the dative and ablative in *bus* are short.

**Exc. 2.** Nouns in *is* with the genitive in *itis, inis,* or *entis* are long ; as *Samnis, Salamis, Simois.*

**Exc. 3.** *Is* is long in *glis, vis, gratis, foris.* And in the second Pers. Sing. Pres. Ind. Active of the fourth conjugation as *audis.* Also in *fis, is, sis, vis, velis,* and their compounds *possis, quamvis, malis, nolis, &c.*

**Exc. 4.** Monosyllables in *-us* are long ; as, *grus, sus, &c.*

Also those which have *uris, udis, utis, untis,* or *ōdis,* in the genitive ; as, *tellus, incus, virtus, Amathus, triptus.* To these add Greek genitives in *us* ; as, *Didus, Sapphus, &c.*

**Exc. 5.** *Tethys* is sometimes long, likewise nouns in *ys,* which have also *yn* in the nominative ; as, *Phorcys* or *Phorcyn.*

## § 161 QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.

**RULE XXV.** Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives ; as,

Amicus,	from āmo.	Decōro,	from decus, -ōris.
Auctiōnor,	auctio, -ōnis.	Exūlo,	exul, -ōlis.
Auctōro,	auctor, -ōris.	Pāvidus	pāveo,
Audtor,	audtum.	Quirito,	Quiris, -itis.
Auspīcor,	auspex, -icis.	Radicitus,	radix, -icis.
Caupōnor,	caupo, -ōnis.	Sospīto,	sospes, -itis.
Compētitor,	compētūtum.	Nātūra,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornix, -icis.	Māternus,	māter.
Custōdio,	custos, -ōdis.	Lēgēbam, &c.	lēgo.
Decōrus,	decor, -ōris.	Lēgēram, &c.	lēgi.



## EXCEPTIONS

## 1. Long from Short.

Dēni, from dēcem.	Suspicio, from suspicor.	Mōbilis, from mōveo.
Fōmes, fōveo.	Sēdes, sēdeo.	Hūmor, hūmus.
Hūmānus, hōmo.	Sēcūs, sēcus.	Jūmentum, jūvo.
Rēgāla, rēgo.	Pēnūria, pēnus.	Vox, vōcis, vōco, &c

## 2. Short from Long.

Arēna and ārista, from āreo.	Lūcerna, from lūceo.
Nōta and nōto, nōtus.	Dux, -ūcis, dūco.
Vādum, vādo.	Stābilis, stābam.
Fides, fido.	Dītio, dis, dītis,
Sōpor, sōpio.	Quāsillus, qualus, &c

EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to all those parts of the verb derived or formed from the primary parts, § 51, and 52, i. e. the quantity of the primary part remains in all the parts formed from it.

**RULE XXVI.** Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

*Addmo*, from *ad* and *āmo*; *dēduco*, from *dē* and *dūco*.

*Obs.* 1. The change of a vowel or diphthong, in forming the compound, does not alter its quantity; as, *cādo*, *concido*; *cædo*, *concido*; *claudo*, *reclūdo*; *æquus*, *iniquus*, &c.

*Obs.* 2. When a short syllable in the first part of the compound ends with a consonant, it becomes long by position when joined to another word beginning with a consonant; as, *pērmāneo* from *pēr* and *maneo*; but if the second word begin with a vowel, the first retains its quantity; as, *nērāmbulo*, from *pēr* and *āmbulo*.

*Obs.* 3. When the second part of a compound word begins with a vowel, the vowel ending the first part is short by Rule I. When it begins with two consonants or a double consonant, the vowel preceding is long by Rule II. But if it begins with a simple consonant followed by a vowel or diphthong, the vowel preceding is sometimes long, and sometimes short by the following

*Special Rules for the first part of a compound, ending with a vowel.*

**Rule 1.** The first part of a compound, if a preposition of one syllable, has the final vowel long; as, *dēcīdo*, *prōtēndo*.

*Exc.* 1. *Pro* is short in *prōcella*, *prōfanus*, *prōfari*, *prōfecto*, *prōfestus*, *prōfiscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōfundus*, *prōnepos*, *prōneptis*, *prōpero*, and *prōtervus*. It is common in *procūro*, *profundo*, *propāgo*, *propello*, *propino*, *propulso*.

*Exc. 2.* The Greek *pro* (before,) is always short; as, *prōphēta*, *prōlogus*.

*Note.*—The final vowel of a preposition of more than one syllable, retains its own quantity; as, *contrādictio*, *antēcedo*.

*Rule 2.* The inseparable prepositions *se* and *di* are long; *re* short; as, *Sēpono*, *dīvello*, *rēpello*.

*Exc. 3.* *Di* is short in *dīrimo* and *dīsertus*. *Re* is long in *rēfert*.

*Rule 3.* The first part of a compound, not a preposition, has final *a* long; *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y* short; as,

*Mālo*, *nēfas*, *biceps*, *philōsophus*, *dūcenti*, *Polydōrus*.

*Exc. 1.* *A*. In *quāsi*, *eādem*, not in the ablative, and in some Greek compounds, *a* is short.

*Exc. 2.* *E*. The *e* is long in *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquando*, *nēquaquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquis*, *nēquilia*; *mēmet*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *vēcors*, *vēsanus*, *venēficus*. Also in words compounded with *se* for *sex*, or *semi*; as, *sēdecim*, *sēmentis*, &c. *E* is common in some compounds of *facio*; as, *liquefacio*, *patefacio*, *rarefacio*, &c.

*Exc. 3.* *I*. When the first part of a compound is declined, *i* is long; as, *quidam*, *quilibet*, *reipublica*, &c. or when the first can be separated from the last, and yet both retain their form and meaning; as, *ludi-magister*, *lucrifacio*, *si-quis*, *agri-cultura*, &c.

*I* is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *biga*, *scilicet*, *bitus*. &c. for *bijuga*, *scire licet*, *bis annus*, or *biennius*. It is also long in *idem*, (masculine) *ubique*, *utroque*, *ibidem*, *nimirum*, and the compounds of *dies*, such as, *biduum*, *pridie*; *meridies*, &c. In *ubicunque* and *ubivis*, it is common.

*Exc. 4.* *O*. *Contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando*, in compounds have the final *o* long; as, *contrōversia*, *intrōduco*, *retrocedo*, *quandōque*, (except *quandōquidem*.)

*O* is long in compounds of *quo*; as, *quōmodo*, *quōcunque*, *quōminus*, *quōcirca*, *quōvis*, *quōque*, (from *quisque*;) but in *quōque*, the conjunction, it is short.

*Exc. 5.* *U*. *Jūpiter*, *jūdex*, and *jūdicium* have *u* long; also *usūcapio*, and *usūvenio*, being capable of separation as in *Exc. 3*.

**RULE XXVII.** The last syllable of every verse is common.

**EXPLANATION.**—This means that a short syllable at the end of a line, if the verse requires it, is considered long; and a long syllable, if the verse requires it, is considered short.

**N. B.** A syllable which does not come under any of the preceding rules, is said to be long, or short, by "authority," viz: of the poets.

## § 162. VERSIFICATION.

A verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule. The parts into which a verse is divided are called *Feet*.

## OF FEET.

A foot in metre, is composed of two or more syllables, strictly regulated by time, and is either simple or compound. The simple feet are twelve in number, of which four consist of two, and eight of three syllables. There are sixteen compound feet, each of four syllables. These varieties are as follows:

*Simple feet of two Syllables.*

Pyrrhic	— —	as Dēūs.
Spondee	— —	as sūndūnt.
Iambus	— —	as ērant.
Trochee	— —	as ārmā.

*Simple feet of three Syllables.*

Tribrach	— — —	as fācērē.
Molossus	— — —	as cōntēndūnt.
Dactyl	— — —	as cōrpōrā.
Anapæst	— — —	as dōmīnī,
Bacchius	— — —	as dōlōrēs.
Antibacchius	— — —	as Rōmānōs.
Amphibrach	— — —	as hōnōrē.
Amphimacer	— — —	as chārītās.

*Compound feet of four Syllables.*

Choriambus	— — — —	pōnūficēs	Trochee and Iambus.
Antispastus	— — — —	āmābātū	Iambus and Trochee
Ionic a majore	— — — —	cālcāribūs	Spondee and Pyrrhic.
Ionic a minore	— — — —	prōpērābānt	Pyrrhic and Spondee.
First Pæon	— — — —	tēmpōribūs	Trochee and Pyrrhic.
Second Pæon	— — — —	pōtēntiā	Iambus and Pyrrhic.
Third Pæon	— — — —	ānimātū	Pyrrhic and Trochee.
Fourth Pæon	— — — —	cōlērītās	Pyrrhic and Iambus.
First Epitrite	— — — —	vōlūptātēs	Iambus and Spondee.
Second Epitrite	— — — —	cōndītōrēs	Trochee and Spondee
Third Epitrite	— — — —	discōrdiās	Spondee and Iambus.
Fourth Epitrite	— — — —	addūxistis	Spondee and Trochee
Proceleusmaticus	— — — —	hōmīnībūs	Two Pyrrhics.
Dispondee	— — — —	ōrātōrēs	Two Spondees.
Diambus	— — — —	āmāvērānt	Two Iambi.
Ditrochee	— — — —	Cāntilēnā	Two Trochees

# ISOCHRONOUS FEET.

1. In every foot, a long syllable is equal in time to two short ones. To constitute feet Isochronous, two things are necessary. 1st. That they have the same time; 2d. that they be interchangeable in metre.

2. Feet have the same time which are measured by an equal number of short syllables; thus, the Spondee, Dactyl, Anapæst, and Proceleusmaticus, have the same time, each being equal to four short syllables.

3. Feet are interchangeable in metre, when the *ictus* or stress of the voice falls, or may fall, on the same portion of the foot. The part of the foot that receives the ictus, is called *arsis*, or elevation, the rest of the foot is termed *thesis*, or depression.

4. The natural place of the arsis, is the long syllable of the foot. Hence, in the Iambus, it falls on the second syllable, and in the Trochee, on the first. Its place in the Spondee and Tribrach cannot be determined by the feet themselves, each syllable being of the same length.

5. In all kinds of verse, the fundamental foot determines the place of the *arsis* for the other feet admitted into it, thus: In Dactylic verse, and Trochaic verse, the Spondee will have the arsis on the first syllable;—in Anapæstic, and Iambic, on the last. In Trochaic verse, the tribrach will have the arsis on the first syllable,  $\cup \cup \cup$ , in Iambic on the second,  $\cup \cup \cup$

6. Those feet, then, according to the ancients, were called *isochronous*, which were capable of being divided into parts that were equal in time, so that a short syllable should correspond to a short; and a long, to a long, or to two short; thus: in Iambic and Trochaic verse,

Iambus	$\cup \mid \angle$	Trochee	$\angle \mid \cup$
Tribrach	$\cup \mid \cup \cup$	Tribrach	$\angle \mid \cup \cup$
In Dactylic and Anapæstic; thus,			
Dactyl	$\angle \mid \cup \cup$	Anapæst	$\cup \cup \mid \angle$
Spondee	$\angle \mid -$	Spondee	$- \mid \angle$

But feet which cannot be divided in this manner, are not *isochronous*, though they have the same time; thus, the *Iambus* and *Trochee*, though equal in time, cannot be divided so as to have the corresponding parts of equal length. Thus,

Iambus,	$\cup \mid \angle$
Trochee,	$\angle \mid \cup$

Hence these feet are not interchangeable, or isochronous; and for this reason a Trochee is never admitted into Iambic verse nor an Iambus into Trochaic. The same is true of the Spondee, (— —) and Amphibrach, (— — —) and of the Amphibrach with the Dactyl or Anapæst.

### § 163. OF METRE.

1. *Metre*, in its *general sense*, means an arrangement of syllables and feet in verse, according to certain rules; and in this sense applies, not only to an entire verse, but to part of a verse, or to any number of verses. A *metre*, in a *specific sense*, means a combination of two feet (sometimes called a *syzygy*) and sometimes one foot only.

The distinction between rhythm and metre is this:—the former refers to the *time* only, in regard to which, two short syllables are equivalent to one long; the latter refers both to the *time* and the *order* of the syllables. The rhythm of an anapæst and dactyl is the same; the metre different. The term rhythm, is also understood in a more comprehensive sense, and is applied to the harmonious construction and enunciation of feet and words in connection; thus, a line has rhythm when it contains *any number* of metres of *equal time*, without regard to their order. Metre requires a *certain* number of metres, and these arranged in a *certain order*. Thus, in this line,

Panditur interea domus omnipotentis Olympi,

there is both *rhythm* (as it contains six metres of equal value in respect of time) and *metre*, as these metres are arranged according to the canon for Hexameter heroic verse, which requires a dactyl in the 5th, and a spondee in the 6th place. Change the order thus,

Omnipotentis Olympi panditur interea domus,

and the rhythm remains as perfect as before, but the metre is destroyed; it is no longer a Hexameter heroic line.

2. The principal metres used in Latin poetry are six; namely, 1. Iambic. 2. Trochaic. 3. Anapæstic. 4. Dactylic. 5. Choriambic. 6. Ionic. These are so called from the foot which prevails in them.

These different kinds of verse in certain varieties are also designated by the names of certain poets, who either invented them, or made special use of them in their writings. Thus, we have Asclepiadic, Glyconian, Alcaic, Sapphic, Pherecratian, &c. from Asclepiades, Glycon, Alcæus, Sappho; Pherecrates, &c.

3. In Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapæstic verse, a metre consists of two feet, (sometimes called a *dipodia* or *syzygy*), in the other kinds of one foot.

4. A verse consisting of one metre is called *Monometer*; of two metres, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*; of seven, *Heptameter*; &c. Hence, in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapæstic verse, a monometer will contain

two feet : a dimeter, *four* ; a trimeter, *six* ; &c. in the other kinds of verse, a monometer contains *one* foot, a dimeter, *two*, a trimeter, *three*, &c.

5. A verse or line of any metre may be complete, having precisely the number of feet or syllables that the canon requires ; or, it may be deficient ; or, it may be redundant. To express this, a verse is variously characterized as follows ; viz.

1. *Acatalectic*, when complete.

2. *Catalectic*, if wanting one syllable.

3. *Brachycatalectic*, if wanting two syllables or a foot.

4. *Hypercatalectic*, or *hypermeter*, when it has one or two syllables more than the verse requires.

5. *Acephalous*, when a syllable is wanting at the beginning of the line.

6. *Asynartete*, when different measures are conjoined in one line.

Hence, in order fully to describe any verse, three terms are employed ; the first expressing the kind of verse ; the second, the number of metres ; and the third the character of the line ; thus,

Nōn vūl. | tūs in- || stāntis | tyrān- || nī |

is described ; as, *Iambic, dimeter, hypercatalectic*.

6. Verses or parts of verses are farther designated by a term expressive of the number of feet, or parts of feet, which they contain. Thus, a line or part of a line containing

three half feet is called *trimimer*,  
five half feet, " *penthemimer*,  
seven half feet, " *hephthemimer*.

These are of use to point out the place of

### THE CÆSURAL PAUSE.

7. *Cæsura* in metre is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

It is of three kinds, 1. Of the *foot* : 2. of the *rhythm* : 3. of the *verse*.

1st. *Cæsura* of the *foot* occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed ; as in the second, third, fourth and fifth feet of the following line ;

Silvēs- | trēm tēnū- | ī Mū- | sām mēdi- | tāriš ā- | vēnā

2d. *Cæsura* of the *rhythm* is the separation of the *arsis* from the *thesis* by the ending of a word, as in the second, third and fourth feet of the preceding line.

This has sometimes the effect of making a final short syllable long, by the force of the ictus ; as,

Pētōri | būs inhl- | āns spī- | rāntiā | cōnsūlit | ōxtā.

*Note*.—This effect is not produced by the *Cæsura* of the foot, nor of the verse, unless they happen to coincide with the *cæsura* of the rhythm.

3d. The *Cæsura* of the *verse* is such a division of the line into two parts, as affords to the voice a pause or rest, at a proper or fixed place without injuring the sense, by pausing in the middle of a word

8. The proper management of this pause is a great beauty in certain kinds of verse, and shews the skill of the poet. In pentameter verse, its place is fixed; in hexameter and other metres it is left to the poet. When it occurs at the end of the third half foot, it is called *trimimeris*;—of the fifth, *penthemimeris*;—of the seventh, *hepthemimeris*.

9. The situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place*.

## § 164. DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

The canons, or rules of the different kinds of metre used in Latin poetry are the following;

### I. IAMBIC METRE.

1. A pure iambic line consists of iambic feet only; as,

Phāsē | hūs il- || lē quēm | vidē- || tīs hōs- | pītēs. ||

where the single line marks the end of the foot; the double line, the end of the metre; and the Italic syllable, the cæsural pause.

2. A mixed iambic line admits a spondee into the first, third, and fifth places; and again in all these a dactyl or an anapæst is sometimes admitted for a spondee, and a tribrach for the iambus.

3. This verse occurs in all varieties of length from the dimeter catalectic to the tetrameter.

4. The cæsura commonly takes place at the fifth half foot.

5. Different varieties of this metre are denominated as follows;

1st. *Senarian*, or Trim. acatalectic, used in tragedy and comedy.

2d. *Archilochian*, or Trimeter catalectic.

3d. *Archilochian*, or Dimeter hypermeter.

4th. *Anacreontic*, or Dimeter catalectic.

5th. *Galliambus*, or Dimeter catalectic, double; i. e. two verses in one line.

6th. *Hipponactic*, or Tetrameter catalectic.

7th. *Choliambus*, or Trimeter Acatalectic. This is called also, *Scazon* and *Hipponactic trimeter*, and has a spondee in the sixth place, and generally an iambus in the fifth.

8th. *Octonarius*, or Tetrameter acatalectic, called also *quadratus*.

9th. *Accephalous*, or Dimeter, wanting the first syllable of the first foot. This may be resolved into Trochaic dimeter catalectic.

## II. TROCHAIC METRE.

1. A pure trochaic line consists of trochees only. These, however, are but seldom used. An Acephalous trochaic becomes an iambic line; and an Acephalous iambic becomes a trochaic line.

2. A mixed trochaic line admits a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleusmatic in even places, i. e. in the 2d, 4th, 6th, &c. But in the odd places a trochee, or a tribach, and in the last place, a trochee only.

3. This verse may be used in all varieties from the Monometer hypercatalectic, (two trochees and one syllable,) to the tetrameter or octonarius catalectic. The varieties most used by the Latin poets, are

1st. The *Trochaic tetrameter catalectic*, rarely pure:

2d. The *Sapphic*, consisting of five feet, viz. a trochee, a spondee, a dactyl, and two trochees. It has the cæsural pause after the fifth half foot; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ || scōlē- | rīsquē | pūrūs. Hor.

3d. The *Phalæcian* or *Phaleucian* consisting of five feet; viz. a spondee, a dactyl and three trochees; thus,

Nōn ēst | vīvērō | sēd vā | lērō | vītā. Mart.

This verse neither requires nor rejects a cæsura.

4th. The *Trochaic dimeter catalectic* or *Acephalous iambic dimeter*. See I. 9th.

5th. Other varieties but seldom used; are, 1. the *Pancratic monometer*, hypercatalectic. 2. The *Ithyphalic*, dimeter Brachycat. 3. The *Euripidean*, dimeter catalectic. 4. The *Alcmanic*, dimeter acatalectic. 5. *Anacreontic*, dimeter acatalectic, with a pyrrhic in the first place. 6. The *Hipponactic*, tetrameter acatalectic.

## III. ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

1. A pure Anapæstic line consists of Anapæsts only.

2. The mixed anapæst has a spondee or a dactyl, feet of equal length, in any place.

3. The following varieties occur, viz. 1st. The *Anapæstic Monometer*, consisting of two anapæsts. 2d. The *Anapæstic dimeter*, consisting of four Anapæsts.

Anapæstic verses are usually so constructed, that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be read in lines of one, two, or more measures.



4. Other varieties not much in use are the *Simodian*; Mon. Acat. The *Partheniac*, Dim. Cat. The *Archebulian*; trim. B. C.

#### IV. DACTYLIC METRE.

1. A pure Dactylic verse consists of dactyls only, which have the arsis on the first syllable of the foot.

Of this verse one foot constitutes a metre, and they range in length from Dimeter to Hexameter. Of these the most important are,

##### 1. *Hexameter or Heroic verse.*

Hexameter or Heroic verse consists of six feet, of which the fifth is a Dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Lūdērē | quæ vēl- | lēm cālā- | mō pār- | mīsīt ā- | grēstī. Virg.

Respecting this verse the following things may be noticed.

1st. When a spondee occurs in the fifth place, the line is called *spondaic*. Such lines are of a grave character, and but rarely occur.

2d. When the line consists of dactyls, the movement is brisk and rapid, when of spondees, slow and heavy. Compare in this respect the two following lines: the first expresses the rapid movement of a troop of horse over the plain eager for the combat,—the other describes the slow and toilsome movements of the Cyclops at the labors of the forge.

Quādrūpē- | dāntē pū- | trēm sōnī- | tū quātīt | ūngulā | cāmpūm.  
-Illī in- | tēr sē- | sē māg- | nā vī | brāchiā | tōllūt. Virg.

3d. The beauty and harmony of a Hexameter verse depends on the proper management of the cæsura. The most approved cæsural pause in heroic poetry, is that which occurs after the arsis of the third foot. Sometimes called the heroic cæsural pause; thus,

At dōmūs | intēri- | or || rē- | gālī | splēndidā | lūxū. Virg.

In reading this line with due attention to quantity, we naturally pause where the cæsural pause is indicated by the double line, and the whole movement is graceful and pleasing. Compare now with this, a line in which no attention is paid to the cæsura, or in which, if one is made, you have to pause in the middle of a word and the difference is manifest.

Rōmā | mōenīā | tēr- || rūlīt | impīgēr | Hānnībāl | ārmīs.

Sometimes the cæsura falls after the thesis of the third foot, or the arsis of the fourth. In the last case a secondary one often occurs in the second foot. The pause at the end of the third foot was the least approved. The following lines are examples of each of these,

1. Infān- | dūm rē- | gīnā || jū- | bēs rēnō | vārē dō- | lōrēm.
2. Prīmā tē- | nēt, || plaū | sūquē vō- | līt || frēmī- | tūquē sē- | cūndō.
3. Cui nōn | dictūs Hy- | lās pūr || ēt Lā- | tōniā | Dēlōs.

2. A species of Hexameter is the *Priapean*. It is divisible into two portions of three feet each, of which portions

the first begins generally with a *trochee*, and ends with an *amphimacer*, and the second begins with a *trochee*; as follows,

O cō | lōnā | quæ cūpis || pōntē | lūdērē | lōngō. *Catull.*

These parts, however, may very well be scanned, the first as a *Glyconic*, and the second as a *Pherecratic* verse, of which see under (V) *Choriambic* verse.

3. *Pentameter verse* consists of five feet. It is commonly arranged in two portions or hemistichs, of which the first contains two feet, dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable which ought to end a word; and the second, two dactyls followed by a long syllable; thus,

Māximā | dē nīhl- | lō || nāscītūr hīstōrī | ā—*Propert.*

Pōmāquē | nōn nō- | ūs || lēgit āb | ārbōrī- | būs | *Tibull.*

Where the first distich does not end a word, or if there be an elision by *Synaloepha* or *Echthipsis*, the verse is considered harsh.

This verse is commonly used alternately with a hexameter line, which combination is commonly called *Elegiac* verse.

4. *Dactylic tetrameter*, of which there are two kinds.

1st. *Dactylic tetrameter a priore*, called also *Alcmanian Dactylic tetrameter*, which consists of the first four feet of a Hexameter line, the fourth being always a Dactyl; as,

Sōlvītūr | ācrīs hy- | ōms grā- | tā vicē. *Hor.*

2d. *Dactylic tetrameter a posteriore*, called also *Spondaic tetrameter*, which consists of the last four feet of a hexameter line; as,

Sic trīs- | tēs āf- | fatūs ā- | micōs. *Hor.*

5. *Dactylic trimeter*, (or *Choriambic Trimeter Catalectic*) consists of the three last feet of a Hexameter line, (See *Choriambic* verse;) as,

Grātō | Pyrrhā sūb | ānrō. *Hor.*

6. *Dactylic trimeter catalectic*, also called *Archilochian penthemimeris*, consists of the first five half feet of a Hexameter line; as,

Arbōrī- | būsquē cō | mā. *Hor.*

7. *Dactylic dimeter* or *Adonic*—commonly used to conclude a Sapphic Stanza—consists of a dactyl and spondee; thus,

Risit A | pōllō.

## V. CHORIAMBIC METRE.

In *Choriambic* verse, the leading foot is a *choriambus*, but in the varieties of this metre, different other feet are admit-

ted, chiefly at the beginning or end of the line, or both. The principal varieties are the following,

1. The *Choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quæslēris | scirē nēfās | quēm mīhi quēm | tibi.

2. *Choriambic tetrameter*, consists of three choriambi, or feet equivalent in length and a Bacchius; as,

Jānē pātēr | Jānē tūēns | divē bicēps | blfōrmīs.

Horace altered without improving this metre, by substituting a spondee for the iambus in the first foot; as,

Tē dēōs ō- | rō Sybārin | &c.

*Note.*—Choriambic tetram. was originally called Phalæcian, from Phalætus, who made great use of it.

3. *Asclepiadic tetrameter*, consists of a spondee, two choriambi and an iambus; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ātūvīs || ēdītē rē- | gībūs.—*Hor.*

This form is uniformly used by Horace. Other poets sometimes make the first foot a dactyl.

The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

This verse is sometimes scanned as a Dactylic, pentameter catalectic; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ātū- | vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

4. *Choriambic trimeter* or *Glyconic*, consists of a spondee, (sometimes an iambus or trochee,) a choriambus and an iambus; as,

Sic tē | divā pōtēns | Cypri.—*Hor.*

When the first foot is a spondee, it may be scanned as dactylic trimeter; as,

Sic tē | divā pō- | tēns Cypri.

5. *Choriambic trimeter catalectic* or *Pherecratic*, consists of a spondee, choriambus and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Pyrrhā sūb ānt- | trō

Here also the first foot is sometimes a trochee or an iambus. When a spondee it may be scanned, as Dactylic trimeter, see IV. 5.

6. *Choriambic Dimeter*, consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lydiā dic | pēr ōmnēs.—*Hor.*

## VI. IONIC METRE.

1. The *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic Metre*, consists of three Ionics a majore, and a spondee; as,

Hās cūm gēmī- | nā cōmpēdē | dēdicāt cā- | tēnās.

In this metre, the Ionic feet are often two trochees, as in the third foot of the preceding line; and a long syllable is often resolved into two short ones

2. The *Ionic a minore*, consists generally of three or four feet, which are all Ionics a minore; as,

Pūēr ālēs | tūbī ūlīs | ōpērōsæ- | quē Minērvæ. *Hor.*

### § 165. COMPOUND METRES.

A compound metre or *Asynartete*, is the union of two kinds of metre in the same verse or line. Of these the following are the chief.

1. *Greater Alcaic*. Iambic Mon. hyper + Chor. dim. Acat.

Thus,  $\overline{\text{—}} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$

2. *Lesser Alcaic*. Dactylic dim. + Trochaic Mon.

Thus,  $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

3. *Archilochian Hept.* or Dact. tetr. a priore + Troch. Dim. B. C.

Thus,  $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$

4. *Dactylico-Iambic*. Dactylic trim Cat. + Iambic dim.

Thus,  $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | || \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$

5. *Iambico Dactylic*. Iambic dim + Dactylic trim. Cat.

Thus,  $\text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—}$

### § 166 SCANNING.

Scanning is the measuring of verse, or the resolving of a line into the several feet of which it is composed.

To do this properly, a previous acquaintance with the rules of quantity, and the structure of each kind of verse, is indispensable,—and also with the various ways by which syllables in certain situations are varied by contraction, elision, &c. These are usually called Figures of Prosody, and are as follows:

#### FIGURES OF PROSODY.

1. *Synaloepha*, cuts off a vowel or diphthong from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, or *h* with a vowel following it, thus converting two syllables into one; as,

*Terra antiqua* by *Synaloepha*, *terr' antiqua*; *Dardanidæ infensi*, *Dardanið' infensi*; *vento huc*, *vent' uc*; thus;

*Quidve moror ? si omnes uno ordine habetis Achivos.* *Virg.*

Scanned thus,

Quidvēmō. | rōr ? ʔ' ōm | nēs ū. | n' ōr dīn' hā- | bētīs A. | chivōs.

The *Synaloepha* is sometimes neglected, and seldom takes place in the interjections *O, heu, ah, proh, vae, vah, hei*.

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ | Iōn' | in māg- | nō quās | dirā Cē- | lænō. *Virg.*

Crēdīmūs | ān qui ā- | mānt ip- | sī sibi | sōmniā | fingūnt. *Id.*

2. *Ecthlipsis* cuts off *m* with a vowel preceding it, from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, or *h* followed by a vowel; as,

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

Scanned thus,

Mōnstr' hōr- | rēnd,' in- | fōrm' in- | gēns cui | lūmēn ād | ēmptūm

This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

Corporum | offici- | um est quoni- | am preme- | re omnia | decorum. *Lucr.*

3. A *Synaloepha* and *Ecthlipsis* are sometimes found at the end of a line, where, after the completing of the metre, a syllable remains to be joined to the next line, which of course, must begin with a vowel; thus,

Sternitur | infe- | lix ali- | one | vulnere | coelum || que.

Adspicit, &c.

Here the *que* and *adspicit* are joined; as, *qu' adspicit*.

Jamque iter | emen- | si, tur- | res ac | tecta La- | tino- || rum

*Ardua*, &c. where the *-rum* and *ardua* are joined; as, *r' ardua*.

3. *Synæresis*, sometimes called *Crasis*, contracts two syllables into one; as, *Phæthon* for *Phaëthon* this is done by forming two vowels into a diphthong; as *āē*, *ēī*, *ōī*, into *æ*, *ei*, *oi*; or pronouncing the two syllables as one; thus, *ea*, *iu*, as if *ya*, *yu*, &c; as, *aurea*, *aurya*; *filius*, *filyus*; and *ua*, *ui*, &c. as if *wa*, *wi*; thus, *gemua*, *genwa*; *tenuis*, *tēncis*.

4. *Diæresis* divides one syllable into two; as *aulai*, for *aulæ*; *Troia* for *Trojæ*; *Persæus*, for *Perseus*; *miluus*, for *milvus*; *soluit*, for *solvit*; *voluit*, for *volvit*; *aquæ*, *suetus*, *sūasit*, *Suevos*, *relanguit*, *reliquas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c. as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*

Stamina non ulli dissolūenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*

5. *Systole* makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,

Matri | longa de- | cem tulē- | rant fas- | tidia | menses. *Virg.*

*Diastöle* makes a short syllable long, as the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse:

Consi- | dant, si- | tantus a- | mōr, et | mœnia | condant. *Virg.*

---

### § 167. STANZA.

A poem may consist of one or more kinds of verse. When a poem consists of one kind of verse it is called *monocolon*; of two, *dicolon*; of three, *tricolon*.

The different kinds of verse in a poem are usually combined in regular portions called stanzas, or strophes, each of which contains the same number of lines, the same kinds of verse, and these arranged in the same order.

When a stanza or strophe consists of two lines, the poem is called *distrophon*, of three lines *tristrophon*, of four *tetrasrophon*. Hence poems, according to the number of kinds of verse they contain, and the number of lines in the stanza are characterized as follows;

*Monocolon*, one kind of verse in the poem.

*Dicolon distrophon*, two kinds of verse, and two lines in the stanza.

*Dicolon tristrophon*, two kinds of verse, three lines in the stanza.

*Dicolon tetrasrophon*, two kinds of verse, four lines in the stanza.

*Tricolon tristrophon*, three kinds of verse, three lines in the stanza.

*Tricolon tetrasrophon*, three kinds of verse, four lines in the stanza.

---

### § 168. COMBINATIONS OF METRES IN HORACE.

Horace makes use of *nineteen* different species of metre combined in *eighteen* different ways. They are arranged as follows; according to the order of preference given them by the poet. The references here, where not marked, are to § 164.

No. 1. Two lines Greater Alcaic. § 165. 1. One Archolichian dimeter hypermeter, I. 2. 5. 3d; and one Lesser Alcaic. § 165. 2.

No. 2. Three lines Sapphic, II. 2. One Adonic or Dactylic dim. IV. 7.

No. 3. One line Choriambic trim. or Glyconic, V. 4. One choriambic tetram. or Asclepiadic V. 3.

No. 4. One line Iambic trim. or Senarian, I. 3. 5. 1st. One Iambic dim. I. 2. 3.

No. 5. Three lines, Chor. tetram. or Asclepiadic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. or Glyconic, V. 4.

No. 6. Two lines Chor. tetram. or Asclepiadic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. Cat., or Pherecratic, V. 5. One Chor. trim or Glyconic. V. 4.

No. 7. Choriambic tetrameter, or Asclepiadic alone, V. 3.

No. 8. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. I. One Dactylic tetram. a posteriore, IV. 4. 2d.

No. 9. Choriambic Pentameter only, V. 1.

- No 10. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambic dim. 1. 2. 3.  
 No 11. Iambic trimeter Senarian only, I. 2. 5. 1st.  
 No. 12. One line Choriambic dim. V. 6. One Chor. tetram. (altered,) V. 2.  
 No. 13. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambic trim. sen. I. 3. 5. 1st.  
 No. 14. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Archilochian Dactylic trimeter Catalectic, IV. 6.  
 No. 15. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambico Dactylic, § 165. 5.  
 No. 16. One line Iambic trim. Senarian, I. 3. 5. 1st. One Dactylic Iambic. 165, 4.  
 No. 17. One line Archilochian Heptameter. § 165. 3. One Archilochian Iambic trimeter, Catalectic, I. 2. 5, 2d.  
 No. 18. One line Iambic dimeter Acephalous, I. 5. 9th. and one Iambic trimeter Catalectic, I. 5. 2d.  
 No. 19. Ionic a minore only, VI, 2. The first line contains three feet, the second four.

*Nota.*—The Satires and Epistles are in Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1.

## § 169. METRICAL KEY TO ODES OF HORACE.

Containing in alphabetic order the the first words of each, with a reference to the Nos. in the preceding section where the stanza is described, and reference made to the place where each metre is explained

<i>Æli vetusto</i> .....	No. 1	<i>Et thure et fidibus</i> .....	No. 3
<i>Æquam memento</i> .....	1	<i>Exegi monumentum</i> .....	7
<i>Albi ne doleas</i> .....	5	<i>Extremum Tanaim</i> .....	5
<i>Altera jam teritur</i> .....	13	<i>Faune nympharum</i> .....	2
<i>Angustam amici</i> .....	1	<i>Festo quid potius die</i> .....	3
<i>At O deorum</i> .....	4	<i>Herculis ritu</i> .....	2
<i>Audivêre Lyce</i> .....	6	<i>Horrida tempestas</i> .....	15
<i>Bacchum in remotis</i> .....	1	<i>Ibis Liburnis</i> .....	4
<i>Beatus ille</i> .....	4	<i>Icci beatis</i> .....	1
<i>Cœlo supinas</i> .....	1	<i>Ille et nefasto</i> .....	1
<i>Cœlo tonantem</i> .....	1	<i>Impios parvæ</i> .....	2
<i>Cum tu Lydia</i> .....	3	<i>Inclusam Danaën</i> .....	5
<i>Cur me querelis</i> .....	1	<i>Intactis opulentior</i> .....	3
<i>Delicta majorum</i> .....	1	<i>Integer vitæ</i> .....	2
<i>Descende cœlo</i> .....	1	<i>Intermissa Venus diu</i> .....	3
<i>Dianam teneræ</i> .....	6	<i>Jam jam efficaci</i> .....	11
<i>Diffugère nives</i> .....	14	<i>Jam pauca aratro</i> .....	1
<i>Dive quem proles</i> .....	2	<i>Jam satis terris</i> .....	2
<i>Divis orte bonia</i> .....	5	<i>Jam veris comites</i> .....	5
<i>Donarem pateras</i> .....	7	<i>Justum et tenacem</i> .....	1
<i>Donec gratus eram</i> .....	3	<i>Laudabunt alii</i> .....	8
<i>Eheu fugaces</i> .....	1	<i>Lupis et agnis</i> .....	4
<i>Est mihi nonum</i> .....	2	<i>Lydia dic per omnes</i> .....	12

Mæcenat atavis .....	No. 7	Persicos odi puer .....	No. 2
Malâ soluta .....	4	Petti nihil me .....	16
Martiis cœlebs .....	2	Phœbe, silvarumque .....	2
Mater sæva Cupidinum .....	3	Phœbus volentem .....	1
Mercuri facunde .....	2	Pindarum quisquis .....	2
Mercuri nam te .....	2	Poscimus siquid .....	2
Miserarum est .....	19	Quæ cura patrum .....	1
Mollis inertia .....	10	Qualem ministrum .....	1
Montium custos .....	2	Quando repōstum .....	4
Motum ex Metello .....	1	Quantum distet ab Inacho .....	3
Musis amicus .....	1	Quem tu Melpomene .....	3
Natis in usum .....	1	Quem virum aut heroa .....	2
Ne forte credas .....	1	Quid bellicosus .....	1
Ne sit ancillæ .....	2	Quid dedicatum .....	1
Nolis longa feræ .....	5	Quid fles Asterie .....	6
Nondum subacta .....	1	Quid immerentes .....	4
Non ebur neque aureum .....	18	Quid obseratis .....	11
Non semper imbres .....	1	Quid tibi vis .....	8
Non usitata .....	1	Quis desidero .....	5
Non vides quanto .....	2	Quis multa gracilis .....	6
Nox erat .....	10	Quo me Bacche .....	3
Nullam Vare sacra .....	9	Quo, quo scelesti ruitis .....	4
Nullus argento .....	2	Rectius vives .....	2
Nunc est bibendum .....	1	Rogare longo .....	4
O crudelis adhuc .....	9	Scribēris Vario .....	5
O Diva gratum .....	1	Septimi Gades .....	2
O fons Blandusiæ .....	6	Sic te Diva potens .....	3
O matre pulchrâ .....	1	Solvitur acris hiems .....	17
O nata mecum .....	1	Te maris et terræ .....	8
O navis referent .....	6	Tu ne quæsieris .....	9
O sæpe mecum .....	1	Tyrrhena regum .....	1
O Venus regina .....	2	Ulla si juris .....	2
Odi profanum .....	1	Uxor pauperis Ibyci .....	3
Otium Divos .....	2	Velox amœnum .....	1
Parcius junctas .....	2	Vides ut alta .....	1
Parcus Deorum .....	1	Vile potabis .....	2
Parentis olim .....	4	Vitas hinnuleo .....	6
Pastor quum traheret .....	5	Vixi choreis .....	1



## APPENDIX.

---

### I. ROMAN COMPUTATION OF TIME.

#### 1. Divisions of the Year.

Romulus is said to have divided the year into ten months, as follows: 1. *Martius*, from Mars, his supposed father; 2. *Aprilis*, from *Aperio*, "to open;" 3. *Maius*, from *Maia*, the mother of Mercury; 4. *Junius*, from the goddess *Juno*. The rest were named from their number, as follows: 5. *Quintilis*, afterwards *Julius*, from *Julius Cæsar*; 6. *Sextilis*, afterwards *Augustus*, from *Augustus Cæsar*; 7. *September*; 8. *October*; 9. *November*; and 10. *December*. Numa afterwards added two months; viz: 11. *Januarius*, from the god *Janus*; 12. *Februarius*, from *februo*, "to purify."

As the months were regulated by the course of the moon, it was soon found that the months and seasons did not always correspond, and various expedients were adopted to correct this error. Much confusion however still remained till about A. U. 707, when Julius Cæsar, assisted by Sosigenes, an astronomer of Alexandria, reformed the Calendar, adjusted the year according to the course of the sun, and assigned to each of the twelve months the number of days which they still contain.

#### 2. The Roman Month.

The Romans divided their month into three parts, called *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*\*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth was called the *Nones*; and the thirteenth was called the *Ides*; except in March, May, July and October, when the *Nones* fell on the seventh and the *Ides* on the fifteenth, and the day was numbered according to its distance, (not *after* but) *before* each of these points; that is, after the *Kalends* they numbered the day according to its distance before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, according to its distance before the *Ides*; and after the *Ides*, according to its distance before the *Kalends*—both days being always included. The day before each of these points was never numbered, but called *Pridie*, or *ante diem Nonorum*, or *Iduum*, or *Kalendarum*, as the case might be; the day before that was called *tertio*, the day before that, *quarto*, &c.; *Scil. Nonorum, Iduum, Kalendarum*.

Various expressions and constructions were used by the Romans in the notation of the days of the month. Thus, for example, the 29th December or the 4th of the *Kalends* of January, was expressed differently, as follows:

---

\* The first day was named *Kalends*, from the Greek, *καλέω*, to call, because when the month was regulated according to the course of the moon, the priest announced the new moon, which was of course the first day of the month. The *Nones* were so called because that day was always the ninth from the *Ides*. The term *Ides* is derived from an obsolete Latin verb *idare*, to divide, it is supposed because that day being about the middle of the month divided it into two nearly equal parts.

- 1st. Quarto Kalendarum Januarii. Abbreviated, IV. Kal. Jan., or  
 2a. Quarto Kalendas Januarii. " IV. Kal. Jan., or  
 3d. Quarto Kalendas Januarias. " IV. Kal. Jan., or  
 4th. Ante diem quartum Kal. Jan. " a. d. IV. K. Jan.

In these expressions *quarto* agrees with *die* understood, and *die* governs *Kalendarum* in the genitive. *Kalendas* is governed by *ante* understood. In the first and second expression *Januarii* is considered as a noun governed by *Kalendarum* and *Kalendas*; in the third *Januarias* is regarded as an adjective agreeing with *Kalendas*; in the fourth, *ante diem quartum* is a technical phrase for *die quarto ante*, and frequently has a preposition before it; as, *in ante diem*, &c., or *ex ante diem*, &c.

The notation of Nones and Ides was expressed in the same way and with the same variety of expression.

The correspondence of the Roman notation of time with our own may be seen by inspection of the following

TABLE.

Days of our months.	MAR. MAI. JUL. OCT. 31 days.	JAN. AUG. DEC. 31 days.	APR. J <sup>N</sup> . SEPT. NOV. 30 days.	FEBR. 28 days. Bissex. 29.
1	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	VI. nonas.	IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie "	VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.
7	Nonæ.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie "	XIX. kal.	XVIII. kal.	XVI. kal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. kal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie Mar
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie "	
31	Pridie "	Pridie "		

## 3 Rules for reducing Time.

As, however, this table cannot be always at hand, the following simple rules will enable a person to reduce time without a table

## I.—TO REDUCE ROMAN TIME TO OUR OWN.

*For reducing Kalends.*

*Kalendæ* are always the first day of the month;—*Pridie Kalendæ*, always the last day of the month preceding. For any other notation observe the following

**RULE.** Subtract the number of the Kalends given from the number of days in the preceding month; add 2, and the result will be the day of the preceding month; thus,

X. Kal. Jan.—Dec. has days  $31-10=21+2=23$ d of Dec'r.

XVI. Kal. Dec.—Nov. has days  $30-14=16+2=18$ th of Nov'r.

*For reducing Nones and Ides.*

**RULE.** Subtract the number given from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and add 1. The result will be the day of the month named; thus,

IV. Non. Dec.—Nones on the  $5-4=1+1=2$ , or 2d Dec'r.

VI. Id. Dec.—Ides on the  $13-6=7+1=8$ , or 8th Dec'r.

IV. Non. Mar.—Nones on the  $7-4=3+1=4$ , or 4th March.

VI. Id. Mar.—Ides on the  $15-6=9+1=10$ , or 10th March.

## II. FOR REDUCING OUR TIME TO ROMAN.

If the day is that on which the Kalends, Nones, or Ides fall, call it by these names. If the day before, call it *Pridie Kal.* (of the following month,) *Prid. Non.*, *Pridie Id.* (of the same month.) Other days to be denominated according to their distance before the point next following, viz: those after the Kalends and before the Nones, to be called *Nones*; those after the Nones and before the Ides, to be called *Ides*; and those after the Ides and before the Kalends, to be called *Kalends*, of the month following; as follows:

*For reducing to Kalends.*

**RULE.** Subtract the day of the month given from the number of days in the month, and add 2. The result will be the number of the Kalends of the month following; thus:

Dec. 23d.—Dec. has days  $31-23=8+2=10$ , or X. Kal. Jan.

Nov. 16th.—Nov. has days  $30-16=14+2=16$ , or XVI. Kal. Dec.

*For reducing to Nones and Ides.*

**RULE.** Subtract the day of the month given from the day of the Nones, (if between the Kalends and Nones,) or from the day of the Ides, (if between the Nones and Ides,) and add 1. The result will be the number of the Nones or Ides respectively; as,

Dec. 2d.—Day of the Nones  $5-2=3+1=4$ , or IV. Non. Dec

Dec. 8th. " Ides  $13-8=5+1=6$ , or VI. Id. Dec.

March 4th. " Nones  $7-4=3+1=4$ , or IV. Non. Mar

March 10th. " Ides  $15-10=5+1=6$ , or VI. Id. Mar.

*Division of the Roman Day.*

The Roman *civil day* extended, as with us, from midnight to midnight, and its parts were variously named; as, *media nox*, *Gallicinium*, *Canticinium*, *diluculum*, *mane*, *Antemeridianum*, *Meridies*, *Pomeridianum*, &c.

The *natural day* extended from sunrise (*solis ortus*.) till sunset (*solis occasus*) and was divided into twelve equal parts, called hours, (*horæ*); which were of course longer or shorter according to the length of the day. At the equinox their hour and ours would be of the same length; but as they began to number at sunrise the *number* would be different; i. e., their first hour would correspond to our 7 o'clock, their second to our 8 o'clock, &c.

The *night* was divided by the Romans into four watches, (*Vigiliæ*) each equal to three hours; the *first* and *second* extending from sunset to midnight, and the *third* and *fourth* from midnight to sunrise.

## II. OF ROMAN NAMES.

The Romans at first seem to have had but one name; as, *Romulus*, *Remus*, *Numitor*; sometimes two; as, *Numa Pompilius*, *Ancus Martius*, &c.; but when they began to be divided into tribes or clans, (*gentes*.) they commonly had three names—the *Prænomen*, the *Nomen*, and the *Cognomen*; arranged as follows:

1. The *Prænomen* stood first, and distinguished the *individual*. It was commonly written with one or two letters; as, *A.* for *Aulus*, *C.* for *Caius*, *Cn.* for *Cnæus*, &c.

2. The *Nomen*, which distinguished the *gens*. This name commonly ended in *ius*; as, *Cornelius*, *Fabius*, *Tullius*, &c.; and

3. The *Cognomen*, or surname, was put last and marked the family; as, *Cicero*, *Cæsar*, &c.

Thus, in *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, *Publius* is the *Prænomen*, and denotes the individual; *Cornelius* is the *Nomen*, and denotes the *gens*; and *Scipio* is the *Cognomen*, and denotes the *family*.

4. Sometimes a fourth name called the *Agnomen* was added, as a memorial of some illustrious action or remarkable event. Thus, *Scipio* was named *Africanus*, from the conquest of Carthage in Africa.

The three names, however, were not always used—commonly two, and sometimes only one. In speaking to any one, the *Prænomen* was commonly used, which was peculiar to Roman citizens.

When there was only one daughter in a family, she was called by the name of the *gens* with a feminine termination; as, *Tullia*, the daughter of *M. Tullius Cicero*; *Julia*, the daughter of *C. Julius Cæsar*. If there were two the elder was called *Major*, and the younger *Minor*; as, *Tullia Major*, &c. If more than two, they were distinguished by numerals; as, *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, &c.

Slaves had no *Prænomen*, but were anciently called by the *prænomen* of their master; as, *Marcipor*, as if *Marci puer*; *Lucipor*, (*Lucii puer*.) &c. Afterwards they came to be named either from their country or from other circumstances; as, *Syrus*, *Davus*, *Geta*, *Tiro*, *Laurea*; and still more frequently from their employment; as, *Medici*, *Chirurgi*, *Pædagogæ*, *Grammatici*, *Scribæ*, *Fabri*, &c.

The most common abbreviations of Latin names are the following, viz:

A., <i>Aulus</i> .	M. T. C., <i>Marcus</i> ,	Q., or Qu., <i>Quintus</i> .
C., <i>Caius</i> .	<i>Tullius Cicero</i> .	Ser., <i>Servius</i> .
Cn., <i>Cneius</i> .	M., <i>Manius</i> .	S., or Sex., <i>Sextus</i> .
D., <i>Decimus</i> .	Mam., <i>Mamercus</i> .	Sp., <i>Spurius</i> .
L., <i>Lucius</i> .	N., <i>Numerius</i> .	T., <i>Titus</i> .
M., <i>Marcus</i> .	P., <i>Publius</i> .	Ti., or Tib., <i>Tiberius</i>

*Other Abbreviations.*

A. d., <i>Ante diem</i> .	Id., <i>Idus</i> .	S., <i>Salutem, Sacrum,</i>
A. U., <i>Anno Urbis</i> .	Imp., <i>Imperator</i> .	<i>Senatus</i> .
A. U. C., <i>Anno urbis</i>	Non., <i>Nonæ</i> .	S. D. P., <i>Salutem di-</i>
<i>conditæ</i> .	P. C., <i>Patres con-</i>	<i>cit plurimam</i> .
Cal. or kal., <i>Kalendæ</i> .	<i>scripti</i> .	S. P. Q: R., <i>Senatus</i>
Cos., <i>Consul</i> . (Singu-	P. R., <i>Populus Roma-</i>	<i>populusque Roma-</i>
lar.)	<i>nus</i> .	<i>nus</i> .
Coss., <i>Consules</i> . (Plu-	Pont. Max., <i>Pontifex</i>	S. C., <i>Senatus consul-</i>
ral.)	<i>maximus</i> .	<i>tum</i> .
D., <i>Divus</i> .	Pr., <i>Prætor</i> .	
Eq. Rom., <i>Eques Ro-</i>	Proc., <i>Proconsul</i> .	
<i>manus</i> .	Resp., <i>Respublica</i> .	

### III. DIVISIONS OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE.

The Roman people were originally divided as follows:

1. *Patres*. Fathers, or Senators, called also *patrones*, from their relation to the plebeians, to whom they were the legal protectors
2. *Plebes*, or common people, called also *clientes*.

There were afterwards added

3. *Equites*, or Knights, Persons of merit and distinction selected from the two orders, whose duty at first was to serve in war as cavalry, but they were afterwards advanced to other important offices. They must be over 18 years of age, and possess a fortune of four hundred thousand sesterces.
4. *Liberti*, or *Libertini*. Freedmen. Persons who had once been slaves, but obtained their freedom and ranked as citizens.
5. *Servi*. Slaves.

When Romulus arranged the affairs of the new city he appointed a council of 100 *Patres* from the Romans, and afterwards added to them 100 more from the Sabines. Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king of Rome, added 100 more, called *Patres minorum gentium*, in relation to whom the former senators were called *Patres majorum gentium*, making 300 in all. A great part of these were slain by Tarquin the proud; and after his expulsion, Brutus, the first consul, chose a number to supply their place, who were called *Patres conscripti*, because they were enrolled with the other senators. This title was afterwards applied to all the senators in council assembled.

The sons of the *Patres* were called *Patricii*, or Patricians. Besides these distinctions among the Romans, there were also distinctions of rank or party, as follows:

*Nobiles*, whose ancestors or themselves held any curule office, i. e., had been *Consul*, *Prætor*, *Censor*, or *Curule Ædile*.

*Ignobiles*, who neither themselves nor their ancestors held any curule office.

*Optimates*, those who favored the senate.

*Populares*, those who favored the people.

#### IV DIVISION OF THE ROMAN CIVIL OFFICERS.

At first Rome was governed by kings for the space of 244 years. The ordinary magistrates after that till the end of the republic, were,

1. *Consuls*, or chief magistrates, of whom there were two.
2. *Prætors*, or judges, also two in number, next in dignity to the consuls.
3. *Censors*, who took charge of the census and had a general supervision of the morals of the people.
4. *Tribunes*, of the people, the special guardians of the people against the encroachments of the patricians, and who by the word "*VETO*," I forbid, could prevent the passage of any law.
5. *Ædiles*, who took care of the city and had the inspection and regulation of its public buildings, temples, theatres, baths, &c.
6. *Quæstors*, or Treasurers, who collected the public revenues.

Under the emperors there were added,

1. *Præfectus Urbi*, or Governor of the city.
2. *Præfectus Prætorii*, Commander of the body guards.
3. *Præfectus Annonæ*, whose duty it was to procure and distribute grain in times of scarcity.
4. *Præfectus militaris aerarii*, who had charge of the military fund
5. *Præfectus Classis*, Admiral of the fleet.
6. *Præfectus Vigiliæ*, or captain of the watch.

#### V. THE ROMAN ARMY.

The Romans were a nation of warriors. All within a certain age (17 to 45,) were obliged to go forth to war at the call of their country. When an army was wanted for any purpose, a levy was made among the people of the number required. These were then arranged, officered and equipped for service.

*The Legion.* The leading division of the Roman army was the legion which when full consisted of 6000 men, but varied from that to 4000.

Each legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two centuries.

The complement of cavalry (*equitatus*,) for each legion was three hundred, called *Ala*, or *justus equitatus*. These were divided into ten *turmæ* or troops; and each *turma* into three *decuriæ*, or bodies of ten men.

#### *Division of the Soldiers.*

The Roman soldiers were divided into three classes, viz:

1. *Hastati*, or spearmen; young men who occupied the first line
2. *Principes*, or middle aged men, who occupied the middle line.
3. *Triarii*; veterans of approved valor, who occupied the third line.

Besides these there were,

4. *Velites*; or light armed soldiers, distinguished for agility and swiftness.
5. *Funditores*; or slingers.
6. *Sagittarii*; or bowmen

*The Officers of the Legion were,*

1. Six *Military tribunes*, who commanded under the consul in turn, usually a month.
2. The *Centuriones*, who commanded the centuries.

*The officers of the Cavalry were,*

1. The *Præfectus Ala*, or commander of the wing.
2. The *Decuriones*, or captains of ten.

The whole army was under the command of the consul or proconsul, who acted as commander-in-chief. Under him were his *Legati*, or lieutenants, who acted in his absence or under his direction; or, as his deputies, were sent by him on embassies or on business of special importance.

## VI. ROMAN MONEY—WEIGHTS—AND MEASURES.

### *Roman Money.*

The principal coins among the Romans were—*Brass*: the *As* and its divisions;—*Silver*: the *Sestertius*, *Quinarius*, and *Denarius*, called *bigati* and *quadrigati*, from the impression of a chariot drawn by two or four horses on one side;—*Gold*: the *Aureus* or *Solidus*.

Before the coining of silver the Romans reckoned by the *As*, a brass coin, called also *libra*. This coin was originally the weight of the Roman *libra* or *pondus*, but was afterwards reduced at different times, till at last it came to one twenty-fourth of a pound, and was called *libella*. It was divided into twelve equal parts called *Unciæ*, any number of which had a distinct name, as follows:

$\frac{1}{12}$	<i>Uncia.</i>	$\frac{6}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$	<i>Semis, sem-</i>	$\frac{9}{12}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$	<i>Dodrans.</i>
$\frac{2}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{6}$	<i>Sextans.</i>		<i>bella.</i>	$\frac{10}{12}$ or $\frac{5}{6}$	<i>Dextans.</i>
$\frac{3}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$	<i>Quadrans.</i>	$\frac{7}{12}$	<i>Septunx.</i>	$\frac{11}{12}$	<i>Deunx.</i>
$\frac{4}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{3}$	<i>Triens.</i>	$\frac{8}{12}$ or $\frac{2}{3}$	<i>Bes, or bes-</i>		
$\frac{5}{12}$	<i>Quincunx.</i>		<i>sis.</i>		

After the use of silver money, accounts were kept in Sesterces, (*Sestertii*.) This coin, emphatically called *nummus*, (money,) was originally equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*, as the name *sestertius* means. Its symbol was L. L. S., i. e., *Libra Libra Semis*, or the numeral letters, thus, IIS, or with a line across HS. Other coins were multiples of this; thus, the *denarius* was equal to 4 *sesterces* or 10 *asses*, and the *aureus*, a gold coin, was equal to 25 *denarii*, or 100 *sestertii*. When the *as* was reduced in weight after A. U. C. 536, the *sestertius* was worth 4 *asses* and the *denarius* 16.

A thousand *sestertii* was called *sestertium*, (not a coin but the name of a sum,) and was indicated by the mark IIS. This word was never used in the singular; and any sum less than 2,000 *sesterces* was called so many *sestertii*; 2,000 was called *duo* or *bina sestertia*; 10,000, *dena sestertia*; 20,000, *vicena sestertia*, &c., up to a million of *sesterces*; which was written *decies centena millia sestertiorum*, or *nummorum*, ten times a hundred thousand *sesterces*. This was commonly abbreviated into *decies sestertium*, or *decies nummum*, in which expressions *centena millia*, or *centies millia* is always understood.

The following table will show the value of the Roman *as*, in federal money, both before and after the Punic war, and of the larger coins at all times

1. Table of Roman Money.

		Before A. U. 536.		After A. U. 536.	
		D. cts. m.		D. cts. m.	
	Teruncius or 3 Unciæ,....		3 8		2.4
2	Teruncii = 1 Sembella,.		7.7		4.8
2	Sembella = 1 As,.....		1 5.4		9.6
Before 536-2½	} Asses, = 1 Sestertius,.		3 8.6		3 8.6
After 536-4					
2	Sestertii = 1 Quinarius or Victoriatus		7 7.3		7 7.3
2	Quinarii = 1 Denarii....		15 4.7		15 4.7
25	Denarii = 1 Aureus, or				
	= Solidus,..	3 86	8.4	3 86	8.4
10	Aurei = 1 Sestertium,	38 68	4.6	38 68	4.6

2. Roman Weights.

		Troy Weight.		Avoirdupois W't.	
		Lbs. oz. dwt. grs.		Lbs. oz. drs.	
The Siliqua (equal to 4 Cus,)			2.92		0.106
3 Siliqua = 1 Obolus,.....			8.76		0.320
2 Oboli = 1 Scrupulum, .			17.53		0.641
4 Scrupula = 1 Sextula,.....		2 22.	13		2.564
1½ Sextula = 1 Siciliquus,...		4 9.	19		3.847
1½ Siciliquus = 1 Duella,.....		5 20.	26		5.129
3 Duellæ = 1 Uncia,.....		17 12.	79		15.389
12 Unciæ = 1 LIBRA,.....	10 10	9.53		11 8.	6.68

The Drachma was 3 Scrupula.

3. Roman Liquid Measure.

		Galls. qts. pts.	
1 Ligula, or Cochleare, is equal to			0.019
4 Ligula, = 1 Cyathus,			0.079
1½ Cyathi, = 1 Acetabulum,			0.118
2 Acetabula, = 1 Quartarius,			0.237
2 Quartarii, = 1 Hemina,			0.475
2 Heminæ, = 1 Sextarius,			0.950
6 Sextarii, = 1 Congius,		2	1.704
4 Congii, = 1 Urna,		2 3	0.819
2 Urnæ, = 1 Amphora,		5 2	1.639
20 Amphoræ, = 1 Culeus,		114 0	0.795

The Sextarius was divided into 12 Unciæ, one of which was the Cyathus, equal to a small wine glass.

4. Roman Dry Measure.

		Pks. galls. qts. pts.	
1 Sextarius, (Same as in liquid measure,)			0.950
8 Sextarii, = 1 Semi-modius,		3	1.606
2 Semi-modi, = 1 Modius,		1 3	1.213

Roman Measures of Length.

The Roman foot, (Pes,) like the as, was divided into 12 uncie, different numbers of which were sometimes called by the same names



as those of the *as*; viz: *Sextans*, *quadrans*, &c. The measures less than the *uncia* were the *digitus* =  $\frac{2}{3}$ ; the *semiuncia* =  $\frac{1}{2}$ ; the *siciliquus* =  $\frac{1}{4}$ ; and the *sextula* = 1-6th of the *uncia*; i. e., the *pes*, or foot, contained 12 *unciae*, or 16 *digiti*, or 24 *semiunciae*, or 48 *siciliqui*, or 72 *sextulæ*.

#### 5. Table of Measures above a *Pes*.

		M. yds. ft.
1	<i>Pes</i> = 12 <i>Unciæ</i> , or 16 <i>Digiti</i> ,.....	.91
1½	<i>Pes</i> = 1 <i>Palmipes</i> ,.....	1.21
1½	<i>Pes</i> = 1 <i>Cubitus</i> ,.....	1.45
2½	<i>Pedes</i> = 1 <i>Pes Sestertius</i> ,.....	2.42
5	<i>Pedes</i> = 1 <i>Passus</i> ,.....	1 1.85
125	<i>Passus</i> = 1 <i>Stadium</i> ,.....	202 0.72
8	<i>Stadia</i> = 1 <i>Milliare</i> , or mile,.....	1617 2.75

#### 6. Table of Land Measure.

		A. roods. poles. sq. ft.
100	<i>Pedes quadrati</i> , = 1 <i>Scrupulum</i> ,.....	94.23
4	<i>Scrupula</i> , = 1 <i>Sextula</i> ,.....	1 104.69
1 1-5	<i>Sextulæ</i> = 1 <i>Actus Simplex</i> ,.....	1 180.08
5	<i>Actus</i> , or 6 <i>Sextulæ</i> , = 1 <i>Uncia</i> ,.....	8 83.65
6	<i>Unciæ</i> , = 1 <i>Actus quadratus</i> ,.....	1 9 229.67
2	<i>Actus quadrati</i> , = 1 <i>Jugerum</i> , ( <i>As</i> ),.....	2 19 187.09
2	<i>Jugera</i> , = 1 <i>Hæredium</i> ,.....	1 0 39 101.83
100	<i>Hæredia</i> , = 1 <i>Centuria</i> ,.....	124 2 17 109.79
4	<i>Centuriæ</i> , = 1 <i>Saltus</i> ,.....	498 1 29 166.91

The Roman *Jugerum* or *As* of land was also divided into 12 *Unciæ*, any number of which was denominated as before,

### VII. DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

Of the Roman literature previous to A. U. 514 scarcely a vestige remains. The Roman writers subsequent to that period have been arranged into four classes, with reference to the purity of the language at the time in which they lived. These are called the *Golden age*, the *Silver age*, the *Brazen age*, and the *Iron age*.

The *Golden age* extends from the time of the second Punic war, A. U. 514, to the death of Augustus, A. D. 14, a period of about 250 years. In that period Facciolatus reckons up in all 62 writers, of many of whose works however only fragments remain. The most distinguished writers of that period are *Terence*, *Catullus*, *Cæsar*, *Nepos*, *Cicero*, *Virgil*, *Horace*, *Ovid*, *Livy*, and *Sallust*.

The *Silver age* extends from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers who flourished in this age are about twenty-three in number, of whom the most distinguished are *Celsus*, *Villeius*, *Columella*, the *Senecas*, the *Plinies*, *Juvenal*, *Quintilian*, *Tacitus*, *Suetonius*, and *Curtius*.

The writers of the *Brazen age*, extending from the death of Trajan till Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410, were 35; the most distinguished of whom were *Justin*, *Terentianus*, *Victor*, *Lactantius*, and *Claudian*.

From this period commenced the *Iron age*, during which the Latin language was much adulterated by the admixture of foreign words, and its purity, elegance, and strength greatly declined.

## REPORT

*On the Method of Teaching English Grammar, and on Text Books to the Superintendent of Common Schools in the State of New-York; By Ralph K. Finch, Esq., Deputy Superintendent of Common Schools, Steuben Co.—(Assembly Documents, No. 34—pp. 577—589.)*

To the HON. SAMUEL YOUNG, Superintendent of Common Schools:

SIR—I have endeavored to perform the task assigned me, and beg leave to submit the following remarks on the method of teaching English grammar.

I have not the vanity to believe that the plan here recommended is the best that can be devised, but it is one that I have tested in the school room, and found eminently successful.

I am, sir, with sentiments of high esteem, your obt. servant,

R. K. FINCH,  
Superintendent Common Schools, Steuben County

### REMARKS ON THE METHOD OF TEACHING ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

In the study of English grammar, three things should be steadily kept in view. 1st. To acquire an accurate knowledge of the principles and facts of the science. 2d. To become prompt and expert in the application of these both in analysis and composition: and, 3d. By means of this to *educate* or train the mental faculties, in the most effectual and profitable manner. The first of these, in the beginning at least, is chiefly an exercise of the memory: the second, combines with this the exercise of the judgment or reasoning powers; and it is in the proper direction of these, that the skill of the teacher, aided by his text book, leading the pupil to think, to reason, and to arrive at conclusions by the use of his own faculties, is required to effect the third.

It may be proper here to notice a subject which has of late attracted the attention of the writer; it is the practice of committing accurately to memory, or by *rote*, as it is rather ungenerously called. The time has been, (and in many places still is) when teachers seemed to think their whole duty consisted in requiring their pupils to commit their text book to memory, to assign them their daily task, and hear them recite it off, parrot-like, and he who made fewest mistakes was the best scholar. I have known this process gone through, not only with English grammar, but with Kames, Smellie's Philosophy, and even Euclid, in some schools of high pretensions. Nothing could be more preposterous or useless; and such a mode of teaching has fallen under the just condemnation of all sensible men. But it appears to me that even sensible men are now misleading the public mind into the opposite extreme; which, though not so absurd, nor so injurious, is still an error, and has a pernicious influence on education. Grammar, and every thing else, many think should be taught by mere conversational lectures, without requiring any committing to memory on the part of the pupils. The result is, a great deal *seems* to be accomplished in little time. Grammar is taught in *six lessons*, without any effort on the part of the learner. If the teacher is skilful, the pupils, by being led to understand the subject, will be delighted, and suppose they have acquired a great

deal But such acquisitions are like "morning clouds;" the pupils have scarcely left the teacher, when all is gone. The true method, it appears to me, is to combine the two. "*In medio tutissimus ibis.*"

The leading principles of grammar, (and every thing else,) should be fixed in the mind by being carefully committed to memory, and fixed there by repeated rehearsals, and wrought into the understanding by familiar illustrations and exercises. Even allowing pupils to give the *sense* of the rule, instead of the *ipsissima verba*, (the very words,) has a pernicious effect. For not only in that way does it fail, generally of being strictly accurate, but at every repetition it will be given differently, and thus in a short time will become uncertain, and (if I may use the expression) chaotic; whereas, if always repeated in the *same way*, the connexion of the words becomes so associated in the mind, and so firmly lodged, as to be always there, and always accurate. *Without this*, there may be a confused idea of the principle, or rule, and to be sure of it the text book must be at hand, and resorted to—*with it*, the principle is indelibly fixed in the mind, always present, always ready; so that in fact the *little labor* expended in committing accurately to memory, saves a *great deal of labor* and inconvenience afterwards.

It is obvious, if these views are correct, that for the attainment of the first object proposed in the division of my subject, the leading parts of a text book containing the facts and principles designed to be thoroughly committed to memory, should be brief, accurate, so expressed as to be easily understood, and retained in the memory, and so distinguished from the subordinate parts, by size of type, or otherwise as to be manifest on inspection, and moreover in this department should be neither defective nor redundant. To facilitate the second, copious and appropriate exercises should be furnished at every step. A grammar that does not furnish these, is essentially deficient as a text book. And to aid in the third, the subordinate parts of the book should contain illustrations and details, sufficient both for teacher and pupil, in developing and acquiring a knowledge of the minutiae of the subject, and in training the mind to habits of reflecting, reasoning and discriminating. If in the study of English grammar, any of these be neglected, the result will be a failure.

The study of English grammar, in common schools, should be commenced as soon as the pupil can read with some degree of ease and fluency—not sooner, and should be continued till the subject is completely mastered. No study seems better adapted to the capacities of children, at this stage, than this, as it calls into action, and improves the memory and reasoning faculties, by exercising them on subjects not too difficult to be comprehended. The science of language as a branch of education, is surely of equal importance with the study of geography or of arithmetic. As a means of disciplining the mind and improving the rational powers, it is far superior to the former, which is chiefly an exercise of the memory; and is at least equal to the latter: and yet the returns of the county superintendents for 1842, show an aggregate of about forty-one thousand studying geography, sixty-four thousand studying arithmetic, and only twenty-eight thousand studying grammar. This fact seems to show a want of attention to this important study, which is proba-

bly owing to a general prejudice against the study, most people considering it mysterious, difficult and useless. It is however a prejudice only, and has its origin not in the character of the study, which when properly conducted, is both easy and attractive; but, as I think, in the two following causes:

1st. It is owing partly to the character of the text books employed. These are for the most part, greatly defective in simplicity and proper adaptation to the capacity of youthful pupils. In many, the definitions, rules and leading facts are prolix, inaccurate and confused—not properly distinguished from subordinate matter, and expressed in language not easy to be understood. Some are so small and defective in parts as to be insufficient to direct to a full knowledge of the subject, and so destitute of appropriate exercises, as to render what they do contain nearly useless, unless followed by something more full and complete; and some are so large, complicated, and burdened with unnecessary details as to appal the beginner, and to render the prospect of his ever mastering the subject, nearly hopeless.

2d. This prejudice is owing, in no small degree, perhaps chiefly, to defective and injudicious modes of teaching.

Some teach, if teaching it may be called, by merely requiring the pupil to commit the text book to memory, without any explanations or illustrations being given, or any pains taken to ascertain whether the pupil understands what he studies or not—the teacher merely assigns the task and hears it recited.

What is studied in this way will never be well understood, as the memory will be incumbered with a mass of crude materials, the use and application of which the pupil has never learned. With such learning, it is impossible he should be either pleased or instructed.

Another error, is the neglect of repeated reviews; which are necessary to keep what has been learned fresh before the minds of the learners—they proceed onward, and it may be, are well taught as they go, but for want of reviewing, by the time they have got to the middle they have forgotten the beginning, and when they reach the end, but little more time is required to forget the whole. Comparatively few make use of exercises, in parsing or syntax, consequently no opportunity is afforded to apply the principles learned. This indeed must be the case, where text books are used, which do not supply them sufficiently, such as many of the compends now in use in our schools, which have been introduced on account of their cheapness. In parsing, many never exercise their judgment to distinguish one part of speech from another, but depend on the instruction of others, or perhaps resort to a dictionary.

In all such indolent and mechanical processes, there is no teaching on the part of the teacher, and with much irksome toil there is but little learning on the part of the pupil. No wonder if under such a course of heartless and unprofitable labor, the study should be avoided and considered dry and uninteresting. A remedy for this evil is much needed, and it is in the power of the conscientious active and skilful teacher, aided by a good text book, to effect it. The following suggestions respecting the method of teaching English grammar, the result of much experience and observation, will

it is believed, if carried out, go far to bring about a reformation so desirable in this branch of common school education.

In commencing the study of English grammar the first thing to be attended to is proper *classification*. When a school term commences, care should be taken, as far as possible, to have all the pupils up at the beginning, and arrangements made for their being kept steadily at school till its close. In some studies, such as reading, spelling, writing, and even geography, early and regular attendance, though exceedingly desirable, is not so indispensable; but in all studies in which subsequent parts cannot be understood without a knowledge of the preceding, unless the members of the class begin all together, and continue regular in their attendance, the loss to the delinquents will be very great, and no teacher ought to be held responsible for the progress of pupils whose attendance is greatly irregular. A pupil entering a class in English grammar, properly taught, a fortnight or even a week after it begins, will feel the loss to the end, and is in danger of being discouraged by that very disadvantage. The same will be the effect of partial attendance. For this reason, when a term opens, it would be wise to delay forming classes in English grammar, for a short time, and to give notice through the district that a class will be formed on such a day, and that it is important for all who intend to join it, to be present at the commencement. Pupils who have but little knowledge of the subject would do well to begin the course again, and to proceed regularly. The classes should be as few in number as possible; two in most schools will be sufficient.

The class being assembled, the teacher in a few remarks should explain the nature and importance of the study, intimating that if properly conducted it will prove to be both pleasing and profitable, and that a very respectable knowledge of it, which will be of great use in after life, may be attained without a great deal of labor, if due attention is seriously and steadily bestowed. In order more fully and conveniently to illustrate the course of the class, it will be necessary for me here to select some good author as a text book. We will then suppose Bullions' grammar to be the text book of the class, a work of great merit, and one which we shall have occasion to notice more particularly in its proper place.\* The first lesson may then be given out, viz: the definitions, &c., pages 1 and 2, to be accurately committed to memory, while the part in small print, containing the definitions of the vowels, diphthongs, &c. may be read over in the class, commented on and illustrated by the teacher, and the pupils be directed to read it carefully by themselves, and be in readiness at the next recitation to answer questions respecting them.

Spelling may, for the present, be passed over, the pupil being supposed to have studied that subject already.

The next lesson may be § 3, the definitions, &c., in large print to be committed accurately to memory, and care being taken by the teacher, when giving out the lesson, to see that words needing explanation are explained, and the meaning clearly comprehended. In order to illustrate the classification of words under different heads,

\* The work referred to is "The Principles of English Grammar," &c., pp. 216.

and a part of speech, some familiar remarks may be made respecting classification in general, and the principles on which it is made; and reference may be made to natural history, showing that although individual objects are numerous, and almost infinitely varied, yet they are capable of being arranged in a few classes, according to some points in which all the individuals of the same class agree and by which they are distinguished from those of another class, as animals, vegetables and minerals, with the numerous subdivisions of each. Or reference may be made to the pupils in a school, who, though numerous, are arranged in few classes.

In like manner the words that make up a language, though very numerous and vastly different in their orthography and meaning, yet, as many of them agree in certain properties, in which they differ again from other words, they are capable of being arranged, and are arranged under a few heads or classes called *parts of speech*. Some, for example, are names of objects; others are not names but are used to express qualities of names, &c. Some familiar remarks of this kind, occasionally interspersed, serve not only to interest the pupil and impress the fact so illustrated on his mind, but an intelligent and skilful teacher will by means of such illustrations call the attention of his pupils to remarks they never thought of before, though they have always been before their eyes, and in this manner train them to habits of reflecting, comparing, classifying and reasoning for themselves. The pleasure which a happy illustration gives to the pupils, if thereby the thing illustrated is clearly understood, will soon be manifested by the delight expressed in their countenances.

These definitions being now accurately committed to the memory and recited, together with those from the beginning of the book in review, the next lesson may be § 4, in giving out which, some remarks may be made respecting this class of words: that it is the smallest class consisting of two words easily remembered; that some languages have this class and some have not; the reasons of the names *definite* and *indefinite*; the different forms of the indefinite and the manner in which they are used. These things being committed to memory and well understood, the pupils will forthwith go through the exercises on the article, as directed in the text book, applying the knowledge they have already acquired.

They may then be directed to point out and name the articles in any piece of composition, and show their use in every place, telling why the definite is used in this place and the indefinite in that; *a* in one place and *an* in another. Such exercises, though simple and easy, interest the pupil, call the thoughts into action and prepare the mind for greater efforts.

Having perfectly mastered this, and repeatedly gone over all that goes before, the class may be told that they are now to be made acquainted with a very large and important class of words called

## NOUNS.

That this is the name given in grammar to all those words which are names of things, and that it is by this that they are distinguished from all other words; that every word which is the name of any

thing we can see, hear, speak of, think of, &c., is a noun, and if a word is not the name of something it is not a noun; that names are of two kinds; that some names are common to things of the same sort, as *man, woman*, &c., and that others are appropriated to individuals of a class, as *John, Helen*, &c.; hence nouns are divided into two classes, common and proper. The character of a noun being thus wrought into the mind, and the distinction of common and proper nouns understood, the pupils should be directed to reduce their newly acquired ideas to practice; to mention names of things which they see, &c.; and without hesitation or difficulty will be heard such words as *man, book, tree, house*, &c., from every tongue. With such exercises the class will be delighted, while at the same time they are thoroughly instructed, and the idea that the study is dry and irksome will be done away. As a farther exercise they may now try their skill in finding out the nouns in some piece of composition. They will probably make some mistakes, which the teacher will kindly point out and show them how they were probably made. With a little practice this will become an easy exercise, the judgment of the pupil will be improved by applying the definitions to every word and ranking it as a noun, or rejecting it from the class according as it answers to the rule by which it is to be tried, and there will be no need to resort to a dictionary or to a neighbor to find out to what class such words as the above belong. This, with review, will be sufficient for one or two recitations.\* Having been made familiar with this exercise, the *properties* of the noun will next be attended to; but one at a time.

As *person*, properly speaking, is not so much a property of a noun as a mode of using it in speech—the same noun, without change of form or meaning, being of the first person according to one mode of using it—of the second, according to another, and of the third, according to another, nothing more need be said of it than is contained in § 6, till the pupil comes to the first rule of syntax.

The next property to be considered is *gender*. It may be remarked to the class, that nouns are divided into three classes, according to their relation to sex; those denoting males being called *masculine*, those denoting females, *feminine*, and those denoting neither males nor females, *neuter* or *neuter gender*, and this illustrated by proper examples. The teacher may then remark on the simplicity and beauty of the English language, above almost any other, and as before, the pupil will now be desirous of applying his knowledge, by telling the gender of every noun he sees, in which, of course, he should be indulged.

Next proceed to *number*. Explain the distinction of singular and plural; cause the rules for forming the plural to be accurately committed to memory, and then apply them by forming the plural of the list of nouns, page 13, giving the rule for each plural formed; thus, *fox*, plu. *foxes*. "Nouns ending in *s, sh, ch, x* or *o*, form the plural by adding *es*. *Book*, plu. *books*." "The plural is commonly formed by adding *s* to the singular," &c. By repeating the rules in this manner, every time, they will be committed to memory with

\* A class should never be tasked with more than what they can master with ease. It is better to err by giving too little than too much. *Festina lente*.

little labor, and be indelibly fixed there. The 3d paragraph in this list of exercises to be used thus: "book" is singular because it denotes *one*, plu. *books*, and give the rule. "*Trees* plu. because it denotes more than one; singular, *tree*, &c. So of the rest. §§ 9 and 10 except the first part of § 9 may be passed over until the grammar is reviewed.

This being well understood, and the reviews of preceding parts kept up daily, next proceed in the same way with *case*, § 11, explaining the meaning of the term, and requiring the definitions, in large print, to be carefully committed to memory. As the nominative and objective cases of nouns are of the same form, and can be distinguished only by their use in a sentence, which the pupil is not prepared to analyze, he should not be troubled with this distinction till he comes to pages 47 and 48. The possessive having always the apostrophe, is easily distinguished. The method of using the exercises on gender, number and case, page 18, is sufficiently explained in the note. This exercise being what is called parsing a noun, should be continued until the whole class are expert in it. In all this process the pupils should be kept lively, and caused to go through these exercises rapidly as well as accurately. By so doing, a great deal can be done in a little time, and the mind kept under sufficient excitement to render it susceptible of deep impression.

By proceeding in this way, slowly but surely, thoroughly disposing of one part before proceeding to another, keeping the whole fresh in the mind from the beginning, or as far back as the teacher may deem proper, drilling repeatedly on the exercises, and applying the rules where rules are applicable, every thing belonging to the etymology of nouns, will be so familiar, so well understood, and so firmly riveted in the mind, that no farther trouble need be apprehended, and the class may now proceed to the

### ADJECTIVE.

This part of speech being indeclinable in English, and having only the accident of *comparison*, all that is necessary here is to commit the definitions, and rules for comparison, and apply them. Connected with the definition, the main thing the teacher has to do, is to teach the pupil how to distinguish this part of speech from any other. It always describes a noun or pronoun, by expressing some quality or property belonging to it, and is generally placed before the word which it qualifies. Examples will best illustrate this, and for this purpose the pupil may be directed to point out the adjectives in the exercises, or in any piece of composition that may be at hand. When the idea of an adjective is once wrought into the mind of the pupil he will not find much difficulty in distinguishing it from other parts of speech; and as a pleasing exercise the whole class may have it assigned them as a lesson, on a slate or on paper, at school or at home, as may be thought best, to write all the adjectives in a given paragraph or page, with the nouns they qualify opposite them. As a technical way of assisting young children in this exercise, they may be told that any word, (the possessive case of nouns excepted) which makes sense with the word thing after it, is an adjective: as. A good thing; a bad thing. As a farther exercise. the



teacher may give the class a number of nouns to write in a column on the right hand side of the slate and ask them to write down, on the same line, all the adjectives they can think of, which will properly describe that noun, thus, black, white, dapple, bay, fat, lean, &c. horse. Or he may reverse this process, and give them a few adjectives to write in a column, on the left hand side of the slate and ask them to write on the right of each, on the same line, as many nouns as they can think of, to which the adjective will apply: thus, *beautiful*, trees, houses, garden, flower, woman, child, &c. In this way an industrious and ingenious teacher may exercise and interest the minds of his pupils, and as soon as they are acquainted with only two or three parts of speech, he may begin with these to teach them the art of composition as well as of analysis.

### PRONOUNS.

The pronouns are so few in number, that all necessary to be done, is to commit to memory the names of the different classes, and the pronouns under each. This can be accurately done with little labor. The teacher, however, as elsewhere, by oral and familiar instruction, has something to do to explain, illustrate and distinguish, in which he will be assisted by the notes and observations interspersed through the grammar, remembering always to go back, and keep all fresh, by repeated rehearsals or reviews; an exercise which will be easy, and therefore pleasant, unless too much neglected. Here, as in the preceding, the pupil must reduce his newly acquired knowledge to practice. Page 28 will furnish him with suitable exercises

### THE VERB.

The first lesson on this part of grammar should be prefaced with some familiar remarks respecting this part of speech; as, that it is the most important class of words; that we cannot speak or write a sentence without a verb in some form; that it assumes more forms and is used in a greater variety of ways than any other part of speech. Hence its name, *verb*, the *word*, emphatically *the word*. It is therefore the more important that it should be thoroughly studied and understood; and that though it is the most difficult part of speech to master, yet with a little diligence and attention on their part, they may become as well acquainted with it as with any other.

The pupils may be directed to commit the definitions as their first lesson, or such portion of them as can be thoroughly mastered, and to proceed in the way above mentioned with §§ 20, 21, 22, 23. Or those in §§ 22 and 23, as well as 24, may be omitted for the present, and the class proceed from § 21 to 25 and 26; and while this process of committing is going on, the teacher should make use of the text to illustrate in a familiar way the meaning and distinguishing character of this part of speech. As a technical test young pupils may be informed that a word that makes sense with *I* or *he* before it, is a verb. Those of more mature judgment will not stand in need of such aid. He should also point out the meaning of the terms *transitive* and *intransitive* and the distinction between the verbs so called. This distinction it is important that the pupil should understand and be able to make accurately and promptly.

This can easily be made plain even to very young children, by means of the directions given in section 19; but as children do not so readily comprehend what they read as what is told them in a plain and familiar manner, a little pains on the part of the teacher here will be well rewarded. The pupil may then be exercised in making this distinction, first in very short and simple sentences, such as those at page 47, second paragraph, and afterwards on longer ones. The formula of the verb must next be accurately committed to memory, and the pupils exercised in repeating it in every way that can be thought of, till they can do it accurately, beginning at once and going through any mood or tense that may be named, and tell at once and without hesitation in what part, i. e., in what voice, mood, tense, number, and person, any part that may be named is. It will greatly facilitate this, to teach the pupil to distinguish the tenses by their signs, and to be ready at once to tell the sign of each tense that may be named. Thus: what are the signs of the perfect indicative? Ans. Have, hast, hath or has. Of the pluperfect? Ans. Had, hadst, &c. The active voice of the verb "to love" being thus completely mastered, (and until this is done a step beyond should not be taken,) the class may be drilled in the exercises, pages 47 and 48, according to the directions there given. This being done, proceed in the same way with the verb "to be," and the passive voice of the verb "to love," which will now be accomplished with the greatest ease in a fourth part of the time that was required to commit the active voice. The class should then be thoroughly drilled in the exercises, pages 51, 52, and 56. At a subsequent period, it should be required to conjugate the irregular verbs, § 32, going through them at the rate of a page or a half page per diem, according to the capacity of the pupils.

The definitions of the adverb, preposition, conjunction and interjection, are next to be acquired, which requires no special notice, only that, as the prepositions and conjunctions are few in number, it may be as well to commit them to memory, as it is not easy for young persons to distinguish them from other words by their definitions or use.

This brings the pupil through etymology, and with ordinary diligence it may all be thoroughly done in five or six weeks, if the teacher takes pains to keep the attention of his pupils awake, and to prevent their falling into a state of mental indolence—a state of mind in which little benefit is derived from the best instruction

### PARSING.

The class is now prepared for parsing etymologically in simple sentences promiscuously, and should be drilled for some time in this exercise, for the purpose of making them expert in applying the knowledge previously gained, in distinguishing the different parts of speech as they occur promiscuously in a sentence, and enabling them to tell readily their accidents or properties, using always the fewest words possible, and stating them always in the same way. Section 40 furnishes exercises for this purpose, and general directions are there given, which will be found very useful to the student. In this exercise, the class may be properly exercised for two or three weeks, and in the mean time the previous part of the grammar should be

goe over two or three times in review,—first in short portions and then in longer,—till the whole becomes so familiar that farther attention is unnecessary. By this time the class will be prepared to enter with ease, spirit and intelligence, on the next part, namely,

### SYNTAX.

Here they may be told that hitherto they have been learning chiefly the character, forms, and changes of words, and analyzing sentences containing them. That they are now to be taught how to put words together in a proper manner, according to approved rules and methods. The part of grammar which teaches to do this is called *syntax*; a word that signifies combining or arranging together, viz. words in a sentence. After acquiring a correct knowledge of the definitions and general principles, §§ 43, 44, and 45, the next lesson may be Rule I., § 46. No particular effort is required in committing either this or the following rules to memory. The simple repetition of them from the book, as each sentence in the exercises under the rule is corrected, will generally be sufficient. Or they may have two or three rules assigned them to commit daily, so as in this exercise to keep in advance of the other.

It will be necessary in entering on the exercises, to point out to the pupil the precise object of each rule, as he advances; to intimate that the exercises contain violations of that rule only; that his business is to find out, in each sentence, what is contrary to the rule and to alter it accordingly. Under the first rule, for example, it may be necessary to remind the pupil that every sentence contains at least one distinct affirmation; that the *verb* is the word which makes the affirmation; and that the person or thing of which the verb affirms is its subject or nominative; and that according to the rule these must always agree in number and person; i. e., the verb must be in the same number and person with the nominative. Under Rule I., then, the business in each sentence is to find the verb and the nominative, in order to compare them and see if they agree, and if they do not, to alter the verb so as to make it agree with its nominative. In order to discover the verb and its nominative, the pupil may be directed to read the sentence and see what it means; he may then be asked, (having read the first sentence, e. g., “*I loves reading*,”) what is spoken of? Answer. *I*. What is said of *I*, or what is *I* said to do? Answer. *I loves*. Then *loves* is the verb and *I* its nominative; compare them and see if they are in the same number and person. Nominative *I* is the first person, and *loves* is the third person; *loves* then should be *love*, to agree with *I* in the first person. Or the teacher may proceed Socratically as follows:

*Teacher* Read the first sentence. *Pupil*. “*I loves reading*.”  
*T*. Who or what is spoken of here? *P*. *I*. *T*. What is *I* said to do? *P*. To love. *T*. Then which word expresses the person spoken of? *P*. *I* is the person spoken of, and is therefore the nominative. *T*. To what verb is *I* the nominative? *P*. To the verb *loves*. *T*. In what should they agree according to the rule? *P*. In number and person. *T*. Do they so agree? *P*. No. *I* is the first person singular, and *loves* is the third. *T*. What must be done to make them agree? *P*. Change *loves* to *love*. *T*. Read the sen-

tence so corrected, and give the rule? *P.* I love reading. "A verb agrees," &c.

Having gone through all the exercises under this rule, in this way or in any other way the teacher may find best calculated to communicate the idea, they may begin again and go over the whole without being questioned; thus, *loves* should be *love* in the first person and singular number, because *I*, its nominative, is in the first person and singular number, "A verb must agree," &c. After this the whole may be read over by the pupils, each reading a sentence, and only marking the corrected word with greater emphasis; thus, "*I love* reading;" "a soft answer *turns* away wrath." &c., giving the rule as before; in this way a class will easily proceed at the rate of one rule a day, reviewing the preceding as before. Every part being thoroughly understood as they proceed, they will take pleasure in it, their perception and power of reasoning will every day expand and become more vigorous, and at the end of the course their improvement will be astonishing to themselves.

After going through the rules of syntax, a farther advance and exercise of the powers of the pupils will be found in *Syntactical parsing*, sufficiently explained in § 84, and in the promiscuous exercises in § 85, all of which, being corrected, may be used for exercises in syntactical parsing, which should be followed up by parsing the best authors, both in prose and poetry, while they should at the same time be carried through the subsequent parts of the grammar.

As soon as a class gets through the rules of syntax, they should be instructed in short and simple exercises in composition. By so doing they will furnish exercises for themselves, and should be led to correct their own mistakes, in the same way in which they corrected the exercises under the rules.

### TEXT BOOKS.

It is not my intention to attempt an elaborate review of the principal works on this subject, as the discussion would extend these remarks, (which are already too prolix,) to an inconvenient length. Authors can generally set forth the merits of their own productions, and they seldom fail to exhibit the faults and defects of rival works, with peculiar acumen, and with eloquence hardly to be expected from persons less interested. It is therefore not probable that any literary production of even moderate pretensions, will escape with out a little wholesome criticism.

Early in the year 1842, wishing to select some work on the subject of English grammar which I could recommend as a text book to the schools under my superintendency; I collected all the works on the subject which seemed to have any considerable claims to consideration, in order to make a comparison of their respective merits. A cursory examination was sufficient to induce me to throw aside several as materially defective and unsuitable, but I retained upon my table for a more thorough inspection those of Kirkham, Hazen, Pierce, Brown and Bullions. After a patient and protracted examination, the first three in the order in which they are mentioned above for reasons which it would be too tedious to mention, were laid aside. Being satisfied of the eminent merits of the works of

Bullions and Brown, and certain that I should make choice of one of them for the purpose I had in view, I reserved them for a careful comparison, not with a view to ascertain their intrinsic value, of which I was already satisfied, it having been the object of my first and second perusal, but that I might determine which would be the most suitable for general use in our common schools. Having made the comparison with as much candor and ability as I could bring to the task, I came to the following conclusion: that as treatises on grammar the works were of nearly equal merits, that of Brown being somewhat more copious in its exercises and full and argumentative in its notes and observations on the language, while Bullions' is far superior to the former in conciseness and simplicity of style and in clearness of arrangement. The rules are well expressed and the principles clearly developed, while the notes and philosophical observations are fully sufficient, without that redundancy which characterizes the corresponding parts of the grammar of Mr. Brown, and increases its volume to such a degree as to render it truly appalling to beginners.

The grammar of Dr. Bullions has also the advantage of being suitable for young students and those commencing the study, thus saving the expense of a "first book" or "first lines," while at the same time it is a complete grammar of the language, and available for every purpose for which Mr. Brown's can possibly be used. It is also one of a "series;" and a pupil having studied it, can take up the grammars of the Latin and Greek, by the same excellent author, in which the rules and arrangements, so far as the principles and analogies of the language will admit, are the same, and proceed with a facility under other circumstances not attainable. This is a consideration of no small importance to those who may wish to advance from the common school to the academy and the college. But I cannot here set forth all that influenced my mind in coming to the conclusion that the grammar of Dr. Bullions was superior to any other I had examined as a text book for use in our common schools. Suffice it to say, that I recommended it for use in the schools in this county.

Since the subject of these observations was assigned me by the Department, I have made another investigation, and come to the same conclusion.

Respectfully submitted.

R. K. FINCH,

*Sup. of Com. Schools for the Co. of Steuben*

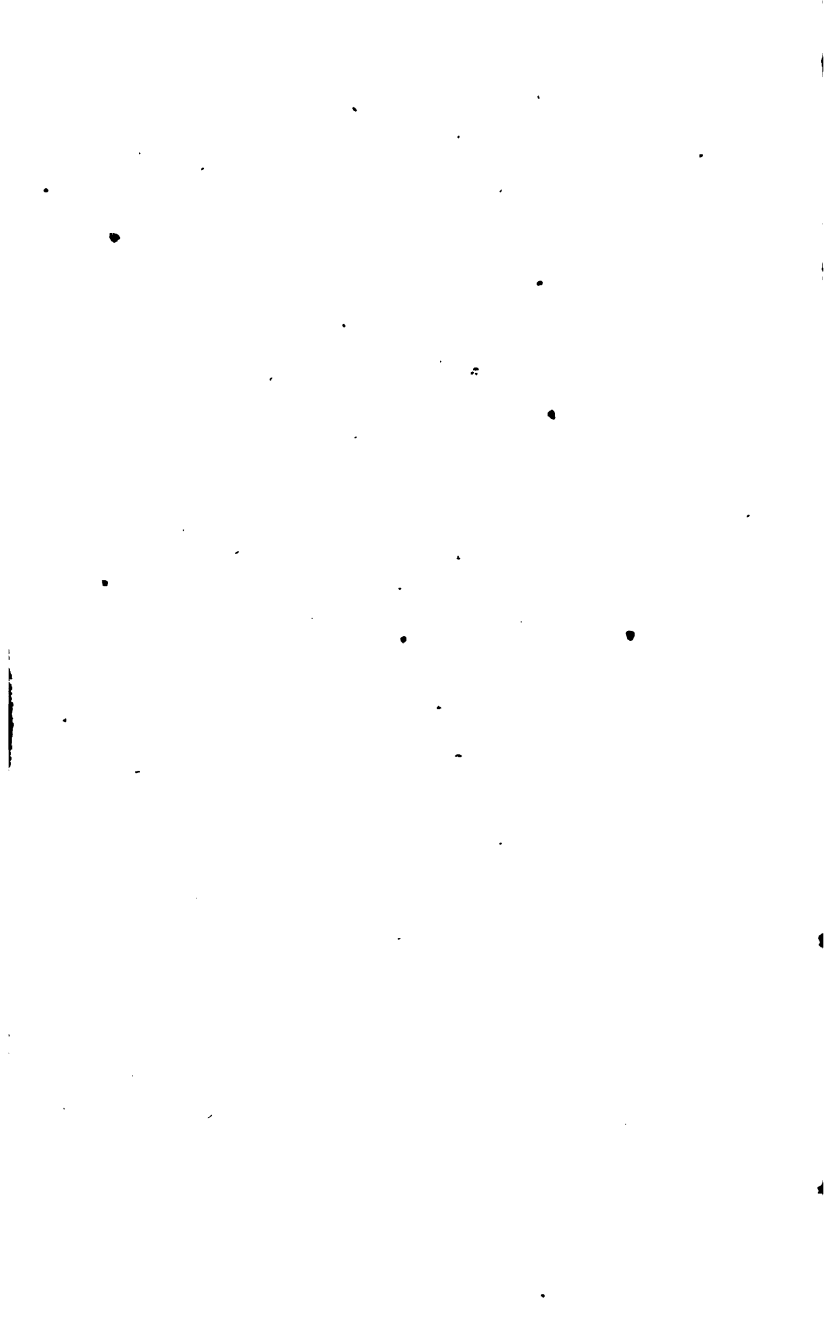
BATH, Nov. 5, 1843.

Just published, by PRATT, WOODFORD & Co.

N. Y., (late ROBINSON, PRATT & Co.,) "Practical Lessons on English Grammar and Composition; for Young Beginners:" pp. 122

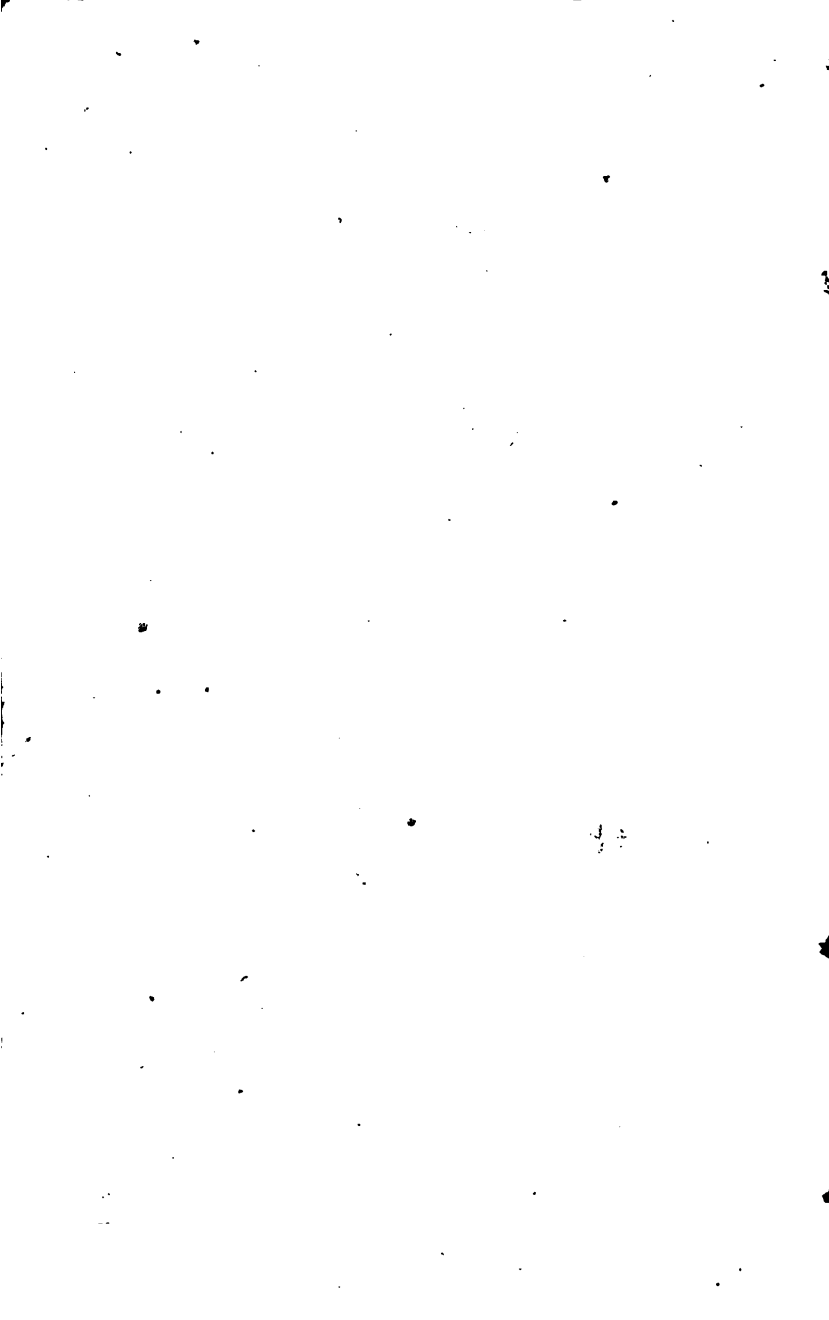
By REV P BULLIONS, D. D.













**Harvard College Library**

FROM

*Trinity College*

